

Requirements by
Transit New Zealand for
Designation of State Highway 2
(Tauranga Eastern Arterial)
and
Tauranga District Council for
Bell Road Interchange

Prepared for
Transit New Zealand and
Tauranga District Council

Volume 2

Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner
Consulting Engineers

APPENDIX 1
Orders in Council

The Resource Management (Approval of Transit New Zealand as Requiring Authority) Notice 1994 pursuant to sections 167 and 420(6) of the Resource Management Act 1991, the Minister for the Environment, hereby gives the following notice:

1. Title

Title and commencement—(1) This notice may be cited The Resource Management (Approval of Transit New Zealand as Requiring Authority) Notice 1994.

(2) This notice shall come into force on the 7th day after the date of its publication in the *New Zealand Gazette*.

Interpretation—In this notice "State highway" and "motorway" have the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Transit New Zealand Act 1989.

Application of notice—This notice shall apply in relation to and not in substitution for the Resource Management (Approval of Transit New Zealand as Requiring Authority) Order 1992.

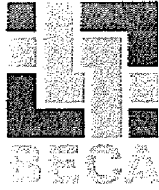
4. Approval as requiring authority—Transit New Zealand is hereby approved as a requiring authority under section 167 of the Resource Management Act 1991, for its particular network utility operation being the construction and operation (including the maintenance, improvement, enhancement, expansion, realignment and alteration) of any State highway or motorway pursuant to the Transit New Zealand Act 1989.

5. Approval in respect of existing designation—Transit New Zealand is hereby approved as a requiring authority under section 167 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for the Christchurch Northern Arterial (State Highway 74) in the district of Christchurch City Council.

Dated at Wellington this 17th day of February 1994.

SIMON UPTON, Minister for the Environment.

APPENDIX 2
Technical Report 1 - Traffic Model Development
and Validation Report, March 1998



Tauranga Eastern Arterial
Scheme Assessment

Traffic Modelling and Economic Evaluation

Prepared for
Transit New Zealand

Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner
Consulting Engineers

TAURANGA EASTERN ARTERIAL

Traffic Modelling and Economic Evaluation

Prepared for

TRANSIT NEW ZEALAND

By

BECA CARTER HOLLINGS & FERNER LTD

Report Prepared by:  Angie Crafer

 David Philip

Verified by:  Andrew Murray

Approved for Release by:  Mike Foster

Final
June 1998
3602796/16/01
ALC7NR02.DOC

APPENDIX A

Capital Cost Estimates

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This report details the analysis which has been undertaken to assess the traffic and economic aspects of the options which have been analysed as part of the Tauranga Eastern Arterial Investigation.

Two separate studies were undertaken as part of the economic evaluation of the options considered for the Tauranga Eastern Arterial.

The initial study, the "50 year strategic analysis" was undertaken to investigate the timing of particular options or the components of a project option. The criteria assumed for this timing was taken to be when the user cost benefits were found to be 4 times the capital costs. User cost benefits were assumed to arise from travel time cost savings, accident cost savings and vehicle operating cost savings. The capital costs were assumed to include the costs of construction and maintenance. The criteria used is in accordance with Transfund's requirements for a fundable project, that is that the benefit cost ratio (B/C) is equal or greater than 4, with the costs and benefits being included over a 25 year period starting from the time when construction starts. A 50 year analysis period was assumed so that any project which was not considered fundable for some time would be included in the analysis. This study allowed the analysis of the staging of certain options, for example, a 2 lane bypass followed by widening to 4 lanes at a later date could be tested to determine when each separate project was viable.

The second study comprised a simple benefit cost ratio analysis which was used to compare the benefits and costs of the options if construction was assumed to start as soon as possible. This was undertaken to provide a comparable benefit cost ratio between the options. This study was also undertaken using the procedures set out in Transfund's Project Evaluation Manual, with the evaluation including the cost values of capital and maintenance, and user costs arising from travel time, accidents and vehicle operating costs.

TRAFFIC MODEL

A traffic model was used to provide the basis for determining the user costs. The traffic model was developed using the TRIPS transportation modelling software. Trip origin-destination matrices were determined from roadside interview and number plate surveys undertaken in 1997. These surveys were designed in order that information concerning the origin and destination of journeys, and the purpose of the journey was gathered. The data from the surveys was input into a large database and the addresses matched to zones representing the Tauranga District Council and Western Bay of Plenty District Council planning areas. Trip demand matrices which give the number of journeys wanting to travel between each pair of zones was subsequently output from the database.

The roading network included in the traffic model includes all the major roads in the study area. The zones described above, representing small areas were linked into the roading network at strategic locations, generally representing a collector road in that area. When the trip demand matrices were assigned to the network model, the TRIPS

program simulates each journey between the origin and destination zones. The optimal route is determined from a combination of the shortest travel time and distance travelled. The program uses an iterative procedure in order to determine the routes, as if all trips travelled on the shortest route by distance, another route may become faster due to congestion on the shorter route.

Future year trip demand was determined from an analysis of the growth rates in each zone and of the observed growth rate on the roads both within and outside the study area. In the same way that the original trip demand matrices were assigned to the roading network, so the future year matrices were assigned to possible future roading networks.

The traffic models were developed for four daily periods (morning peak, inter-peak, evening peak and off-peak periods) and for nine periods in time, i.e. the years 1997, 2001, 2006, 2011, 2016, 2021, 2031, 2041 and 2051. The modelling program is able to output travel time, distance, flows and speeds on all the roads included in the modelled network. These values were used to compute total travel time costs, vehicle operating costs and accident costs for all of the options tested. Annual user costs were calculated for each of the modelled years and a year-by-year time stream of annual costs developed by interpolation of the results at each year. These user cost streams were used in both studies, comparing the costs with either the previous implemented roading scenario for the first study, or the do-minimum scenario for the second study.

The following sections detail the results and conclusions from each study.

50 YEAR STRATEGIC ANALYSIS

The 50 year strategy study investigated the bypass options as well as widening of the existing road (Option C). The bypass options investigated included Option A3 (the Alternative Route) and Option B (the Swamp Route). Option A (the Sandhill Route) was not included in this part of the study as, with it being longer and more costly than the Alternative Route, it would only have shown that it would be viable at a later date

Strategies were investigated which comprised the staging of different components of an option. The following table indicates the years in which the separate components within each strategy would become viable. Some facilities were assumed to be required for traffic management, safety, social and environmental reasons rather than being strictly justified by their B/C, for example the installation of a signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road in Te Puke, and the installation of a roundabout at SH2/Domain Road.

PROJECTS INCLUDED IN EACH STRATEGY	
STRATEGY	OPENING YEAR
Strategy I (incorporating Option C)	
Existing	
Construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Passing Lanes N1, N4 and S3	2010
Install roundabout at SH2/SH33 intersection	2015
Include widening SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2016
Include widening SH2 from Domain through Te Puke to 4 lanes	2023
Include widening SH2 from Te Puke to Paengaroa to 4 lanes	2043
Strategy II (incorporating Option C)	
Existing	
Construct Passing Lanes N2, N2, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Passing Lanes N1, N4 and S3	2010
Install roundabout at SH2/SH33 intersection	2015
Include widening SH2 from Domain through Te Puke	2023
Include widening SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	>2047
Include widening SH2 from Te Puke to Paengaroa to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy III (incorporating Option A3)	
Existing	
Construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Option A3 (Alternative Route) with 2 lanes, at grade intersections	2011
Widen SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2021
Widen Bypass between Domain and Bell to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy IV (incorporating Option B)	
Existing	
Construct Passing lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Option B (Swamp Route) with 2 lanes, at grade intersections	2011
Widen SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2022
Widen Bypass between Domain and Bell to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy V (incorporating Option A3)	
Existing	
Construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Option A3 (Alternative Route) with 2 lanes, grade separated intersections	2012
Widen SH2 Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2022
Widen Option 2 between Domain and Bell to 4 lanes	>2047

PROJECTS INCLUDED IN EACH STRATEGY	
STRATEGY	OPENING YEAR
Strategy VI (incorporating Option B)	
Existing	
Add in Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Include Cameron Road signals	2005
Include Domain Road roundabout	2005
Construct Option B (Swamp Route) as 2 lanes, grade separated intersections	2011
Widen SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain to 4 lanes	2022
Widen Option B from Domain to Bell to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy VII (incorporating Option A3)	
Existing	
Construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Option A3 (Alternative Route) with 4 lanes, grade separated intersections, widen SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain Road	2014
Strategy VIII (incorporating Option B)	
Existing	
Construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Construct Option B (Swamp Route) with 4 lanes, grade separated intersections, widen SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain Road	2016

An incremental analysis of the total 50 year present value of user costs and capital costs was undertaken and indicated that the optimal strategy was Strategy III (incorporating Option A3), based on a critical incremental benefit cost ratio of 3. This strategy includes the Alternative Route (Option A3) with at-grade intersections. The strategy including the Alternative Route with grade-separated intersections, Strategy V, was found to be only marginally less economical than Strategy III. The following table provides a summary of the results of the incremental analysis.

INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS								
Least Cost Option	Benefits \$ million	Costs \$ million	Next Option	Benefits \$ million	Costs \$ million	Incremental		BCR
						Benefits \$ million	Costs \$ million	
Strategy II (Option C)	40	10	Strategy I (Option C)	46	11	6	2	3.4
Strategy I (Option C)	46	11	Strategy VIII (Option B)	117	23	70	12	6.0
Strategy VIII (Option B)	117	23	Strategy VII (Option A3)	127	24	10	0	21.1
Strategy VII (Option A3)	127	24	Strategy V (Option A3)	137	24	10	1	10.8
Strategy V (Option A3)	137	24	Strategy IV (Option B)	137	25	(0)	1	-0.4
Strategy V (Option A3)	137	24	Strategy III (Option A3)	141	26	4	1	3.3
Strategy III (Option A3)	141	26	Strategy VI (Option B)	141	27	(0)	1	-0.3
Strategy III (Option A3)	141	26						

BENEFIT COST ANALYSIS

The Sandhill Route, Swamp Route (Option B) and Alternative Route (Option A3) were all analysed to determine the benefit cost ratios from an analysis period comprising 25 years from 1 July 1998 to 30 June 2023. Based on the costs of a 2 or 4 lane expressway with a 9m grassed median, the costs and benefit cost ratios of the options (excluding the Te Maunga to Domain Road section) are as follows:

Option	Cost \$ million	B/C Ratio
Widening of Existing Alignment (Option C)	159	0.2
Sandhill Route (4 lanes)	115	1.1
Swamp Route (4 lanes)(B)	112	1.5
Alternative Route (4 lanes)(A3)	99	1.8

Note: B/C ratio includes intangible benefits from Te Puke WTP survey

Compared to the Alternative Route (Option A3), the Sandhill Route and the Swamp Route (Option B) have incremental B/C ratios of -5.2 and -1.1 respectively. This means that for the additional costs, neither the Sandhill Route nor the Swamp Route (B) offer any additional benefits.

The net present value of benefits associated with Option A3 over the B/C analysis period was calculated to be \$148.26 million, 6% greater than the \$140.12 million associated with Option B. Whilst the benefit cost ratios of Option A3 and Option B are close, Option A3 provides the cheaper solution and is therefore considered to be the most economical.

CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION	1
1.1. REPORT PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF STUDY.....	1
1.2. REPORT STRUCTURE.....	1
1.3. ACRONYMS USED IN THIS STUDY.....	2
2. PURPOSE OF STUDY	3
2.1. DESCRIPTION OF THE STUDY AREA.....	3
2.2. NEED FOR STUDY.....	5
2.3. OBJECTIVES OF STUDY.....	6
3. OPTIONS	7
3.1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF OPTIONS.....	7
3.2. DESIGN AND SAFETY STANDARDS.....	9
3.2.1. <i>WIDENING THE EXISTING STATE HIGHWAY (OPTION C)</i>	9
3.2.2. <i>BYPASS OPTION</i>	10
3.3. INTERSECTION CONTROLS.....	10
3.3.1. <i>BASE SCENARIO</i>	10
3.3.2. <i>EXISTING STATE HIGHWAY</i>	10
3.3.3. <i>NEW ALIGNMENTS</i>	12
3.4. ENGINEERING COST ESTIMATES.....	12
3.4.1. <i>CONSTRUCTION COSTS</i>	12
3.4.2. <i>MAINTENANCE COSTS</i>	13
4. TRAFFIC ANALYSIS	14
4.1. EXISTING TRAFFIC CONDITIONS.....	14
4.1.1. <i>TRAFFIC FLOWS</i>	14
4.1.2. <i>PROFILE OF TRAFFIC</i>	14
4.1.3. <i>TRAFFIC COMPOSITION</i>	16
4.1.4. <i>HISTORICAL TRAFFIC GROWTH</i>	17
4.1.5. <i>TRAVEL TIMES</i>	19
4.2. TRAFFIC MODELLING.....	19
4.2.1. <i>MODELLING METHODOLOGY</i>	19
4.2.2. <i>FUTURE LAND USE</i>	20
4.2.3. <i>TRIP ASSIGNMENT, CONVERGENCE, MODEL CALIBRATION AND VALIDATION</i>	23
4.2.4. <i>DEVELOPMENT OF THE OPTIONS</i>	23
4.3. RESULTS OF THE TRAFFIC MODELLING.....	24
4.3.1. <i>MODELLED TRAFFIC FLOWS</i>	24
4.3.2. <i>MODELLED TRAVEL TIMES</i>	24
5. ACCIDENT ANALYSIS	28
5.1. METHODOLOGY.....	28
5.2. CALCULATION OF EXISTING ACCIDENT RATES.....	28
5.3. CALCULATION OF ACCIDENT COSTS.....	30

6. ECONOMIC ANALYSIS	31
6.1. INTRODUCTION.....	31
6.2. TRAVEL TIME COST CALCULATION.....	32
6.3. VEHICLE OPERATING COST CALCULATION.....	32
6.4. ACCIDENT COST CALCULATION.....	33
6.5. CAPITAL COSTS.....	33
6.6. MAINTENANCE COSTS.....	33
6.7. CALCULATION OF ANNUAL USER COSTS.....	33
6.8. TIME STREAM OF COSTS.....	34
6.9. STAGING OF PROJECTS WITHIN AN OPTION.....	36
6.10. INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS FOR STRATEGIES.....	38
6.11. BENEFIT COST ANALYSIS.....	39
6.12. INCREMENTAL BENEFIT COST RATIO.....	41
6.13. VERIFICATION OF ECONOMIC EVALUATION.....	41
7. MAIN INFLUENCING FACTORS IN THE ECONOMIC EVALUATION	43
7.1. MAIN CONTRIBUTING FACTORS.....	43
7.2. INFLUENCING FACTORS.....	43
7.2.1. MAIN FACTORS.....	43
7.2.2. EFFECT OF SELECTION OF DO MINIMUM.....	44
7.2.3. EFFECT OF LAND USE GROWTH ASSUMPTIONS.....	44
7.3. SENSITIVITY TESTS.....	44
7.4. DISCOUNT FACTOR.....	45
8. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION	46

FIGURES

Figure 2.1	Study Area
Figure 3.1	Options
Figure 3.2	Location of Possible Passing Lanes on Existing Road
Figure 4.1	Observed Traffic Volumes
Figure 4.2	Modelled Rooding Network
Figure 5.1	Section of Road as Modelled in Accident Analysis

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A	Capital Cost Estimates
APPENDIX B	Modelled Traffic Volumes
APPENDIX C	Accident Cost Analysis
APPENDIX D	Willingness to Pay Intangible Benefits
APPENDIX E	Cost and Benefit Time Streams

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1. REPORT PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF STUDY

This report details the analysis which has been undertaken to assess the traffic and economic aspects of the options which have been analysed as part of the Tauranga Eastern Arterial Investigation.

Option selection was undertaken using a 50 year strategy study which investigated the staging of projects over such a time frame, and used an incremental analysis to determine the economically preferred strategy. A benefit cost ratio evaluation was then undertaken for the options over a 25 year time frame in accordance with the procedures outlined in Transfund's Project Evaluation Manual (PEM) (First Revision, effective from 1 May 1997, Manual No PFM2).

The traffic analysis provides information regarding the current traffic situation, and the predicted future situation. This involves the use of a transportation model which is also described. This report is not intended as a detailed technical report on the modelling, but rather presents the background information to support the calculation of the economic evaluation of the project.

1.2. REPORT STRUCTURE

The remainder of this report is set out in the following manner:

- Section 2** Discusses the strategic planning considerations of the project including the need for the project and the location and function of access improvements.
- Section 3** Details the options evaluated, their general features and the engineering cost estimates.
- Section 4** Describes the traffic data used in the study, details the origin-destination survey analysis, and includes a description of the existing conditions, the methodology and development of the traffic models, the scenarios assessed and summarises the results of the traffic modelling.
- Section 5** Describes the accident analysis undertaken.
- Section 6** Details the economic evaluation undertaken, including the methodology adopted, the assumptions used, and the results.
- Section 7** Discusses the main influencing factors in the economic evaluation, including cost components, main influencing factors, and the sensitivity of the analysis.
- Section 8** Contains a summary and conclusion of the evaluation.

1.3. ACRONYMS USED IN THIS STUDY

AADT	Annual Average Daily Traffic
ADT	Average Daily Traffic
AIS	Accident Investigation System
AM	Morning Peak Period
Beca	Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd
BCR (B/C)	Benefit Cost Ratio
CBD	Central Business District
GST	Goods and Services Tax
FYRR	First Year Rate of Return
HCV I	Heavy Commercial Vehicle Type I - diesel powered rigid trucks with or without trailers or articulated vehicle with 3 or 4 axles
HCV II	Heavy Commercial Vehicle Type II - diesel powered trucks and trailers and articulated vehicles with 5 or more axles
IP	Interpeak Period
LCV	Light Commercial Vehicle - vans, utes, light trucks
LOS	Level of Service
LTSA	Land Transport Safety Authority
MCV	Medium Commercial Vehicle - two axle diesel powered heavy trucks without a trailer
MD	Midday Period
NPV	Net Present Value
O/D	Origin/Destination
PAU	Planning Area Unit
PEM	Project Evaluation Manual, Transit New Zealand, Manual No PFM2
PM	Evening Peak Period
PVB	Present Value Benefits
PVC	Present Value Costs
SH2	State Highway 2
SH29	State Highway 29
SH33	State Highway 33
TDC	Tauranga District Council
Transit NZ	Transit New Zealand
TTC	Travel Time Costs
VOC	Vehicle Operating Costs
WBoPDC	Western Bay of Plenty District Council

2. PURPOSE OF STUDY

2.1. DESCRIPTION OF THE STUDY AREA

State Highway 2 is the main East Coast highway between Waihi and Katikati to the north of Tauranga and Whakatane to the south. The section of SH2 investigated in this study, and shown in Figure 2.1, is to the east of Tauranga, from the SH2/SH29 Te Maunga roundabout (RS 164) to the SH2/SH33 Paengaroa intersection (RS 189).

The existing highway is located on the flood plain of the Kaituna River in the Western Bay of Plenty. State highways 2 and 29 leave Tauranga from the south and run together eastwards before diverging at the Te Maunga intersection. From Te Maunga, SH2 runs southeast, parallel to the coast, and crosses the Tauranga/Kawerau/Teneatua branch railway line at the Welcome Bay overbridge. Domain Road and Bell Road exit SH2 to the north, servicing the rapidly growing areas of Papamoa and Papamoa Beach. SH2 continues southeast, skirting the foothills adjacent to the Kaituna flood plain before crossing the upper flood plain known as Long Swamp on the outskirts of Te Puke and passing through the town centre. From Te Puke, the highway heads east, passing through Waitangi and around over the Kaituna River, past the Rangioru Freezing Works before meeting with SH33 at Paengaroa Junction. SH33 continues south from Paengaroa Junction to meet with the settlement of Paengaroa some 3 km further on and Rotorua some 50 km further, whilst SH2 exits from the main highway, running east towards Whakatane.

The highway from Te Maunga to Te Puke is a two lane rural highway with a 100 kph speed limit. The speed limit drops to 70 kph on the west of Te Puke and to 50 kph through Te Puke. The road through the town centre is now a four lane road, although it was trialed as 2 lanes for a short period in late 1997. To the east of Te Puke, the speed limit increases to 80 kph and 100 kph east of No 1 Road. Except for a 70 kph speed limit through Waitangi, the remainder of SH2 to Paengaroa Junction has a 100 kph limit, operating as a rural highway.

The study area contains a wide range of land use, including residential and industrial/commercial in Te Puke and Waitangi, residential in Papamoa and Papamoa Beach, with the remainder being mainly rural. Many areas of Papamoa Beach have been recently developed with a significant amount of residential sub-division occurring. A large area to the east of Papamoa Beach has been identified as a possible industrial area.

AREAS OF CONSIDERATION

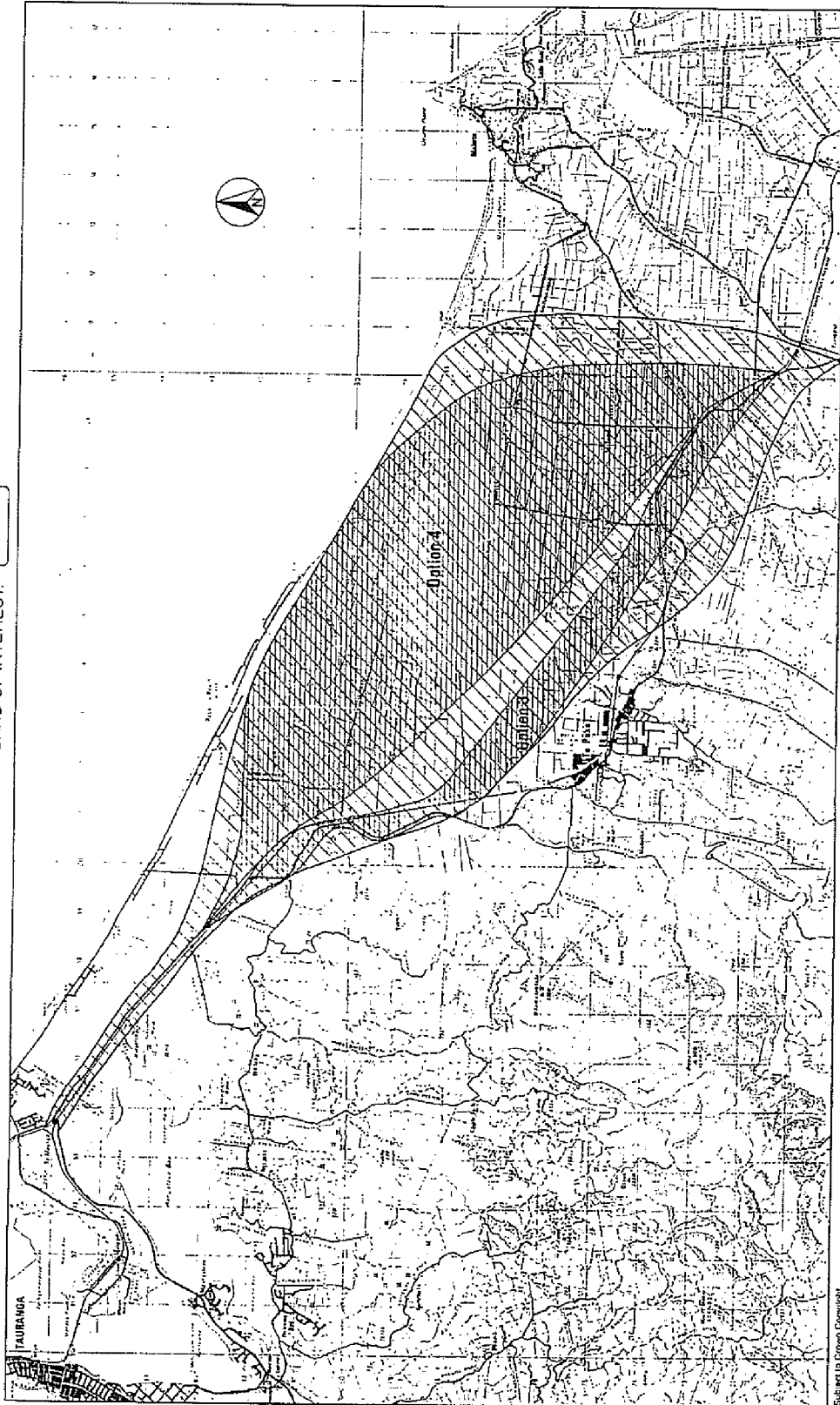
Upgrading existing route plus associated localised improvement



OPTION 1:

OPTIONS 3 & 4:

BAND OF INTEREST:



Subject to Crown Copyright

Figure 2.1 Study Area

2.2. NEED FOR STUDY

Currently, SH2 between Te Puke and Domain Road carries an annual average daily traffic volume (AADT) of 14,300. This volume increases significantly during certain periods of the week and year, probably reaching 17,000 vehicles per day at peak times.

Currently the main problems with the State Highway comprise:

- The mixed nature of the traffic which the highway carries, being major arterial route traffic, commuter traffic as well as local trips. From an analysis of the roadside and number plate survey data, it appears that major arterial traffic to and from Rotorua and points south, and Whakatane and points east, constitute approximately 50% of the traffic travelling on SH2 north of Te Puke. The remaining traffic originates and terminates in Te Puke and its environs and comprises commuter traffic, generally between Te Puke and Tauranga, Mount Maunganui and Papamoa, and other local traffic.
- The State Highway passing through the built-up area of Te Puke. The high number of accesses, the on-street parking, pedestrian movements, intersections (two roundabouts), local traffic entering the highway and the general urban/commercial environment of the highway with the associated speed limit of 50 kph results in a poor level of service both on the highway and for side road traffic. This is evident from the road recently being narrowed to 2 lanes to try to create a safer and slower environment. Despite the peak hour flows being in the order of 1,000 vehicles per hour per direction, well below the theoretical capacity of about 1,800 vehicles per hour, the resulting delays meant that the road had to be returned to a 4 lane highway.
- The large number of logging trucks using the highway, and the associated and perceived safety concerns of highway and side road traffic and pedestrians. This is especially of concern for pedestrians crossing the main street in Te Puke, and for other environmental and social concerns of heavy vehicles using the main street.
- The general low level of service between Paengaroa and Te Maunga. This relates to the highway being a two lane facility carrying approximately 14,000 vehicles per day with a 12% heavy commercial vehicle content. A lack of passing opportunities along the road results in a lower overall speed along the highway and driver frustration.
- Accesses from the highway causing conflicting traffic manoeuvres which are made more unsafe due to many having insufficient sight distances. The study area contains a wide range of land use, including residential and industrial/commercial in Te Puke, residential in Papamoa and Papamoa Beach, with the remainder being mainly rural. Many areas of Papamoa Beach have been recently developed with a significant amount of sub-division occurring. A large area to the east of Papamoa Beach, another area close to Maketu Road and another area just to the north of Te Puke have been identified as possible industrial areas. These will all add to the demands on the State Highway.

- Vertical and horizontal geometric alignment deficiencies in and around Te Puke, around the area of Bell Road and at the intersection with Domain Road.
- In the last five years, traffic has been increasing on this section of SH2 at over 5% per annum. From an analysis of the growth in traffic on the State Highway over the past 5 years, the projected growth rate from 1997 is 5.7% per annum east of Domain Road and 6.2% through Rangiuru. This high growth rate will have a significant effect on the need for improvements to the highway.

2.3. OBJECTIVES OF STUDY

The objectives of the study are to :

1. Lodge a requirement for a favoured option in the relevant District Plans.
2. Provide a designated option which shall be a four lane divided highway with full grade separation and access control to alleviate the problems described in Section 2.2.

The objectives of the transportation and economics sections of the study are to determine the most appropriate sequence of projects which will be able to cater for the predicted demand on the network whilst retaining safety and access functions. This will be based on Transfund's Project Evaluation Manual (PEM). A benefit cost ratio would then be determined for the optimal scheme in accordance with the PEM.

3. OPTIONS

3.1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF OPTIONS

Four options have been considered in the study, these comprise the following:

- The Sandhill Route - upgrade the existing route to a four lane divided highway from Te Maunga to Domain Road and then follow a new alignment to the north of the existing route, through the "option 4" corridor which follows the sandhills to the north of the Kaituna River.
- Option A3 - The Alternative Route - upgrade the existing route to a four lane divided highway from Te Maunga to Domain Road and then follow a new alignment to the north of the existing route, through the "option 4" corridor. This route follows an alignment to the south of the Sandhill Route.
- Option B - The Swamp Route - upgrade the existing route to a four lane divided highway from Te Maunga to Domain Road and then follow a new alignment to the north of the existing route, through the "option 3" corridor, a more southerly route than the "option 4" corridor passing through the peat area.

The bypass options comprising the Sandhill Route, Option A3 and Option B can all be constructed as stage facilities with 2 lane facilities being widened to 4 lanes as required.

- Option C - The Existing Route - upgrade the existing route to a four lane divided highway, except in Te Puke where a portion of it would be undivided. This option proposes the staged widening of various sections of State Highway 2 and intersection improvements, as considered necessary, according to the traffic flow predicted on each section. These include the following sections of road:
 - SH2: Te Maunga to Domain Road,
 - SH2: Domain Road to No 3 Road,
 - SH2: No 3 Road to No 1 Road, through Te Puke,
 - SH2: No 1 Road to SH33 Paengaroa Intersection

These options are shown in Figure 3.1.

3.2. DESIGN AND SAFETY STANDARDS

3.2.1. WIDENING THE EXISTING STATE HIGHWAY (OPTION C)

All options include the four committed passing lanes along the section of SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road. Widening of State highway 2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road occurs in all of the options during the analysed 50 year period. The option comprising improvements to the existing State highway between Domain Road and Paengaroa Intersection includes various passing lane and widening stages.

The alignment and cross-section have been determined with the use of a digital terrain model. The accuracy of this model has not been verified by ground survey, however for this level of investigation it is considered adequate.

The following describes the proposed works for upgrades along SH2.

Section 1 - Te Maunga to Domain Road

The highway is flat through this section with a maximum grade of 1.50%. The centreline design generally follows the existing horizontal alignment with minor curve easing. The vertical alignment also follows the existing with minor cuts and fills to improve sight distances and speed values. Throughout this section the design speed value is approximately 110 kph.

The three committed passing lanes which are to be constructed during 1998/99 include a 1,200 metre northbound section between Kairua Road and Mangatawa Lane (N3), a 920 metre southbound section between (S1) and a 900 metre section between Mangatawa Lane and RP164/4 (S2). A further passing lane has been identified northbound section between Trumans Lane and Mangatawa Lane (N4). The location of these passing lanes is shown in Figure 3.2.

Widening of this section of road to 4 lanes would affect property accesses and in some cases, low level accesses will be required. Current analysis indicates that this section would not reach a traffic volume warranting widening to 4 lanes for at least the next 8 to 15 years.

Section 2 - Domain Road to No 3 Road, Te Puke

Three passing lane locations have been identified between Domain Road and Te Puke, namely N1, N2 and S3, as shown in Figure 3.2. The 900 metre northbound section located between Bell Road and RP164/8 (N2), is scheduled for construction during 1998/99.

If the proposed Te Puke Bypass is built, widening of this section of road to 4 lanes is unlikely.

Section 3 - Te Puke: No 3 Road to No 1 Road and Section 4 - No 3 Road to Paengaroa Intersection

In the Options Report for the Tauranga Eastern Arterial Roading Study, Option C (widening the existing road) was discarded for both adverse economical and environmental reasons, in favour of the Te Puke Bypass. Options. As for Section 2 comments above, if the proposed Te Puke Bypass is built, widening of this section of road to 4 lanes is unlikely in the foreseeable future.

3.2.2. BYPASS OPTION

The Sandhill Route, Alternative Route (Option A3) and the Swamp Route (Option B) all provide a two or four lane divided highway with a 100 kph speed limit from an intersection at Domain Road to the Paengaroa Intersection. The design speed is 110 kph. An intersection at Bell Road has also been proposed.

Reducing traffic on the existing SH2 would increase safety by reducing the potential for conflicting movements, especially through Te Puke. Transferring longer distance traffic to a limited access road would also increase safety.

3.3. INTERSECTION CONTROLS

3.3.1. BASE SCENARIO

Intersection improvements are proposed at the intersections of SH2/Domain Road and SH2/Cameron Road prior to the need for major works. Despite both these intersection improvements having an overall detrimental effect on the travel time of through traffic, it is considered that the delay to side road traffic and the safety of the intersections as drivers accept shorter gap acceptances to access the State Highway would result in the need for these improvements.

3.3.2. EXISTING STATE HIGHWAY

Intersection improvements at Paengaroa, Maketu Road, Collins Road and Bell Road are predicted to be required over the 50 year evaluation period. The costs associated with improvements at Maketu Road, Collins Road and Bell Road have not been included in the analysis as they are most likely to be as a result of industrial/commercial development and would occur in all options, including the Do Minimum scenario.

Other intersection upgrades, for example through Te Puke would be assessed on an isolated needs basis during any detailed design.

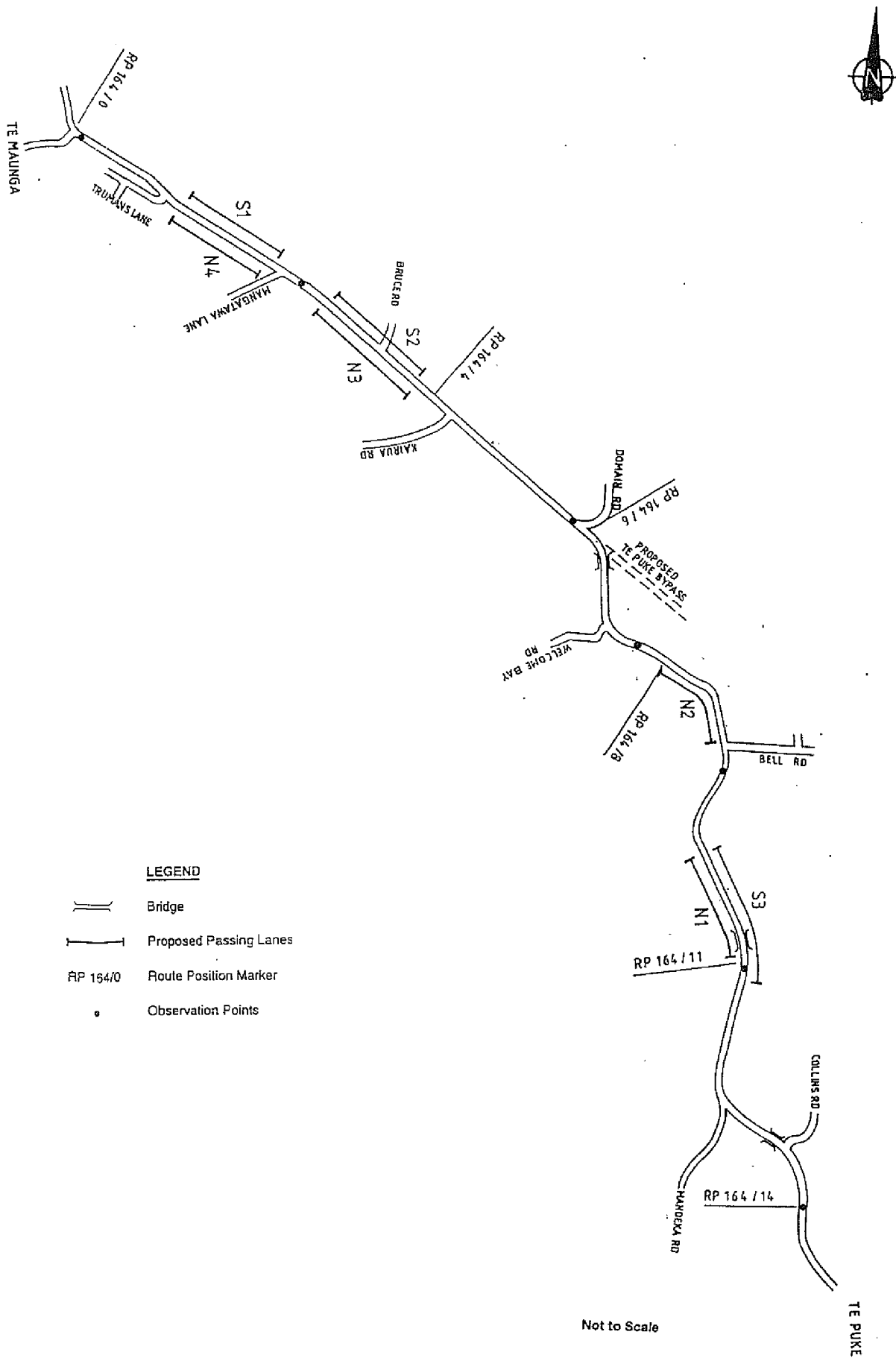


Figure 3.2 Location of Passing Bay Options

3.3.3. NEW ALIGNMENTS

The final intersection designs for either of the new alignment options been assumed to be as follows:

- SH2/Domain Road: Grade separated interchange
- SH2/Bell Road: Grade separated interchange
- SH2/SH33: Grade separated interchange

However, the staged construction of these alignments means that initially, and until demand justified the need to provide grade separated facilities, these intersections would have the following form:

- SH2/Domain Road: Two lane roundabout
- SH2/Bell Road: Two lane roundabout
- SH2/SH33: Two lane roundabout

3.4. ENGINEERING COST ESTIMATES

3.4.1. CONSTRUCTION COSTS

Cost estimates for widening and upgrading the existing State Highway have been undertaken for the various sections. Estimates for each of the sections are contained in Appendix A. The cost estimates for each of the new alignment options are also given in Appendix A. The estimates include the following components: land purchase, earthworks, other civil works, signage, landscaping, lighting, professional fees, mitigation and compensation, with contingencies included as 25% on earthworks and 15% on other civil works.

The costs are summarised in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1 Summary Of Engineering Construction Cost Estimates	
	Cost \$ M
Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1.569
Domain Road Intersection - roundabout	0.500
Cameron Road Intersection - signals	0.200
Passing Lanes N1, S3, N4	1.780
Paengaroa Intersection - roundabout	0.250
SH2 widening to 4 lanes: Te Maunga to Domain Road	6.250
SH2 widening to 4 lanes: Domain Road to Te Puke	60.269
SH2 widening and improvements: through Te Puke	36.767
SH2 widening to 4 lanes: Te Puke to Paengaroa	53.820

Sandhill Alignment: 4 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, grade separated intersections	114.668
Option A3 Alignment: 2 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, at grade intersections	83.219
Option A3 Alignment: 2 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, grade separated intersections	87.419
Option A3 Alignment: 4 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, grade separated intersections	98.790
Option B Alignment: 2 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, at grade intersections	83.046
Option B Alignment: 2 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, grade separated intersections	88.202
Option B Alignment: 4 lanes Domain to Paengaroa, grade separated intersections	112.403

3.4.2. MAINTENANCE COSTS

Maintenance costs have been developed for each option as a cost in addition to the existing maintenance costs. Table 3.2 summarised the annual and periodic maintenance costs for each project.

	Annual	8, 16, 24, etc years after construction	2, 12, 22, etc years after construction	10, 20, 30, etc years after construction
SH2/Domain Road roundabout	1,000	150,000		
SH2/Cameron Road signals	1,000	150,000		
Two lane Alternative Route (Option A3)	15,975		614,096	438,640
Four lane Alternative Route (Option A3)	31,950		1,230,075	878,625
Four lane Sandhill Route	31,950		1,230,075	878,625
Two lane Swamp Route (Option B)	15,654		602,679	430,485
Four lane Swamp Route (Option B)	31,308		1,205,358	860,970

4. TRAFFIC ANALYSIS

4.1. EXISTING TRAFFIC CONDITIONS

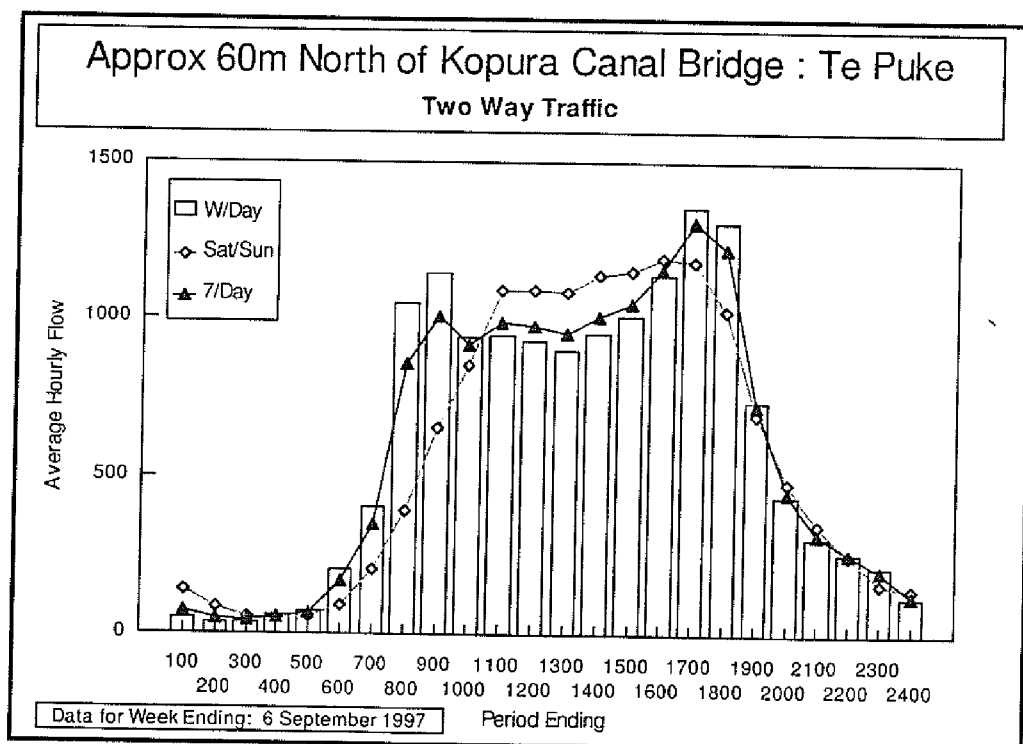
4.1.1. TRAFFIC FLOWS

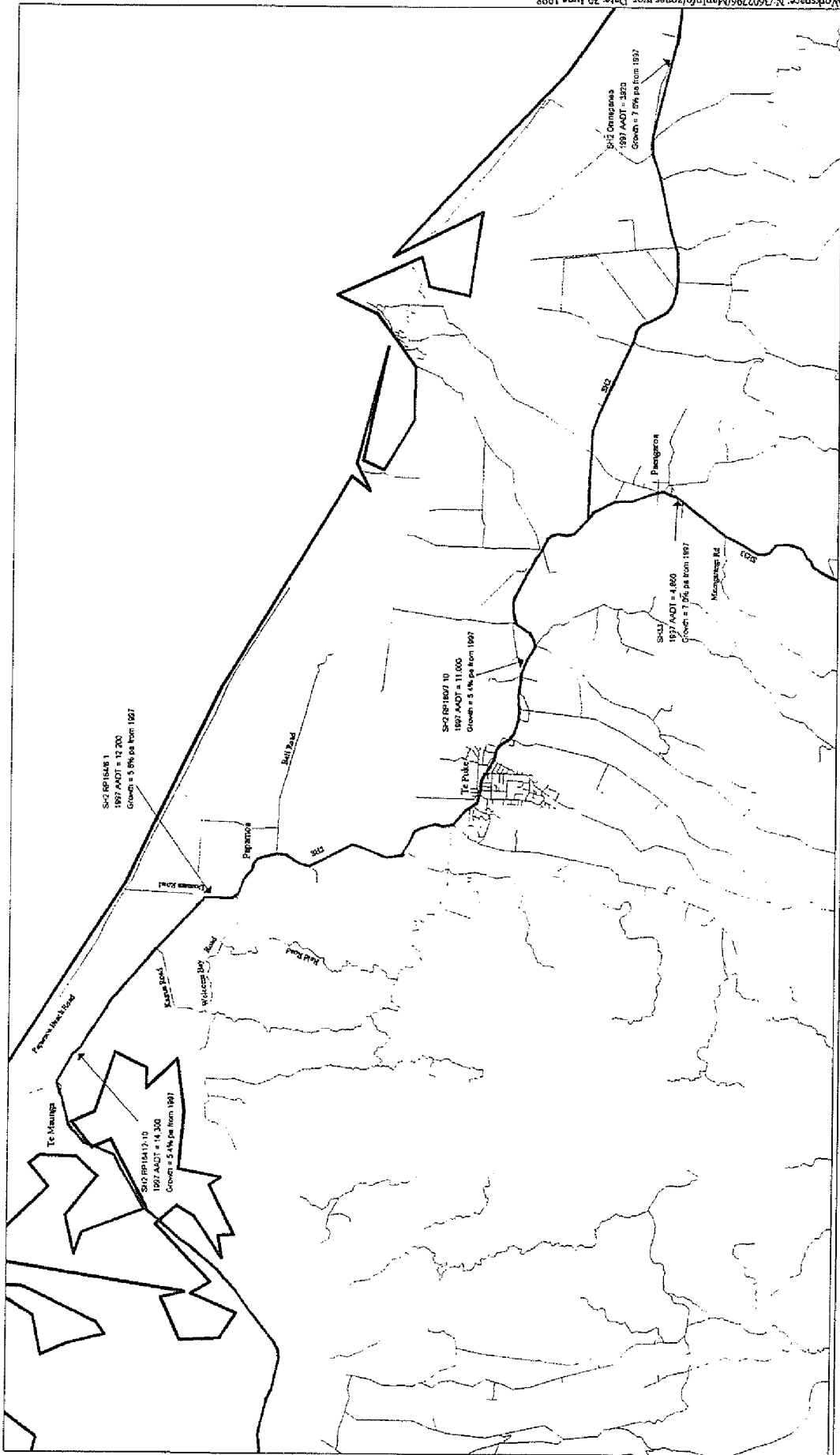
Figure 4.1 indicates the daily traffic volumes which were observed between 1993 and 1997 in the study area. These traffic volumes provided by Transit New Zealand have growth rates determined from 5 years of historical data for each year.

4.1.2. PROFILE OF TRAFFIC

The traffic count on SH2, north of Kopura Canal Bridge has been used to determine the profile of traffic throughout the day. Graph 1 indicates the profile of traffic during the week and also at the weekend.

Graph 1 Profile of Existing Traffic on SH2, between Bell Road and Te Puke





Note AADT = Annual Average Daily Traffic
 Projected growth rate derived from previous 5 years of traffic volume data

Scale: 1:150,000

Figure 4.1
 Observed Traffic Volumes and Projected Growth Rates

The graph clearly indicates the morning peak period as 7am to 9am and the evening peak period as 4pm to 6pm during weekdays, indicating the influence of commuter traffic during week days.

4.1.3. TRAFFIC COMPOSITION

The following traffic composition was obtained from traffic counts on SH2, Domain Road and Papamoa Beach Road, undertaken in 1997:

		Car	LCV	MCV	HCVI	HCVII
SH2, east of Te Maunga Roundabout	All days	82.7	2.3	3.2	4.2	6.7
	Weekday	80.1	2.5	3.6	4.8	8.1
SH2, north of Kopura Canal Bridge	All days	86.0	2.4	1.7	3.5	6.0
	Weekday	83.7	2.6	2.0	3.9	7.6
PEM Rural Strategic	All days	77	9	5	4	5
	Weekday	71	12	5	4	8
Papamoa Beach, north of Sandhurst Drive	All days	94.6	2.5	0.7	1.4	0.2
	Weekday	94.1	2.8	0.9	1.4	0.2
PEM Urban Arterial	All days	83	10	3	2	2
	Weekday	81	10	4	2	3
Domain Road, east of the Garden Drive	All days	90.0	6.4	1.1	1.4	0.4
	Weekday	89.3	6.6	1.3	1.7	0.6
PEM Urban Other	All days	88	9	1	1	1
	Weekday	87	8	2	2	1

Note: definitions of vehicle classifications are given in Section 1.3

Combining the percentages for cars and LCVs indicates a similarity between SH2 and the "typical" composition given in the PEM for rural strategic roads. Similarly, for Papamoa Beach and the PEM composition for urban arterial roads and Domain Road and the PEM composition for urban other roads. The default compositions from the PEM are shown in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2: Vehicle Composition					
	CAR	LCV	MCV	HCV I	HCV II
RURAL STRATEGIC					
Weekday	71	12	5	4	8
Weekend/Holiday	89	3	3	3	2
All Periods	77	9	5	4	5
URBAN OTHER					
Weekday	71%	12%	5%	4%	8%
Weekend/Holiday	89%	3%	3%	3%	2%
All Periods	77%	9%	5%	4%	5%
URBAN ARTERIAL					
Morning Peak	82%	10%	3%	2%	3%
Inter Peak	78%	10%	4%	3%	5%
Evening Peak	84%	11%	2%	2%	1%
Evening/ Night-time	81%	9%	3%	2%	5%
Weekend Holiday	88%	8%	2%	2%	1%

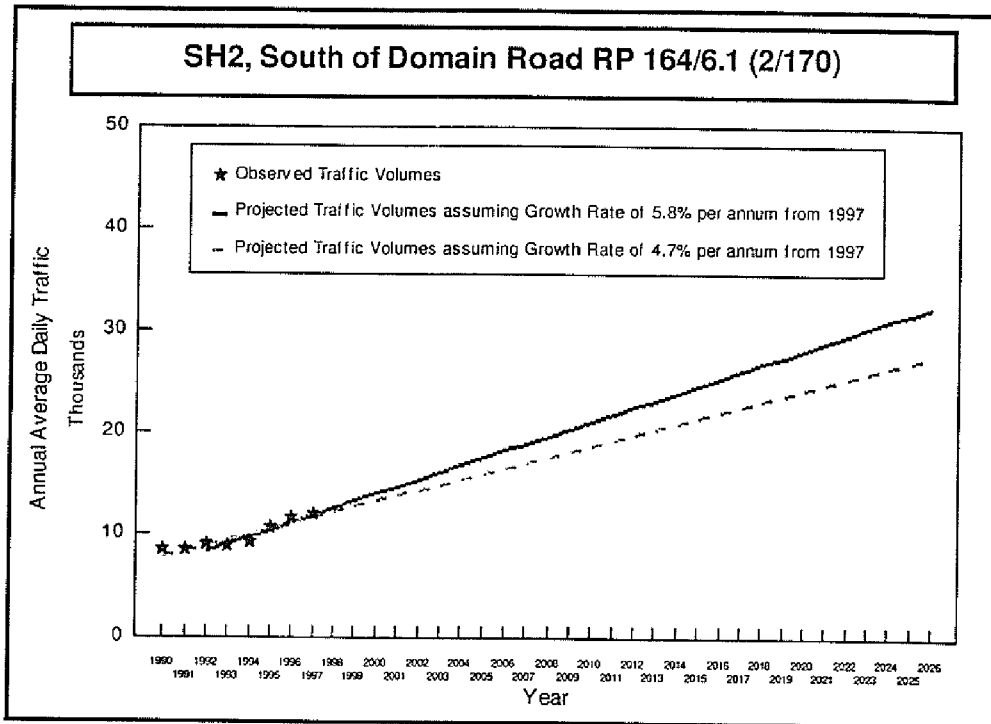
SOURCE: PEM, PFM2, TABLE A4.1

In the economic calculations the composition of traffic has been assumed to be similar to that detailed in the Project Evaluation Manual (PEM) for a rural strategic road, for all roads, because as trips can re-route to alternative routes which may have a different status, it is not considered appropriate that the same trip may have a different travel time cost depending on the road travelled on.

4.1.4. HISTORICAL TRAFFIC GROWTH

An analysis of the 1992 to 1997 traffic flows on SH2, south of Domain Road indicates that the traffic volumes have been increasing at a rate of 6.5% per annum since 1992. (Note: growth rates are quoted as arithmetic, not geometric rates). Using a regression analysis, this would relate to a 5.8% increase in growth from the projected 1997 traffic volume, assuming historical growth continues. An analysis of the traffic growth which occurred between 1990 and 1997 indicates a growth rate of 6.1% per annum since 1990, correlating to a lower predicted growth rate of 4.7% from 1997. This is illustrated in Graph 2 which also shows the projection of traffic flows should either growth rate continue.

Graph 2 Historical Traffic Volumes on State Highway 2



These growth rates could be considered to be the “low” and “high” growth scenarios with a “probable” scenario being the average of the growth rates based from 1997, ie 5.3% per annum.

Table 4.3 details the growth rates of historical traffic flows in the study area, and provides the annual growth rate for the historical flows, and the equivalent growth rate which would occur from 1997, should the growth rate remain the same. These rates were used to factor up flows to 1997 values in order to validate the modelled 1997 flows.

	Historical Arithmetic Annual Growth Rate - regression on 1990 to 1997 data	Historical Arithmetic Annual Growth Rate - regression on 1992 to 1997 data	Projected Annual Growth Rate “Probable Growth”
SH2, south of Domain Road	4.7% pa from 1997	5.8 pa from 1997	5.3% pa from 1997
SH2, north side of Mangatawa Lane	3.5% pa from 1997	5.4% pa from 1997	4.5% pa from 1997
SH2, Rangiuru, north of rail overbridge	4.1% pa from 1997	5.4% pa from 1997	4.8% pa from 1997

4.1.5. TRAVEL TIMES

Travel time information was collected by BCHF in November 1997 using "floating car" surveys where a car travels at the same speed as the traffic stream. Routes were taken along SH2 between Te Maunga Roundabout and Paengaroa Intersection, and a circuit around Domain Road, Papamoa Beach Road, Girven Road, Maunganui Road and SH2. Travel times were noted at several locations along the route in order to obtain travel times for various sections and at significant intersections. The average of the observed travel times for the morning peak, midday and evening peak periods, are summarised in Table 4.4.

		Morning Peak Period	Midday Period	Evening Peak Period
SH2: Domain Road to SH2/SH33 Intersection	North/ Westbound	14.65	15.38	15.70
	South/ Eastbound	14.77	15.15	15.43
Domain Road/ Papamoa Beach Road: Sunrise Avenue to SH2	North/ Westbound	6.25	6.11	5.71
	South/ Eastbound	6.42	6.58	6.23

4.2. TRAFFIC MODELLING

4.2.1. MODELLING METHODOLOGY

Modelling of the road network is necessary to determine the amount of traffic which would use a changed road network, to estimate the distance which would be travelled, and also the time taken by motorists while travelling each of the options considered. The model can also indicate the parts of the road network affected by any proposals, and for possible changes in accidents and travel times.

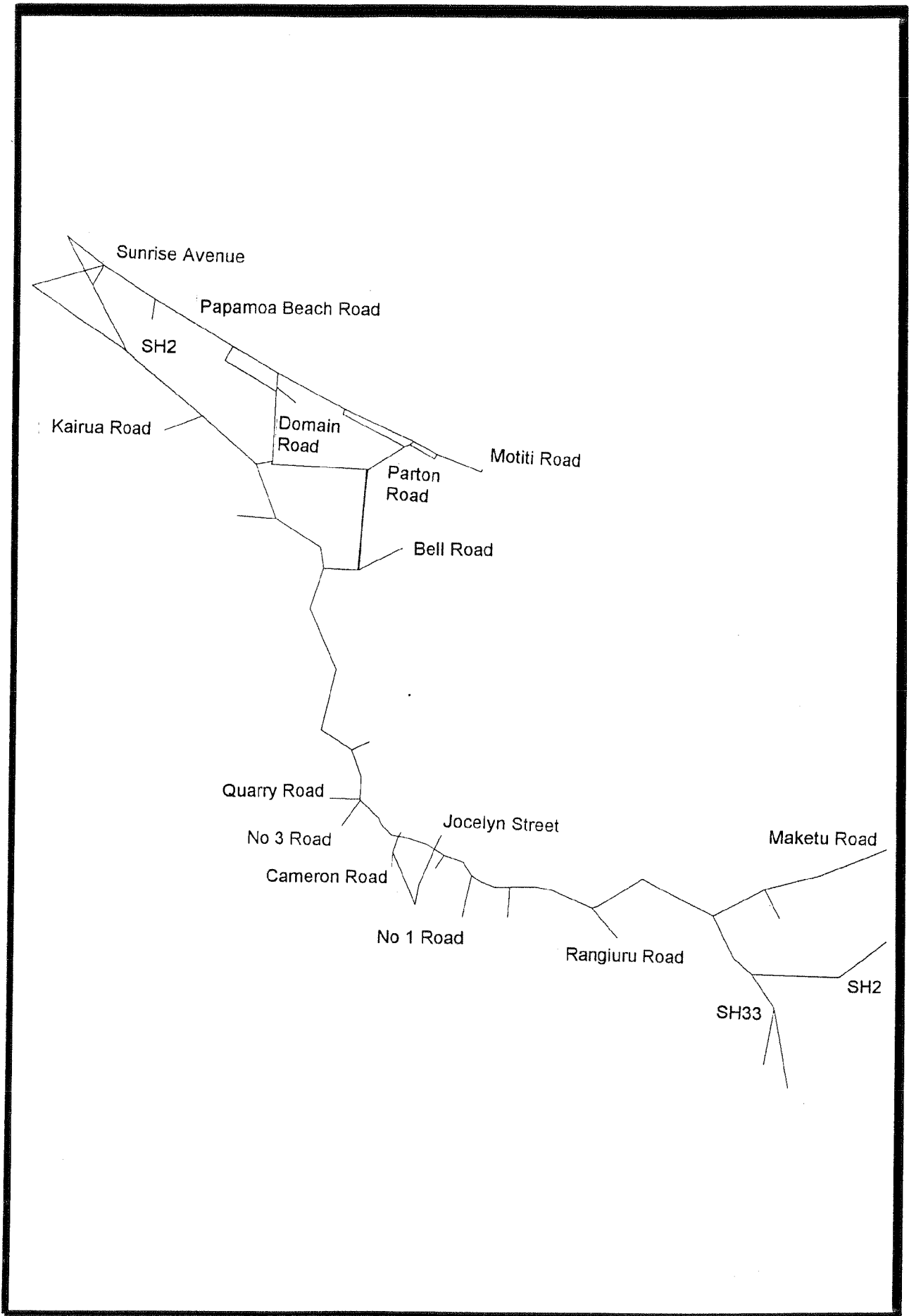
The distance travelled and time taken to travel would change according to different road network scenarios, as motorists change their routes to get to a certain destination by the best possible route. BCHF have developed a transportation model for the years 1997, 2001, 2006, 2011, 2016, 2021, 2031, 2041 and 2051 with associated 1 hour origin-destination matrices for each of the morning peak, interpeak, evening peak and off peak periods. The modelled roading network extends from the Paengaroa Intersection to Te Maunga and includes SH2, Domain Road and Papamoa Beach Road, as shown in the modelled network in Figure 4.2. The surveyed trip demand area covered a wider area, incorporating Tauranga, in order that growth predictions in the Tauranga area could be applied to non-through traffic.

The Traffic Model Development and Validation Report, March 1998 describes the development of the model including the matrices and roading network.

4.2.2. FUTURE LAND USE

The land use predictions detailed in the Traffic Model Development and Validation Report, April 1998 (revision 2) have been provided by TDC and WBoPDC and are generally based on household predictions. Some areas including the Tauranga CBD have been assumed to grow at a constant rate, commensurate with the observed growth in industry/commerce of 2.4% per annum. Other areas are considered as potential development sites for industry, including the area to the north of Bell Road, expansion of the Te Puke industrial area and close to the Paengaroa Intersection at Rangiuru. These areas have been considered on an isolated basis, and in conjunction with Wasley Consultants, a prediction of the likely land use has been developed. The trip rate and distribution of trips from these areas has been assumed to be similar to that currently occurring within the Te Puke industrial area.

Future year matrices cannot be validated against observed traffic flows, however the application of the various growth rates to the planning area units and the external zones has been validated against traffic counts growthed up to a future year using the combined growth rates at key locations. The resulting growth rates for traffic flows on SH2 either side of Te Puke and to the east of the Te Maunga Intersection are shown in Table 4.5. The modelled growth rate in trips indicates that the growth assumptions used in the model are quite conservative in comparison with current trends, the PEM advises a 3% growth rate for strategic rural areas.



10_net .NET

Figure 4.2 Modelled Roding Network

Table 4.5 Modelled AADT Flows with Growth Per Annum - Do Minimum Network

	1997	2001	% pa from 1997	2006	% pa from 2001	2011	% pa from 2006	2016	% pa from 2011	2021	% pa from 2016	2031	% pa from 2021	2041	% pa from 2031	2051	% pa from 2041
SH2, Kopura Canal Northbound	7070	7866	2.8%	9714	4.7%	11398	3.5%	13424	3.6%	15408	4.9%	17788	1.5%	19732	1.1%	21748	1.0%
SH2, Kopura Canal Southbound	7063	7781	2.5%	9371	4.6%	11334	3.7%	13146	3.2%	15345	4.9%	17657	1.5%	19633	1.1%	21594	1.0%
SH2, east of Te Maunga Roundabout Westbound	7578	8479	3.0%	9595	2.6%	10686	2.3%	11881	2.2%	13000	3.0%	14711	1.3%	16217	1.0%	17734	0.9%
SH2, east of Te Maunga Roundabout Eastbound	7629	8473	2.8%	9618	2.7%	10757	2.4%	11940	2.2%	13244	3.1%	15042	1.4%	16721	1.1%	18360	1.0%
Papamoa Beach Road Westbound	6159	7216	4.3%	8695	4.1%	10144	3.3%	11552	2.8%	13280	4.8%	15423	1.6%	17187	1.5%	20220	1.4%
Papamoa Beach Road Eastbound	6447	7566	4.3%	8994	3.8%	10394	3.1%	11771	2.6%	13254	4.4%	15352	1.6%	17608	1.5%	19970	1.3%
Domain Road Northbound	2013	2282	3.3%	3257	8.5%	4263	6.2%	5156	4.2%	6133	8.5%	7236	1.8%	7819	0.8%	8523	0.9%
Domain Road Southbound	1850	2107	3.5%	3096	9.4%	4050	6.2%	5002	4.7%	5809	8.9%	6709	1.5%	7490	1.2%	8280	1.1%
Tara Road Westbound	618	710	3.7%	754	1.2%	912	4.2%	1017	2.3%	1340	4.9%	2219	6.6%	2615	1.8%	2712	0.4%
Tara Road Eastbound	439	486	2.7%	538	2.1%	631	3.5%	906	8.7%	1052	5.8%	1770	6.8%	2665	5.1%	3262	2.2%
SH2, east of Paengaroa Intersection Eastbound	2722	3183	4.2%	3630	2.8%	3963	1.8%	4441	2.4%	4971	3.4%	5711	1.5%	6422	1.2%	7109	1.1%
SH2, east of Paengaroa Intersection Westbound	3249	3786	4.1%	4302	2.7%	4693	1.8%	5238	2.3%	5838	3.3%	6733	1.5%	7552	1.2%	8389	1.1%
SH33, south of Paengaroa Intersection Southbound	2734	3028	2.7%	3375	2.3%	3808	2.6%	4275	2.5%	4695	3.0%	5349	1.4%	6014	1.2%	6663	1.1%
SH33, south of Paengaroa Intersection Northbound	2468	2742	2.8%	3109	2.7%	3533	2.7%	3915	2.2%	4382	3.2%	5034	1.5%	5607	1.1%	6218	1.1%
Maketu Road Northbound	1213	1324	2.3%	1516	2.9%	1712	2.6%	1940	2.7%	2148	3.2%	2512	1.7%	3016	10.0%	6450	2.9%
Maketu Road Southbound	1027	1139	2.7%	1306	2.9%	1500	3.0%	1683	2.4%	1884	3.5%	2181	1.6%	4504	10.7%	5831	2.9%

4.2.3. TRIP ASSIGNMENT, CONVERGENCE, MODEL CALIBRATION AND VALIDATION

The Traffic Model Development and Validation Report, April details the trip assignment procedures, development of speed flow curves and model calibration and validation. This report was reviewed by John Bolland of Kingston Morrison (Wellington) and his comments were incorporated in the final report.

4.2.4. DEVELOPMENT OF THE OPTIONS

Base Network

Minor and committed works have been included in the do minimum option. These would provide relief from bottlenecks which could otherwise unduly contribute to the benefits of one of the proposed options. The following works have therefore been included in the do minimum network, with the year of inclusion stated:

- Passing Lanes - N2, N3, S1 and S2 as defined in the Te Maunga - Te Puke Passing Lanes Study, January 1998.
- Upgrade to SH2/Domain Road intersection - roundabout.
- Improvements to SH2/Cameron Road I/C - signals.

The coding of the intersections was checked and calibrated to ensure realistic intersection capacities were being modelled.

Bypass Options

The Sandhill Route, Alternative Route (Option A3) and the Swamp Route (Option B) all include the base network with the following projects, possibly included in staged development:

- 2 lanes from Domain Road to Paengaroa Intersection, including intersection upgrades at Domain Road and Paengaroa and an intersection at Bell Road.
- 4 lanes from Te Maunga to Domain Road
- 4 lanes from Domain Road to Bell Road, 2 lanes from Bell road to Paengaroa
- 4 lanes from Bell Road to Paengaroa.

Option C (Existing Alignment)

This option includes the base network with the following projects possibly included in staged development:

- Passing lanes N1, N4, S3
- Upgrade Paengaroa Intersection to a roundabout
- SH2: 4 lanes from Te Maunga to Domain Road

- SH2: 4 lanes from Domain Road to Te Puke
- Widen SH2 with improvements through Te Puke
- SH2: 4 lanes from Te Puke to Paengaroa and upgrade Paengaroa Intersection

With 8 future years being modelled, the various stages of the options have been included in those years either side of their assumed opening date so that the results can be interpolated for the years between the modelled years.

4.3. RESULTS OF THE TRAFFIC MODELLING

4.3.1. MODELLED TRAFFIC FLOWS

The traffic flows on the road network for the do minimum and option scenarios for each of the modelled years have been used in the economic analysis. Appendix B includes modelled 1 hour traffic volumes for the do minimum and Options A3 and B for the years 2011 and 2021, for the morning peak, interpeak, evening peak and off peak periods.

The modelled traffic flows on certain links are shown in Table 4.6 (overleaf) for each option. These are indicated by morning peak period (AM), interpeak (IP) and evening peak (PM). The modelled volumes are for the 5 weekdays, and do not include weekends.

4.3.2. MODELLED TRAVEL TIMES

Table 4.7 provides the modelled travel times between Domain Road intersection with SH2 and the Paengaroa Intersection, in vehicle-minutes for each 1 hour modelled period.

Table 4.7 Modelled Travel Times (minutes) SH2: Domain Road to Paengaroa Intersection						
	AM Peak		Inter Peak		PM Peak	
	eastbound	westbound	eastbound	westbound	eastbound	westbound
2001						
Base Network	15.38	15.38	15.12	15.40	15.69	16.23
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	9.12	9.11	9.12	9.16	9.16	9.18
Option B (Swamp Route)	9.03	9.00	9.03	9.03	9.05	9.07
Option C (Existing Route)	14.34	14.49	14.27	14.50	14.47	14.78
2011						
Base Option	16.05	16.57	15.67	16.13	18.53	18.65
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	9.17	9.16	9.16	9.18	9.23	9.23
Option B (Swamp Route)	9.04	9.03	9.06	9.07	9.11	9.13

Option C (Existing Route)	14.68	14.86	14.49	14.77	14.93	15.13
2021						
Base Option	19.57	25.77	16.88	18.54	38.54	28.31
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	9.22	9.21	9.24	9.26	9.30	9.31
Option B (Swamp Route)	9.11	9.11	9.13	9.14	9.20	9.20
Option C (Existing Route)	15.06	15.23	14.79	15.08	15.81	16.83
2041						
Base Option	44.11	43.53	25.61	30.41	80.00	72.88
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	9.40	9.29	9.33	9.38	9.41	9.48
Option B (Swamp Route)	9.26	9.18	9.21	9.25	9.30	9.37
Option C (Existing Route)	16.27	15.96	15.34	15.63	17.71	18.02

Table 4.6 Modelled Average 1 Hour Traffic Volumes

Location	Base Network												Option A3 (Alternative Route)						Option B (Swamp Route)						Option C (Existing Route)														
	2001			2011			2021			2041			2001			2011			2021			2041			2001			2011			2021			2041					
	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT	AM	IP	PM	OFF	AADT				
SH2, north of Te Puke (south of Kopura Canal Bridge)	AM	1173	1775	2451	3127	749	1208	1735	1970	2041	2011	2021	2041	749	1207	1728	1936	2041	1173	1775	2451	3127	1173	1775	2451	3127	1173	1775	2451	3127	1173	1775	2451	3127	1173	1775	2451	3127	
	IP	1066	1562	2121	2721	552	898	1283	1475	1970	2041	2011	2021	1970	2041	552	896	1281	1460	1066	1562	2121	2721	1066	1562	2121	2721	1066	1562	2121	2721	1066	1562	2121	2721	1066	1562	2121	2721
	PM	1438	2102	2851	3657	787	1246	1769	2018	2018	2018	2018	2018	2018	787	1244	1765	1983	2018	1438	2102	2851	3657	1438	2102	2851	3657	1438	2102	2851	3657	1438	2102	2851	3657	1438	2102	2851	3657
	OFF	589	804	1054	1342	313	461	629	727	727	727	727	727	313	460	627	718	727	589	804	1054	1342	589	804	1054	1342	589	804	1054	1342	589	804	1054	1342	589	804	1054	1342	
	AADT	15650	22730	30750	39370	8510	13510	19150	21960	21960	21960	21960	21960	8510	13490	19110	21670	21960	15650	22730	30750	39370	15650	22730	30750	39370	15650	22730	30750	39370	15650	22730	30750	39370	15650	22730	30750	39370	
SH2, east of Te Maunga	AM	1291	1652	2016	2497	1291	1652	2038	2568	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	1291	1652	2038	2568	
	IP	1138	1448	1795	2276	1138	1448	1795	2266	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	1138	1448	1795	2266	
	PM	1547	1977	2468	3101	1547	1977	2456	3105	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	1547	1977	2456	3105	
	OFF	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	1223	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	658	805	976	1223	
	AADT	16950	21440	26440	33280	16950	21440	26460	33360	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	16950	21440	26460	33360	
SH2, east of Te Puke	AM	1126	1461	1831	2575	702	894	1115	1418	1418	702	893	1108	1384	702	893	1108	1384	1126	1461	1831	2575	1126	1461	1831	2575	1126	1461	1831	2575	1126	1461	1831	2575	1126	1461	1831	2575	
	IP	1057	1350	1690	2326	543	686	852	1080	1080	543	684	850	1065	543	684	850	1065	1057	1350	1690	2326	1057	1350	1690	2326	1057	1350	1690	2326	1057	1350	1690	2326	1057	1350	1690	2326	
	PM	1387	1784	2238	3103	736	928	1156	1464	1464	736	926	1152	1429	736	926	1152	1429	1387	1784	2238	3103	1387	1784	2238	3103	1387	1784	2238	3103	1387	1784	2238	3103	1387	1784	2238	3103	
	OFF	646	790	956	1280	370	447	531	665	665	370	447	531	665	370	446	529	656	646	790	956	1280	646	790	956	1280	646	790	956	1280	646	790	956	1280	646	790	956	1280	
	AADT	15670	19910	24780	34080	8540	10690	13180	16670	16670	8540	10670	13130	16380	8540	10670	13130	16380	15670	19910	24780	34080	15670	19910	24780	34080	15670	19910	24780	34080	15670	19910	24780	34080	15670	19910	24780	34080	
Papamoa Beach Road (between Sunrise Avenue and Sandhurst Drive)	AM	945	1307	1690	2286	945	1307	1667	2215	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	945	1307	1667	2215	
	IP	967	1350	1741	2303	967	1350	1741	2312	2312	967	1350	1741	2312	967	1350	1741	2312	967	1350	1741	2303	967	1350	1741	2303	967	1350	1741	2303	967	1350	1741	2303	967	1350	1741	2303	
	PM	1261	1775	2286	3059	1261	1775	2298	3055	3055	1261	1775	2298	3055	1261	1775	2298	3055	1261	1775	2286	3059	1261	1775	2298	3055	1261	1775	2286	3059	1261	1775	2298	3055	1261	1775	2298	3055	
	OFF	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	1640	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	716	979	1235	1640	
	AADT	14780	20540	26330	35060	14780	20540	26330	34970	34970	14780	20540	26330	34970	14780	20540	26330	34970	14780	20540	26330	35060	14780	20540	26330	34970	14780	20540	26330	34970	14780	20540	26330	34970	14780	20540	26330	34970	
Domain Road (north of SH2)	AM	414	577	1081	1235	421	765	1146	1506	1506	421	757	1136	1512	421	757	1136	1512	414	577	1081	1235	414	577	1081	1235	414	577	1081	1235	414	577	1081	1235	414	577	1081	1235	
	IP	253	516	806	1077	257	522	812	1100	1100	257	516	806	1086	253	516	806	1086	253	516	806	1077	257	516	806	1086	253	516	806	1086	253	516	806	1086	253	516	806	1086	
	PM	435	798	1067	1309	436	799	1207	1585	1585	436	798	1206	1614	435	798	1206	1614	435	798	1067	1309	435	798	1206	1614	435	798	1067	1309	435	798	1206	1614	435	798	1206	1614	
	OFF	183	317	468	627	189	322	475	638	638	189	317	468	627	183	317	468	627	183	317	468	627	189	317	468	627	183	317	468	627	189	317	468	627	183	317	468	627	
	AADT	4390	8320	12290	15780	4460	8400	12780	17090	17090	4460	8320	12680	17010	4390	8320	12680	17010	4390	8320	8320	12290	4460	8320	12680	17010	4390	8320	12680	17010	4390	8320	12680	17010	4390	8320	12680	17010	
SH2, east of Paengaroa	AM	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	926	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	461	573	716	926	
	IP	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	955	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	473	590	739	955	
	PM	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	1275	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	611	777	983	1275	
	OFF	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	574	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	301	363	445	574	
	AADT	6970	8660	10810	13970	6970	8660	10810	13970	13970	6970	8660	10810	13970	6970	8660	10810	13970	6970	8660	8660	10810	6970	8660	10810	13970	6970	8660	10810	13970	6970	8660	10810	13970	6970	8660	10810	13970	
SH33, south of Paengaroa	AM	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	772	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	369	480	598	772	
	IP	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	693	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	331	426	538	693	
	PM	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	727	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	354	455	564	727	
	OFF	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	293	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	166	197	232	293	
	AADT	4600	5840	7260	9320	4600	5840	7260	9320	9320	4600	5840	7260	9320	4600	5840	7260	9320	46																				

Table 4.8 indicates the time saved in vehicle minutes for the bypass options A3 (Alternative Route) and B (Swamp Route) and for the option involving widening the existing route.

Table 4.8 Travel Time Saved (minutes) SH2: Domain Road to Paengaroa Intersection						
	AM Peak		Inter Peak		PM Peak	
	eastbound	westbound	eastbound	westbound	eastbound	westbound
2001						
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	6.26	6.27	6.00	6.24	6.53	7.05
Option B (Swamp Route)	6.35	6.38	6.09	6.37	6.64	7.16
Option C (Existing Route)	1.04	0.89	0.85	0.9	1.22	1.45
2011						
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	6.88	7.41	6.51	6.95	9.3	9.42
Option B (Swamp Route)	7.01	7.54	6.61	7.06	9.42	9.52
Option C (Existing Route)	1.37	1.71	1.18	1.36	3.6	3.52
2021						
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	10.35	16.56	7.64	9.28	29.24	19
Option B (Swamp Route)	10.46	16.66	7.75	9.4	29.34	19.11
Option C (Existing Route)	4.51	10.54	2.09	3.46	22.73	11.48
2041						
Option A3 (Alternative Route)	34.71	34.24	16.28	21.03	70.59	63.4
Option B (Swamp Route)	34.85	34.35	16.4	21.16	70.7	63.51
Option C (Existing Route)	27.84	27.57	10.27	14.78	62.29	54.86

The bypass options accrue similar time savings, with Option B (the Swamp Route) gaining slightly greater savings than Option A3 (the Alternative Route) due to its shorter length. Option C, comprising widening of the existing route, whilst gaining significant savings in the later years of the evaluation, shows little savings in the initial years.

5. ACCIDENT ANALYSIS

5.1. METHODOLOGY

The methodology used in the accident analysis was to calculate accident rates on key routes and at key intersections, and was based on the assumption that the change in accident numbers and hence accident costs, is directly proportional to the change in traffic flow.

All the key routes where a significant change in traffic flows was expected were included in the analysis. Homogenous routes were selected based on the road environment, speed limit, traffic flows and on the expected impact of each project. Key intersections were analysed separately. Figure 5.1 indicates the routes and intersections analysed.

5.2. CALCULATION OF EXISTING ACCIDENT RATES

The number of reported accidents on each route and intersection between 1992 and 1996 was determined from the LTSA's Accident Investigation System. Accidents recorded at minor intersections were included in the accident rates on the adjacent routes. A listing of the crashes which numbers the accident in relation to the links and intersections shown in Figure 5.1 is given in Appendix C.

Because observed traffic flow information was not available for every link in the network, the accident rates were determined from the modelled 1997 existing network flows. Subsequently the rates calculated are not true 'existing accident rates' but rather estimated 1997 rates, used only for comparing the effects of the option networks. The accident rates on the routes were determined as a function of the route length, recorded 1992-1996 accident history, and the two-way total daily flow. The daily flows on each link were calculated from factored sums of the four modelled periods (am, ip, pm and off peak). Accident rates at intersections were determined as a function of the accident history and the total inflow at the intersection. Intersection accidents were determined from the accident type, location and a subjective assessment of the cause of the accident. For example, rear end accidents some distance from the intersection were attributed to the intersection rather than the route.

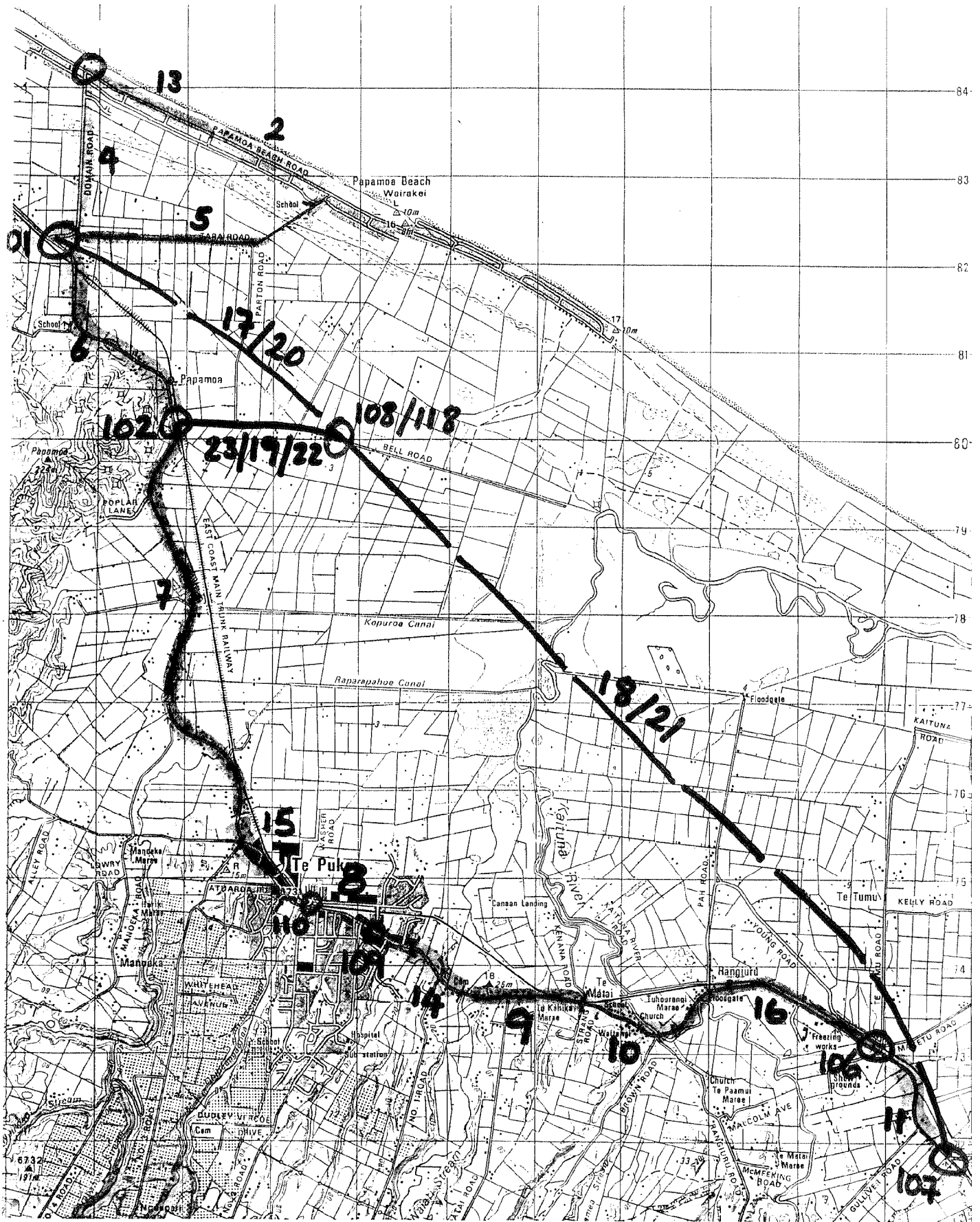


Figure 5.1 Road Sections included in Crash Analysis

Accident rates for only injury accidents were determined, as per the PEM procedures for accident rate analysis. In total, some 269 reported accidents were analysed. The calculation of the existing accident rates is contained in Appendix C.

Rates for new intersections were based on the typical intersection injury accidents from the PEM. The rates used for the new or upgraded intersections are summarised in Table 5.1.

Table 5.1 Assumed Accident Rates at New Intersections	
	Assumed Injury Rate per 10⁶ veh
3 Arm Roundabout	0.042
4 Arm Roundabout	0.115
4 Arm Signalised Intersection	0.134

5.3. CALCULATION OF ACCIDENT COSTS

The network-wide accident costs for the base, and certain stages of the options were determined from the calculated and predicted rates and the modelled flows for each of the modelled years. For the purposes of route selection, not all the stages of each option were calculated as it was considered that certain stages would represent the future accident costs of other similar projects.

Accident rates and costs for injury accidents were evaluated in the economic analysis. Standard costs per injury accident were obtained from Table A6.10 of the PEM (February 1996 amendment). The unit costs used in the analysis are shown in Table 5.2.

Table 5.2 - Assumed Unit Accident Costs (\$1994/accident)	
Speed Limit (kph)	Injury Accidents
50	\$194,000
60	\$194,000
70	\$314,000
80	\$514,000
100	\$514,000
100 Remote	\$831,000
100 Motorway	\$227,000
Source: PFM2, First Revision	

6. ECONOMIC ANALYSIS

6.1. INTRODUCTION

The economic evaluation has been undertaken in accordance with the procedures outlined in the PEM (PFM2, First Revision) to firstly identify the favoured alignment and secondly to determine the Benefit Cost Ratio (BCR) for the favoured alignment.

A fifty year analysis period was used to determine the logical order of project construction for each corridor with a FYRR determining when each option within a project would become viable. However, in many cases, the increase in benefits over the analysis period was found to be exponential rather than linear, resulting in a 25 year benefit cost ratio reaching the current cut-off of 4 earlier than the FYRR reached 36%. Where this occurred, it was assumed that the project would be implemented when the 25 year BCR reached 4. An incremental benefit cost ratio analysis between the options was used to determine the favoured overall option.

The route choice analysis period starts at time zero, 1 July 1998, and comprises a 50 year evaluation from 1 July 1998 to 30 June 2048. A 10% discount factor was used in the analysis.

The BCR analysis period starts at time zero, 1 July 1998, and comprises a 25 year evaluation from the earliest date that major costs could occur, being 1 July 1998. The evaluation period is therefore 1 July 1998 to 30 June 2023. Both a 7% and 10% discount factor were used in the analysis.

Both analyses include the cost values of capital and maintenance, and benefits arising from user costs comprising travel time, vehicle operating costs, crash costs and the values associated with the intangible benefits determined by Opus International Consultants, McDermott Fairgray and Valuation Technologies. These intangible benefits include the willingness of Te Puke residents to pay for improvements and were values accepted by Transit and Transfund. BCHF were instructed to include them in the economic analysis of the Eastern Arterial, a letter to Colin Crampton from Opus International Consultants indicating these benefits to be \$229,000 per annum is included in Appendix D.

The traffic models described in Section 4.2 provided the basis for determining the user costs. Traffic models for the do minimum and other options were developed for four daily periods (morning peak, evening peak, interpeak and off-peak periods) and for nine points in time, ie. the years 1997, 2001, 2006, 2011, 2016, 2021, 2031, 2041 and 2051.

Annual user costs were calculated for these years, and a year by year time stream of annual costs developed by interpolation of each years' results. The capital costs over the evaluation period were discounted to the base date of 1 July 1997, resulting in a Net Present Value (NPV) for each option.

The following sections detail the analysis of the benefits included in the economic analysis and the identification of the favoured alignment.

6.2. TRAVEL TIME COST CALCULATION

Travel time costs were derived directly from the traffic models and calculated separately for link travel times (uninterrupted travel along a link), and turn times (turn delays at intersections). The travel time cost for each link and turn was assessed based on a rural strategic link type. The unit costs for standard traffic mixes, occupant time, and vehicle and freight time combined have been obtained from Table A3.3 of the PEM and are detailed in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1 - Travel Time Unit Costs (\$/hr, 1994)				
Road Type	AM	MIDDAY	PM	OFF
Urban Arterial	13.4	16.6	12.8	13.9
Urban Industrial	18.4	18.4	18.4	18.4
Urban Other	14.2	14.2	14.2	14.2
Rural Strategic	22.2	22.2	22.2	22.2
Rural Other	21.0	21.0	21.0	21.0

In order not to prejudice roads considered to carry rural strategic traffic compared to urban traffic, the rural strategic travel time unit costs were used for all traffic.

In the economic evaluation, the travel time costs were updated to 1997 costs by applying a factor of 1.06.

6.3. VEHICLE OPERATING COST CALCULATION

Two components of vehicle operating costs were calculated in the analysis; running costs, and idle costs while at a stop. Running costs were applied to the assessed links in the traffic model, based on the link type and travel speed. Idle costs while at a stop were applied to the modelled turn delays. The standard unit rates (\$1994), detailed in the PEM were used and updated to 1997 costs by applying a factor of 1.05.

6.4. ACCIDENT COST CALCULATION

Accident costs were estimated for key routes and intersections, based on an accident rate analysis. Accident rates were calculated on selected accident routes and intersections, based on the reported accident history between 1991-1995 (previously described in Section 5). Due to the lack of sufficient observed traffic flow in certain locations, the accident rates used were based on the modelled 1997 Do Minimum flows, rather than observed 1997 flows. Accident costs for each option were calculated based on the estimated 1997 rates, and future year modelled flows. This methodology is based on the assumption that accident frequencies are directly proportional to the traffic flows (two-way daily flows for links and total daily in-flow for intersections). While this assumption may not strictly be valid, this methodology is recommended in the PEM and in an analysis such as this, gives a valid estimate of the effect of the project on network-wide accident.

The calculation of the existing accident rates and predicted rates at new locations, has been previously detailed in Section 5.

The accident costs (\$1994) were updated to 1997 costs by applying a factor of 1.06.

6.5. CAPITAL COSTS

Engineering cost estimates for the projects are contained in Appendix A. The construction costs used in the analysis are summarised in Section 3, Table 3.1.

6.6. MAINTENANCE COSTS

Maintenance costs were not assessed network-wide as such costs would be very difficult to assess, and the effect of options on the maintenance costs of existing roads would be difficult to gauge. The maintenance costs detailed in Section 3.4.2 were used as an indication of the maintenance costs, over and above those for the base case, incurred by each project.

6.7. CALCULATION OF ANNUAL USER COSTS

Typical weekday and weekend daily flow profiles, shown previously in Graph 1, were developed for the study area based on traffic counts undertaken on SH2, south of Kopura Canal Bridge. Factors to estimate the predicted Annual Daily Traffic (ADT) from the four modelled periods were derived from the 7-day profile. The assumed ADT factors are indicated in Table 6.2.

Period	Average Hour From:	Contribution	ADT Factor
AM	0700-0900	15.3%	2
IP	0900-1600	47.6%	7
PM	1600-1800	18.5%	2
OFF	1800-2030	18.6%	5.03

Estimated link ADTs were subsequently calculated by summing the peak period flows weighted by the above factors.

In estimating factors for calculating annual costs from the peak costs, it was assumed that the am and pm peak periods occurred for 2 hours of each working day (0700-0900 and 1600-1800) and the ip period occurred for 7 hours (0900-1600), with the off-peak period providing the 13 remaining hours (1800-0700) of each working day. A typical year was assumed to include 245 working days. For the weekend profile, an 11-hour period was assumed (0800-1900) to be equivalent to 11.8 average-hour weekday interpeak periods, with the factoring representing the small difference between the weekday and weekend average peak flow levels. The remainder of the weekend period (1900-0800) was assumed to be equivalent to 13.4 average-hour off-peak weekday periods. The calculation of the annual factors is detailed in Table 6.3.

Period	Weekday		Weekend		Annual
	Hours/day	Days/year	Periods/day	Days/year	Periods/year
AM	2	245	0	0	490
IP	8	245	11.8	120	3,371
PM	2	245	0	0	490
OFF	12	245	13.4	120	4,542

6.8. TIME STREAM OF COSTS

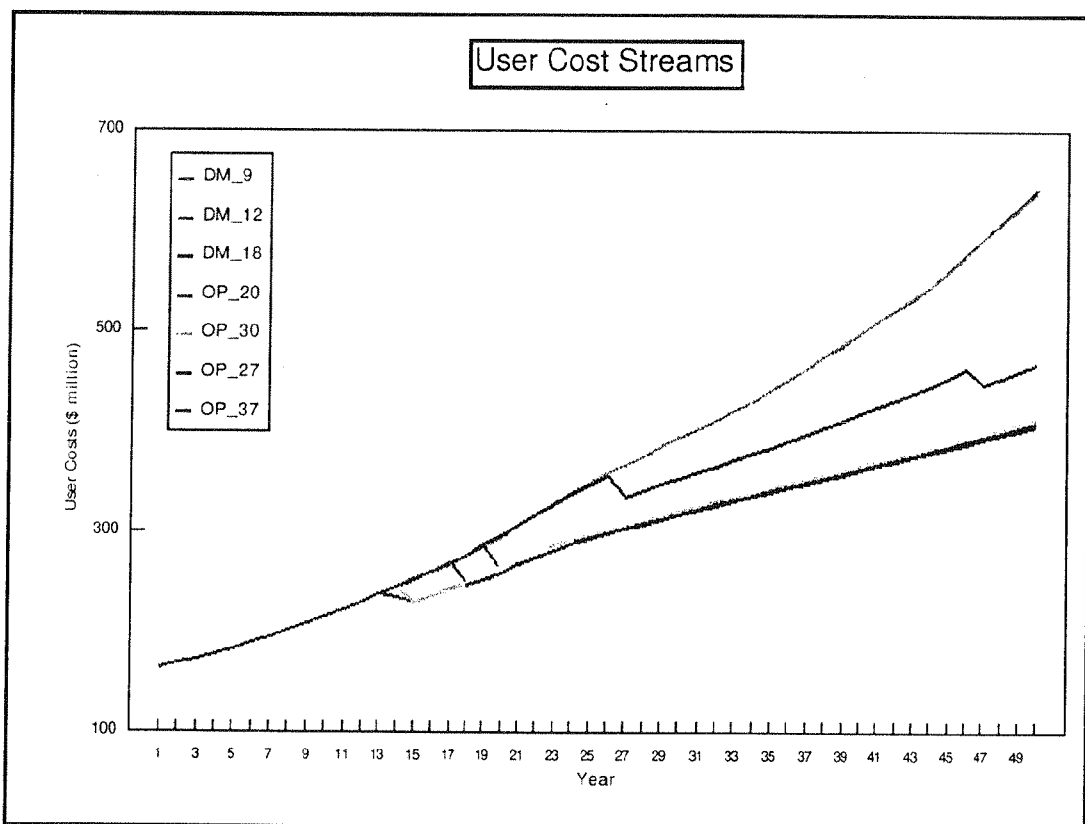
The **Base Date** for the analysis is 1 July 1997 with **Time Zero** as 1 July 1998. The 50 year analysis period was assumed to be 1 July 1998 to 30 June 2048.

Annual costs for every year in the evaluation period were calculated from each of the modelled years' results for each option. Annual costs between modelled years were determined by interpolation of the intervening modelled results. As various stages of each option were completed, the benefits from these works and their associated interpolated results were included in the benefit-cost stream.

The assumed time stream of user costs (travel time, vehicle operating and accident costs), for some of the projects included in the 50 year strategy study, is shown in Graph 6. The difference between the time streams for the do minimum and each option gives the benefit of the project.

Appendix E details the time stream of capital costs and user costs and benefits compared to the base option for each proposed option.

Graph 6 Time Stream of User Costs



- Note: DM_9: Existing Network
 DM_12: Base Network - ie existing network plus passing lanes N1, N3, S1 and S2 constructed in year 1, Domain Road roundabout and Cameron Road signals implemented in year 8.
 DM_18: Base network plus passing lanes N1, N3 and S3 constructed in year 13, SH2/SH33 roundabout, Maketu Rd Roundabout, Collins Rd roundabout and Bell Rd roundabout constructed in year 18, 4 laning of SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road constructed in year 19, 4 laning SH2 between Domain Road and Te Puke and improvements through Te Puke implemented in year 26 and 4 laning SH2 between Te Puke and Paengaroa constructed from year 46.

- OP_20 Base network plus 2 laning of the Alternative Route (Option A3) between Domain Road and Paengaroa, with at grade intersections, implemented in year 13.5, 4 laning SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road in year 24.
- OP_30 Base network plus 2 laning of the Swamp Route (Option B) between Domain Road and Paengaroa, with at grade intersections, implemented in year 14, 4 laning SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road in year 25.
- OP_27 Base network plus 4 laning of the Alternative Route (Option A3) between Domain Road and Paengaroa, with grade separated intersection, and 4 laning SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road implemented in year 17.
- OP_37 Base network plus 4 laning of the Swamp Route (Option B) between Domain Road and Paengaroa, with at grade intersections, and 4 laning SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road implemented in year 19.

6.9. STAGING OF PROJECTS WITHIN AN OPTION

The 50 year strategy study investigated the bypass options as well as widening of the existing road. An initial analysis was undertaken to compare the Sandhill Route and the Alternative Route (Option A3). With the Sandhill Route being longer and more costly than the Alternative Route but within the same “corridor”, only the Alternative Route was included in the strategy study.

The criteria for when a project would become economically viable assumed this occurred when the project had a 25 year benefit cost ratio (B/C) of 4. Table 6.4 indicates the years in which the projects within each strategy would become viable. Some facilities were assumed to be required for traffic management, safety, social and environmental reasons rather than being strictly justified by their B/C, for example the installation of a signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road in Te Puke, and the installation of a roundabout at SH2/Domain Road.

Table 6.4 Projects Included In Each Strategy	
STRATEGY	OPENING YEAR
Strategy I (Option C)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Passing Lanes N1, N4 and S3	2010
Then install roundabout at SH2/SH33 intersection	2015
Then include widening SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2016
Then include widening SH2 from Domain through Te Puke to 4 lanes	2023
Then include widening SH2 from Te Puke to Paengaroa to 4 lanes	2043

Table 6.4 Projects Included In Each Strategy	
STRATEGY	OPENING YEAR
Strategy II (Option C)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Passing Lanes N1, N4 and S3	2010
Then install roundabout at SH2/SH33 intersection	2015
Then include widening SH2 from Domain through Te Puke	2023
Then include widening SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	>2047
Then include widening SH2 from Te Puke to Paengaroa to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy III (Option A3)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Option A3 (Alternative Route) with 2 lanes, at grade intersections	2011
Then widen SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2021
Then widen Bypass between Domain and Bell to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy IV (Option B)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Option B (Swamp Route) with 2 lanes, at grade intersections	2011
Then widen SH2 from Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2022
Then widen Bypass between Domain and Bell to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy V (Option A3)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Option A3 (Alternative Route) with 2 lanes, grade separated intersections	2012
Then widen SH2 Te Maunga to Domain to 4 lanes	2022
Then widen Option 2 between Domain and Bell to 4 lanes	>2047
Strategy VI (Option B)	
Existing	
Then add in Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then include Cameron Road Signals	2005
Then include Domain Road roundabout	2005
Then construct Option B (Swamp Route) as 2 lanes, grade separated intersections	2011
Then widen SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain to 4 lanes	2022
Then widen Option B from Domain to Bell to 4 lanes	>2047

Table 6.4 Projects Included In Each Strategy	
STRATEGY	OPENING YEAR
Strategy VII (Option A3)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Option A3 (Alternative Route) with 4 lanes, grade separated intersections	2014
Strategy VIII (Option B)	
Existing	
Then construct Passing Lanes N2, N3, S1, S2	1998
Then install signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road	2005
Then install roundabout at SH2/Domain Road	2005
Then construct Option B (Swamp Route) with 4 lanes, grade separated intersections	2016

6.10. INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS FOR STRATEGIES

An incremental analysis of the total 50 year present value of user costs and capital costs was undertaken and indicated that the optimal strategy was Strategy III (incorporating Option A3), based on a critical incremental benefit cost ratio of 3. This strategy includes the Alternative Route (Option A3) with at grade intersections built as a staged project. Strategy V (incorporating Option A3) also involves staged construction of the Alternative Route (Option A3), but with grades separated intersections. Strategy III has an incremental benefit cost ratio of 3.3 compared to Strategy V. The following table provides a summary of the incremental analysis.

Table 6.5 Incremental Analysis								
Least Cost Option	Benefits \$ million	Costs \$ million	Next Option	Benefits \$ million	Costs \$ million	Incremental		
						Benefits \$ million	Costs \$ million	BCR
Strategy II (Option C)	40	10	Strategy I (Option C)	46	11	6	2	3.4
Strategy I (Option C)	46	11	Strategy VIII (Option B)	117	23	70	12	6.0
Strategy VIII (Option B)	117	23	Strategy VII (Option A3)	127	24	10	0	21.1
Strategy VII (Option A3)	127	24	Strategy V (Option A3)	137	24	10	1	10.8
Strategy V (Option A3)	137	24	Strategy IV (Option B)	137	25	(0)	1	-0.4
Strategy V (Option A3)	137	24	Strategy III (Option A3)	141	26	4	1	3.3
Strategy III (Option A3)	141	26	Strategy VI (Option B)	141	27	(0)	1	-0.3
Strategy III (Option A3)	141	26						

6.11. BENEFIT COST ANALYSIS

The Sandhill Route, Swamp Route (Option B), Existing Route (Option C) and Alternative Route (Option A3) were all analysed to determine their benefit cost ratios over an analysis period comprising 25 years from 1 July 1998 to 30 June 2023. The base option was assumed to include committed works and intersection upgrades where the options being investigated would otherwise gain significant benefits from such works. The committed works are assumed to include the passing lanes N2, N3, S1, S2 and signals at the SH2/Cameron Road intersection in Te Puke, and a roundabout at the SH2/Domain Road intersection.

Based on the costs of a 2 or 4-lane expressway with a 9m grassed median, the costs and benefit cost ratios of the options (excluding the Te Maunga to Domain Road sections) were calculated as follows:

Option	Cost \$ million	B/C Ratio
Sandhill Route (4 lanes)	115	1.1
Swamp Route (4 lanes) (Option B)	112	1.5
Alternative Route (4 lanes) (Option A3)	99	1.8
Existing Route (4 lanes) (Option C)	159	0.2
Alternative Route (2 lanes) (Option A3)	83	2.0

Note: B/C ratio of bypass options includes intangible benefits from Te Puke WTP survey and excludes costs and benefits of widening SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road.

Table 6.7 details the tangible user cost benefits and capital costs for options A3 and B. Note that capital costs have been evaluated as being in addition to the base option.

	User Costs (\$ million, NPV)			Net Present Benefits (\$ million, NPV)	
	Base Option	Alternative Route Option A3	Swamp Route Option B	Alternative Route Option A3	Swamp Route Option B
1. Travel Time Costs	937.126	830.185	836.456	106.941	100.670
2. Vehicle Operating Costs	849.748	830.172	830.307	19.576	19.441
3. Accident Costs	129.632	109.397	110.976	20.235	18.656
4. Intangible Benefits: WTP				1.509	1.353
TOTAL USER COSTS	1916.505	1763.634	1777.738	148.260	140.120
				Net Present Costs (\$ million NPV)	
1. Capital Costs				82.384	89.568
2. Maintenance Costs				1.735	1.396
TOTAL CAPITAL COSTS				84.119	90.965
BENEFIT COST RATIO:				1.8	1.5

Note: B/C ratio of bypass options includes intangible benefits from Te Puke WTP survey and excludes costs and benefits of widening SH2 between Te Maunga and Domain Road.

6.12. INCREMENTAL BENEFIT COST RATIO

Compared to the Alternative Route (Option A3), the Swamp Route (Option B) has an incremental B/C ratio of -1.2. An incremental benefit cost ratio of -5.2 was calculated comparing the Alternative Route with the Sandhill Route. This means that for the additional costs, neither the Sandhill Route nor the Swamp Route (B) offer any additional benefits. The Alternative Route (A3) with grade separated intersections is therefore considered to be the most economical, and also offers the advantage that it could be first constructed as a 2 lane facility if required.

6.13. VERIFICATION OF ECONOMIC EVALUATION

The verification of the economic evaluation involved determining the first year benefits of travel time and vehicle operating costs for a bypass option, and comparing it with the results as calculated from the output of the transportation model and economic spreadsheet evaluation.

The travel times and speeds for the base option and one option were deduced from the travel time survey data and judgement to manually calculate the predicted first year benefits. Two options were compared, with and without the bypass, for the predicted opening year of 2011. The journey time and average speed for the section between SH2/Domain and SH2/SH33 were calculated for the base option which includes passing lanes N2, N3, S1 and S2, signalised intersection at SH2/Cameron Road and roundabout at SH2/Domain Road and for the proposed bypass route of Option A3, with 2 lanes and at grade intersections, for each of the study periods. Table 6.8 below shows the predicted journey times and speeds for the two routes.

	Existing SH2 Route		Bypass Route	
Period	Journey time	Average speed	Journey time	Average speed
AM	16.21	68	9.91	94
IP	15.79	70	9.97	94
PM	18.40	60	10.13	92
OF	14.71	75	9.72	96

Note: journey times are shown in minutes, speeds are km/hr.

The times shown above for the base option (existing route) journey times in 2011 are larger than those observed during the 1997 floating car surveys and account for the additional traffic in 2011. The 1997 average observed journey times were:

- AM 14.7 minutes;
- IP 15.3 minutes;
- PM 15.6 minutes.

An estimate of the total user benefits was made based on the predicted bypass traffic. It was assumed that benefits attributed to the bypass would account for the majority of the total benefits. Tables 6.9 and 6.10 show the Travel Time and VOC benefits for each of the study periods factored up to the first year benefits.

Period	Base Option Journey Time	Bypass Option Journey Time	Travel Time Saved	2 Way Potential Bypass Traffic	Travel Time Cost	Annual Factor	TT Saved
AM	16.21	9.91	6.3	610	\$22.20	490	\$696,736
IP	15.79	9.97	5.82	700	\$22.20	3370	\$5,079,871
PM	18.4	10.13	8.27	890	\$22.20	490	\$1,334,422
OF	14.71	9.72	4.99	360	\$22.20	4542	\$3,018,922
TOTAL							\$10,129,951

Period	2 Way Potential Bypass Traffic	Annual Factor	Speed	VOC/ Veh	VOC	Speed	VOC/ Veh	VOC
AM	610	490	68	30.12	\$1,657,428	94	30.94	\$1,442,683
IP	700	3370	70	30.14	\$13,089,558	94	30.94	\$11,386,044
PM	890	490	60	30.08	\$2,415,003	92	30.84	\$2,098,095
OF	360	4542	75	30.24	\$9,103,014	96	31.05	\$7,920,194
TOTAL					\$26,265,003			\$22,847,015

The final VOC values shown are based on route distances of 18.41 km for the existing route and 15.6 km for the bypass route. The predicted VOC savings for the first year of the bypass is \$3,417,988. The total Travel Time and VOC benefits for the bypass in the first year is \$13,547,939.

The total Travel Time and VOC benefits predicted for the equivalent bypass option from the model is \$18,264,500, which includes all links in the study network. These figures would suggest that the bypass accounts for approximately 74% of the total benefits on the network. This is considered to be a believable proportion, with the remaining benefits accruing from benefits accrued on the existing network, including at intersections.

7. MAIN INFLUENCING FACTORS IN THE ECONOMIC EVALUATION

7.1. MAIN CONTRIBUTING FACTORS

Table 7.1 details the contribution of each user cost component of the total benefit for each option.

Table 7.1 Contribution of Cost Components to Total Benefit		
	Alternative Route Option A3	Swamp Route Option B
Travel Time Costs - Links	70.1 %	69.8 %
Travel Time Costs - Turns	9.4 %	9.9 %
Vehicle Operating Costs - Links	8.8 %	9.1 %
Vehicle Operating Costs - Turns	0.5 %	0.5 %
Accident Costs	11.3 %	10.8 %
Total	100 %	100 %

These proportions are consistent with what would be expected for each of these projects, Option A3 provides a difference in length of 2,435 metres between the intersection at Paengaroa and Domain Road, where as Option B provides a saving of 2,760 metres.

7.2. INFLUENCING FACTORS

7.2.1. MAIN FACTORS

In the course of the modelling, it was found that the main influencing factors for the evaluation of the options was the selection of the do minimum, and the future land use assumptions.

7.2.2. EFFECT OF SELECTION OF DO MINIMUM

The modelled network would experience congestion at several intersections if no improvements were assumed. These problems may be addressed by the relatively minor upgrading of an intersection, and any intersection where significant delays were predicted to occur were therefore assumed to be addressed in order that benefits arising from such works were not attributed to a project. The development of the do minimum network and the improvements assumed have been previously discussed in Section 4.

7.2.3. EFFECT OF LAND USE GROWTH ASSUMPTIONS

The trip demand matrices were developed from data collected from roadside interviews and number plate surveys. Future land use was based on predictions in the growth of households in the WBoPDC and TDC planning area units and the development of industrial areas as predicted by Wasley Consultants.

Should the land use growth assumptions be incorrect, different traffic distributions would result. However, the modelling procedures require that the same traffic distribution is used for the do minimum and option scenarios, and therefore any small change in trip distribution would be unlikely to have a significant effect on the comparative benefits of the options.

7.3. SENSITIVITY TESTS

Due to the large scale of the proposed options, a sensitivity test of the benefits evaluated from the traffic models is essential. Table 7.2 details the sensitivity tests undertaken on the model-based results.

Table 7.2 Sensitivity Tests			
		Alternative Route Option A3	Swamp Route Option B
Item	Change	BCR	BCR
No Change	0 %	1.8	1.5
Construction	-20 %	2.2	1.9
Costs	+20 %	1.5	1.3
Accident	-50 %	1.6	1.4
Benefits	+50 %	1.9	1.6
Travel Time	-50 %	1.2	1.0
Benefits - Links	+50 %	2.4	2.1
Travel Time	-50 %	1.7	1.5
Benefits - Turns	+50 %	1.8	1.6
VOC Benefits	-50 %	1.7	1.4

		Alternative Route Option A3	Swamp Route Option B
Item	Change	BCR	BCR
Links	+50 %	1.9	1.6
VOC Benefits	-50 %	1.8	1.5
Turns	+50 %	1.8	1.5

The sensitivity tests indicate that the travel time benefits on links are the most influencing factor for both the A3 and B options. Construction costs are also a major contributing factor for both options. The minimal effect of benefits from turns, for both travel time and vehicle operating costs, indicates that there is no undue benefit arising from congested intersections.

7.4. DISCOUNT FACTOR

An additional economic analysis was undertaken with the discount factor assumed to be 7% rather than 10%. This was a requirement of the brief and places more emphasis on the downstream costs and benefits.

In comparison with Table 6.7, and similarly based on the costs of a 2 or 4-lane expressway with a 9m grassed median, the benefit cost ratios of the options (excluding the Te Maunga to Domain Road sections) were calculated as follows:

Option	B/C Ratio
Sandhill Route (4 lanes)	1.5
Swamp Route (4 lanes) (Option B)	2.1
Alternative Route (4 lanes) (Option A3)	2.4
Existing Route (4 lanes) (Option C)	0.5
Alternative Route (2 lanes) (Option A3)	2.7

Note: B/C ratio of bypass options includes intangible benefits from Te Puke WTP survey.

A lower discount factor of 7% increased the benefit cost ratios of each option, as expected.

8. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION

- BCHF were commissioned by Transit New Zealand to undertake investigations for the Tauranga Eastern Arterial. As part of this study, traffic modelling and economic evaluation of the options was undertaken. This report details the traffic modelling and economic evaluation of the roading options.
- Traffic models were developed using trip demand data collected during roadside interviews and number plate surveys.
- Four periods (am, interpeak, pm, and off-peak) were modelled for nine points in time, namely 1997, 2001, 2006, 2011, 2016, 2021, 2031, 2041 and 2051. The results from these models were used to develop time streams of costs over a 50 year time period for a strategy study analysis and a 25 year analysis period to determine benefit cost ratios.
- Future year trip demand matrices were developed using the household growth projections in the planning area units defined by WBoPDC and TDC and industrial growth as predicted by Wasley Consultants.
- The options included in the assessment comprised widening the existing route (Option C), the Swamp Route (Option B), the Sandhill Route and the Alternative Route (Option A3).
- Calibration of the 1997 year model involved using floating car travel time survey data and traffic count data, and resulted in a good calibration. The Traffic Model Development and Validation Report was reviewed by Kingston Morrison Ltd.
- Various future intersection improvements were assumed for the do minimum network, in order to avoid 'ballooning' intersection delay giving unrealistically high benefits for a project. Because the models were found to be sensitive to assumptions made for the do minimum network, a conservative approach was taken, which addressed the majority of the potentially congested intersections in the do minimum network.
- A 50 year strategy study was undertaken to investigate the sequencing of options within each strategy. An incremental analysis between the strategies resulted in the strategy which included the staged construction of Option A3 being optimal.
- Option C (widening the existing route) was assumed to comprise construction of passing lanes N1, N4, S3, costing \$1.78 million over 1 year, widening SH2 from Domain Road to Te Puke, costing \$60.3 million over 2 years, widening SH2 through Te Puke, costing some \$36.8 million over a year and widening SH2 from Te Puke to Paengaroa intersection, costing \$53.8 million over 2 years. Costs of \$6.25 million (over 2 years) for widening SH2 between Te Maunga to Domain Road are in addition to this cost.

- Option A3 (4 lanes) is assumed to be constructed over a 3 year period at a capital cost of some \$99 million. Costs of \$6.25 million (over 2 years) for widening SH2 between Te Maunga to Domain Road are in addition to this cost.
- Option B (4 lanes) is assumed to be constructed over a 4 year period at a capital cost of some \$112 million. Costs of \$6.25 million (over 2 years) for widening SH2 between Te Maunga to Domain Road are in addition to this cost.
- The Sandhill Route (4 lanes) is assumed to be constructed over a 4 year period at a capital cost of some \$115 million. Costs of \$6.25 million (over 2 years) for widening SH2 between Te Maunga to Domain Road are in addition to this cost.
- Option A3 (2 lanes) is assumed to be constructed over a 2.5 year period at a capital cost of some \$83 million.
- An (25 year) economic evaluation was undertaken in accordance with Transfund's Project Evaluation Manual. The detailed evaluation indicated some:
 - \$41.7 million of discounted tangible benefits over the 25 year analysis period for Option C (4 lanes) (including benefits from widening SH2, Te Maunga to Domain Road).
 - \$146.8 million of discounted tangible benefits over the 25 year analysis period for Option A3 (4 lanes), plus \$1.5 million of discounted intangible benefits from the WTP survey (excluding benefits from widening SH2, Te Maunga to Domain Road).
 - \$138.8 million of discounted tangible benefits over the 25 year analysis period for Option B (4 lanes), plus \$1.4 million of discounted intangible benefits from the WTP survey (excluding benefits from widening SH2, Te Maunga to Domain Road).
 - \$101.3 million of discounted tangible benefits over the 25 year analysis period for the Sandhill Route (4 lanes), plus \$1.4 million of discounted intangible benefits from the WTP survey (excluding benefits from widening SH2, Te Maunga to Domain Road).
 - \$145.5 million of discounted tangible benefits over the 25 year analysis period for Option A3 (2 lanes), plus \$1.7 million of discounted intangible benefits from the WTP survey.
- For Option A3 (4 lanes), a discounted net capital cost (including additional maintenance) of some \$84.1 million results in a BCR of 1.8.
- For Option B (4 lanes), a discounted net capital cost (including additional maintenance) of some \$91.0 million results in a BCR of 1.5.
- For the Sandhill Route (4 lanes), a discounted net capital cost (including additional maintenance) of some \$92.8 million results in a BCR of 1.1.
- For Option A3 (2 lanes), a discounted net capital cost (including additional maintenance) of some \$74.8 million results in a BCR of 2.0.

- With Option A3 (4 lanes) accruing the most benefits, and being the cheaper option, an incremental analysis comparing the other 4 lane options gave negative incremental benefit cost ratios, confirming that this was the optimal project.
- It was found that almost 70% of the benefits of each bypass option accrued from savings in travel time, with approximately 10% from accident cost savings.
- The evaluation was found to be most influenced by the assumptions used in the definition of the do minimum option. A sensitivity test was used which indicated that the BCR was most sensitive to the capital costs of construction.

TRANSIT NEW ZEALAND
TAURANGA EASTERN ARTERIAL OPTION COMPARISON
ENGINEER'S ESTIMATE

Item	Description	Option Estimates					
		A	AA	A1	A2	A3	
1.0	Establishment @ 7.5%	4,400,000	8,700,000	4,400,000	4,300,000	4,200,000	
2.0	Earthworks	0	0	0	0	0	
2.1	Demolition and Site Clearance	839,335	734,399	970,663	991,295	989,730	
2.2	Topsoil - Strip, stockpile, replace, grass	1,557,360	1,137,598	1,682,650	1,565,180	1,558,920	
2.3	Excavate to waste (All used as Bund fill)	594,685	594,685	582,735	545,150	545,150	
2.4	Excavate to fill	828,005	828,049	753,665	689,445	689,445	
2.5	Import fill and compact	12,872,288	9,661,787	14,650,188	13,840,475	13,778,050	
3.0	Drainage, Farm Access and Fencing	0	0	0	0	0	
3.1	Supply, install and relay culverts	3,549,320	312,620	3,549,320	3,549,320	3,549,320	
3.2	Farm access and underpasses	6,516,000	4,556,000	5,976,000	5,776,000	5,776,000	
3.3	Fencing	1,214,000	910,500	1,276,400	1,221,200	1,216,315	
4.0	Kerb and Channel	0	0	0	0	0	
5.0	Safety Barriers	0	0	0	0	0	
5.1	New Jersey Barriers	583,680	4,316,160	506,880	506,880	506,880	
5.2	W. Section Guard rail	233,920	175,440	233,920	233,920	210,800	
6.0	Pavement	0	0	0	0	0	
6.1	Supply and place GAP65 sub-base	7,188,250	5,221,000	7,591,500	7,255,500	7,226,500	
6.2	Supply and place TNZ M/4 AP40	5,067,075	3,652,220	5,351,450	5,114,525	5,094,050	
7.0	Sealing	0	0	0	0	0	
7.1	Supply and apply two coat chip seal	2,456,384	2,456,384	2,576,420	2,470,160	2,460,150	
7.2	Pavement Marking	87,850	87,850	90,190	88,120	87,925	
8.0	Bridges	0	0	0	0	0	
	Overbridge Parton Road	900,000	900,000	900,000	900,000	900,000	
	Overbridge Bell Road	1,200,000	0	900,000	900,000	0	
	Overbridge Kaituna Road	1,200,000	0	1,200,000	1,100,000	1,100,000	
	Overbridge Pah Road	1,250,000	0	1,000,000	1,250,000	1,250,000	
	Overbridge To Tumu Road	1,300,000	1,300,000	1,300,000	1,300,000	1,300,000	
	Overbridge Strang Road	0	0	0	0	0	
	Overbridge Maketu Road	900,000	900,000	900,000	900,000	900,000	
	Underpass ECTM Railway	1,350,000	1,350,000	1,350,000	1,350,000	1,350,000	
	Kaituna River Bridge	5,000,000	75,000,000	3,400,000	3,400,000	3,400,000	
	Canal Crossing 1	0	0	0	0	0	
	Canal Crossing 2	0	0	0	0	0	
	Canal Crossing 3	0	0	0	0	0	
9.0	Lighting	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	
10.0	Silt Control	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	
11.0	Landscaping	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000	
12.0	Services - Relocation or New	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	
13.0	Traffic Control	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	
	SubTotal	63,288,152	124,994,692	63,341,981	61,447,170	60,289,235	
14.1	Contingencies Earthworks @ 25%	4,172,918	3,239,130	4,659,975	4,407,886	4,390,324	
14.2	Contingencies Other Works @ 15%	6,989,472	16,805,726	6,705,312	6,572,344	6,409,191	
	SubTotal	74,450,542	145,039,548	74,707,268	72,427,400	71,088,750	
15.0	Engineering Fees @ 12.5%	9,306,318	18,129,944	9,338,409	9,053,425	8,886,094	
16.0	Land purchase	13,500,000	13,500,000	14,200,000	13,600,000	13,521,000	
	TOTAL ESTIMATE (excl. GST)	97,256,860	176,669,492	98,245,677	95,080,825	93,495,844	
	Length	km	15.95	15.95	16.73	16.04	15.975
	Cost/m	\$/m	6,098	11,076	5,872	5,978	5,853
	BC						

TRANSIT NEW ZEALAND
TAURANGA EASTERN ARTERIAL OPTION COMPARISON
ENGINEER'S ESTIMATE

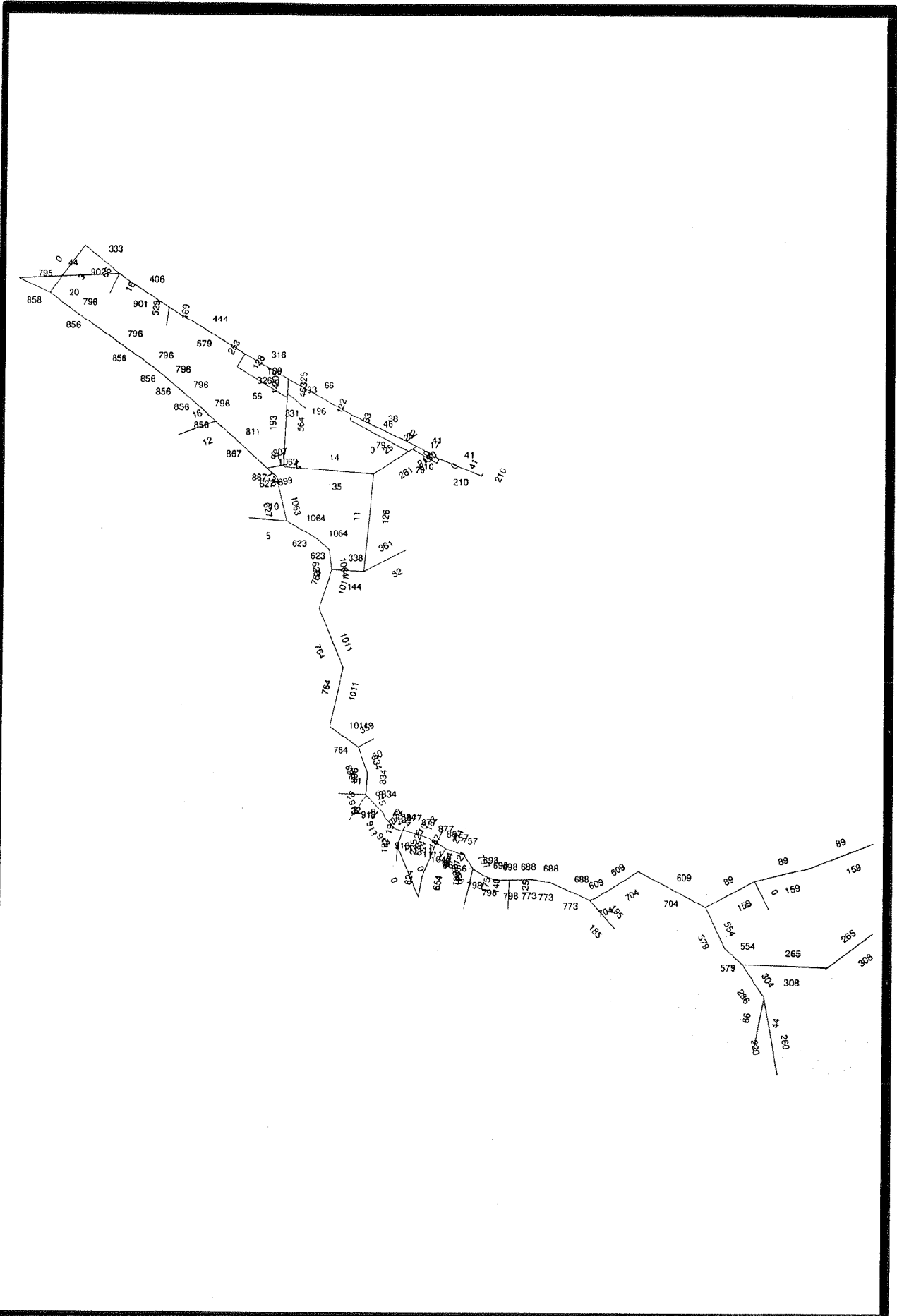
Item	Description	Option Estimates							
		B	BA	C	Sandhills	A3 (sand) 2 lane	A3* 4 lane min width	A3** 2 lane comb. width	A3* 2 lane min
1.0	Establishment @ 7.5%	5,600,000	14,550,000	6,050,000	4,800,000	2,800,000	4,200,000	3,150,000	3,300,000
2.0	Earthworks	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2.1	Demolition and Site Clearance	891,075	648,757	3,580,000	1,515,309	925,830	925,830	881,299	925,830
2.2	Topsoil - Strip, stockpile, replace, grass	1,764,300	795,028	1,280,000	1,974,834	1,303,320	1,303,320	1,125,194	1,303,320
2.3	Excavate to waste (All used as Bund fill)	574,810	574,810	190,743	764,888	505,325	505,325	436,263	505,325
2.4	Excavate to fill	600,237	600,237	515,003	1,065,042	581,918	581,918	502,385	581,918
2.5	Import fill and compact	23,819,725	7,437,625	17,222,125	17,502,188	4,445,055	11,112,638	9,593,863	11,112,638
3.0	Drainage, Farm Access and Fencing	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3.1	Supply, install and relay culverts	2,921,935	208,510	1,011,540	1,426,580	3,057,905	3,057,905	3,057,905	3,057,905
3.2	Farm access and underpasses	5,480,000	1,620,000	0	4,356,000	4,909,600	4,909,600	4,909,600	4,909,600
3.3	Fencing	1,214,000	128,400	1,757,040	1,310,000	1,221,200	1,221,200	1,219,197	1,221,200
5.0	Safety Barriers	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5.1	New Jersey Barriers	557,280	8,398,080	471,360	583,680	0	3,834,000	0	0
5.2	W. Section Guard rail	239,360	107,780	66,640	233,920	256,360	297,840	210,800	256,360
6.0	Pavement	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6.1	Supply and place GAP65 sub-base	7,073,000	3,138,500	14,166,000	10,367,650	3,594,400	7,226,500	3,594,400	3,594,400
6.2	Supply and place TNZ M/4 AP40	4,985,825	2,156,180	10,620,025	7,437,040	2,556,450	5,094,050	2,556,450	2,556,450
7.0	Sealing	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7.1	Supply and apply two coat chip seal	2,410,716	2,410,716	4,952,185	3,427,900	1,118,250	2,460,150	1,118,250	1,118,250
7.2	Pavement Marking	87,850	87,850	200,000	95,561	43,963	87,925	43,963	43,963
8.0	Bridges	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Overbridge Parton Road	1,200,000	0	0	900,000	820,000	820,000	820,000	820,000
	Overbridge Bell Road	1,300,000	0	0	0	820,000	820,000	820,000	820,000
	Overbridge Kaituna Road	0	0	0	0	1,020,000	1,020,000	1,020,000	1,020,000
	Overbridge Pah Road	1,050,000	0	0	0	1,170,000	1,170,000	1,170,000	1,170,000
	Overbridge Te Tumu Road	1,300,000	1,300,000	0	1,350,000	1,180,000	1,180,000	1,180,000	1,180,000
	Overbridge Strang Road	0	0	930,000	0	0	0	0	0
	Overbridge Maketu Road	900,000	900,000	930,000	900,000	820,000	820,000	820,000	820,000
	Underpass ECTM Railway	1,350,000	1,350,000	3,150,000	1,350,000	1,350,000	1,350,000	1,350,000	1,350,000
	Kaituna River Bridge	3,200,000	160,000,000	5,503,680	5,000,000	3,400,000	3,400,000	3,400,000	3,400,000
	Canal Crossing 1	1,400,000	0	2,708,160	0	0	0	0	0
	Canal Crossing 2	1,800,000	0	2,708,160	0	0	0	0	0
	Canal Crossing 3	0	0	2,708,160	0	0	0	0	0
9.0	Lighting	500,000	500,000	1,000,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000
10.0	Silt Control	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
11.0	Landscaping	1,000,000	1,000,000	2,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000
12.0	Services - Relocation or New	500,000	500,000	1,000,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	500,000
13.0	Traffic Control	100,000	100,000	1,500,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
	SubTotal	73,920,113	208,612,473	86,320,821	68,560,592	40,099,576	59,598,201	45,179,569	47,267,159
14.1	Contingencies Earthworks @ 25%	6,912,537	2,514,114	5,696,968	5,705,565	1,940,362	3,607,258	3,134,751	3,607,258
14.2	Contingencies Other Works @ 15%	6,940,495	29,783,402	9,529,943	6,860,750	4,720,219	6,775,376	4,896,085	4,925,719
	SubTotal	87,773,145	240,909,989	101,547,732	81,126,907	46,760,157	69,980,835	53,210,405	55,800,136
15.0	Engineering Fees @ 12.5%	10,971,643	30,113,749	12,693,467	10,140,863	5,845,020	8,747,604	6,651,301	6,975,017
16.0	Land purchase	8,250,000	8,250,000	35,000,000	19,400,000	13,600,000	12,521,000	12,521,000	12,521,000
	TOTAL ESTIMATE (excl. GST)	106,994,788	279,273,738	149,241,199	110,667,770	66,205,177	91,249,439	72,382,706	75,296,153
	Length	km	15.65	15.65	19.46	17.35	16.04	15.975	15.975
	Cost/m	\$/m	6,837	17,845	7,669	6,379	4,128	5,712	4,531
	BCR								

APPENDIX B

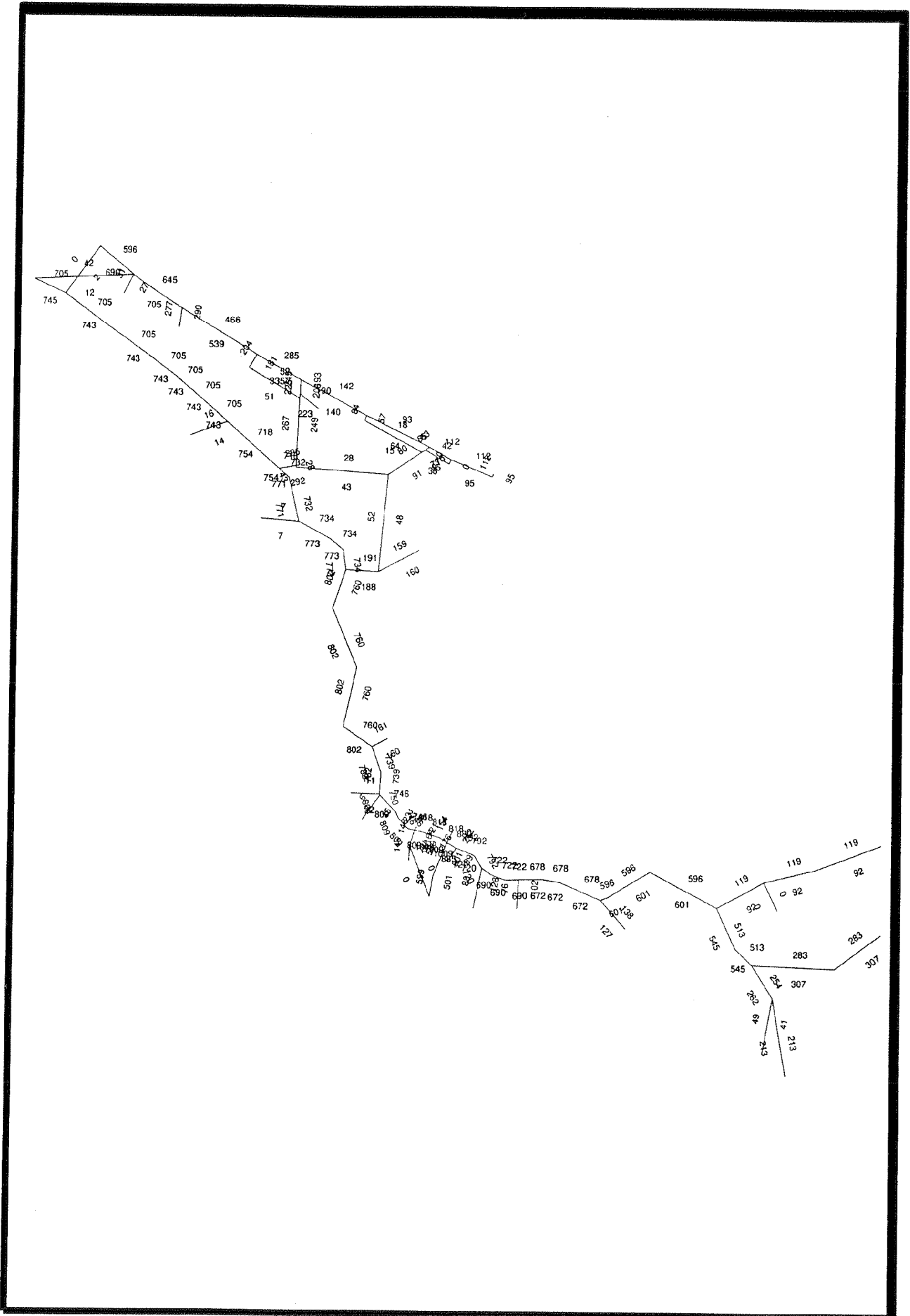
Modelled Traffic Volumes

APPENDIX B Modelled Traffic Volumes

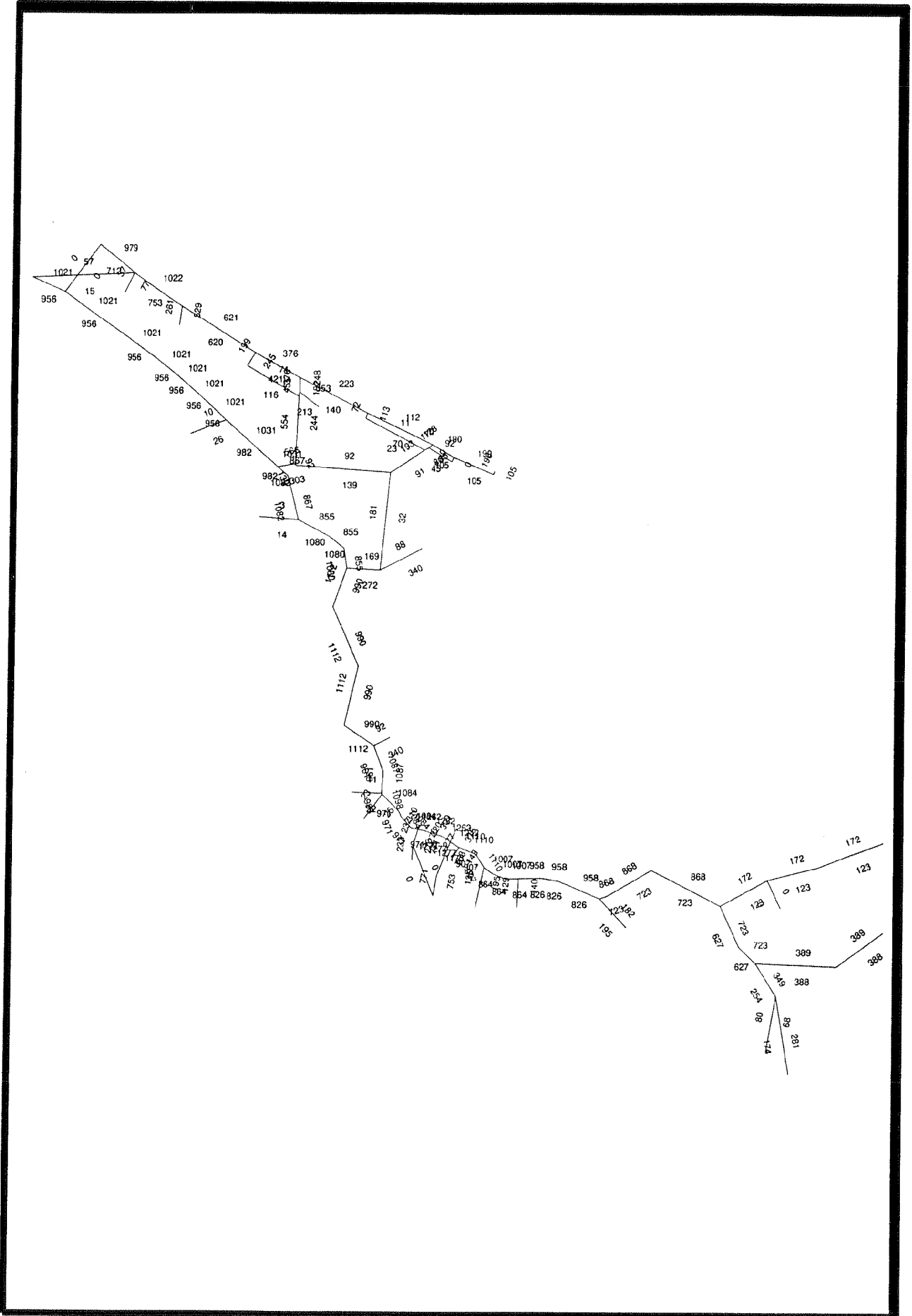
Base Option, 2011, AM Peak Period
Base Option, 2011, IP Period
Base Option, 2011, PM Peak Period
Base Option, 2011, Off Peak Period
Base Option, 2021, AM Peak Period
Base Option, 2021, IP Period
Base Option, 2021, PM Peak Period
Base Option, 2021, Off Peak Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2011, AM Peak Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2011, IP Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2011, PM Peak Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2011, Off Peak Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2021, AM Peak Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2021, IP Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2021, PM Peak Period
Swamp Route, (Option B), 2021, Off Peak Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2011, AM Peak Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2011, IP Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2011, PM Peak Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2011, Off Peak Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2021, AM Peak Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2021, IP Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2021, PM Peak Period
Alternative Route, (Option A3), 2021, Off Peak Period



12am11_9.NET

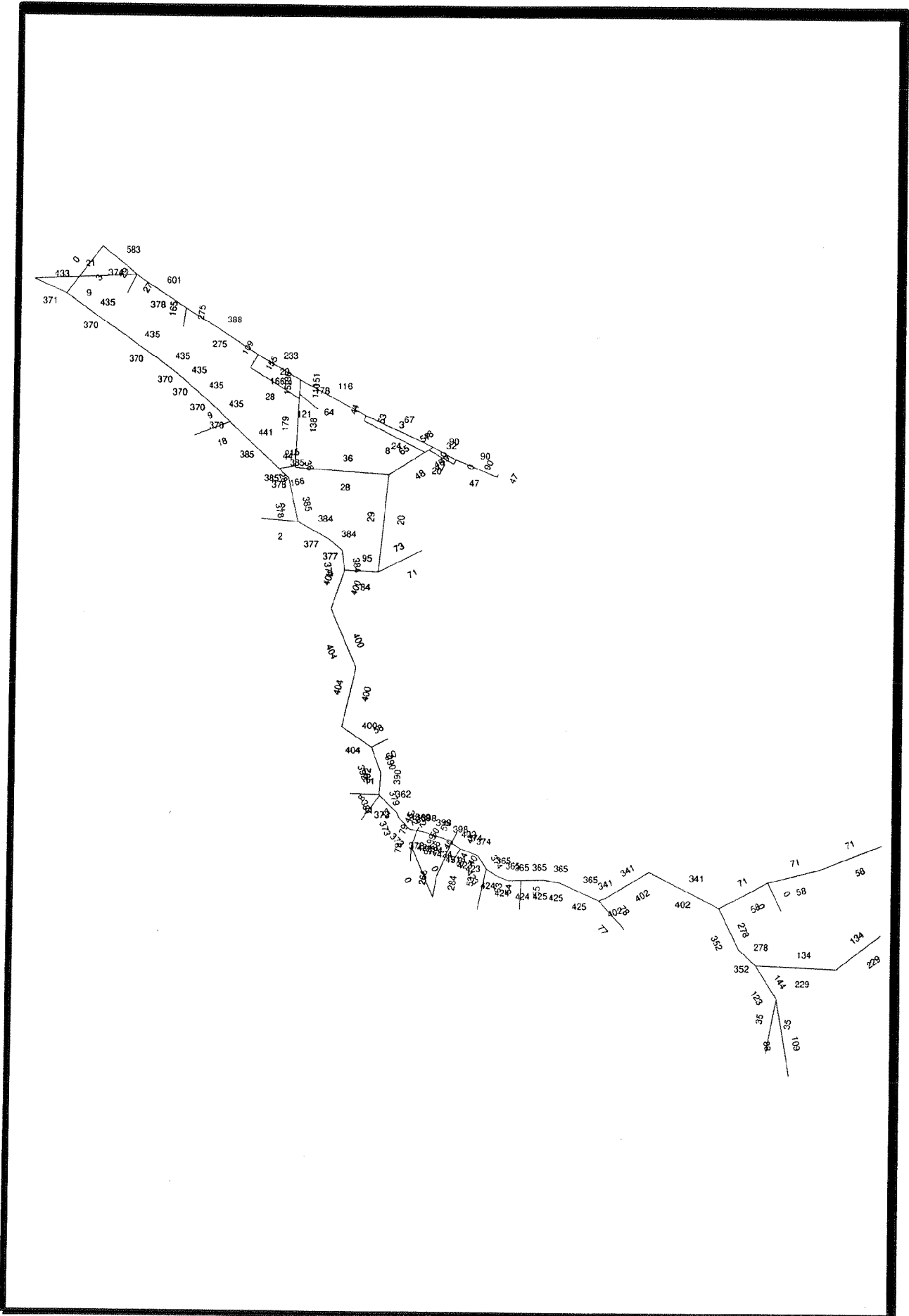


12ip11_9.NET



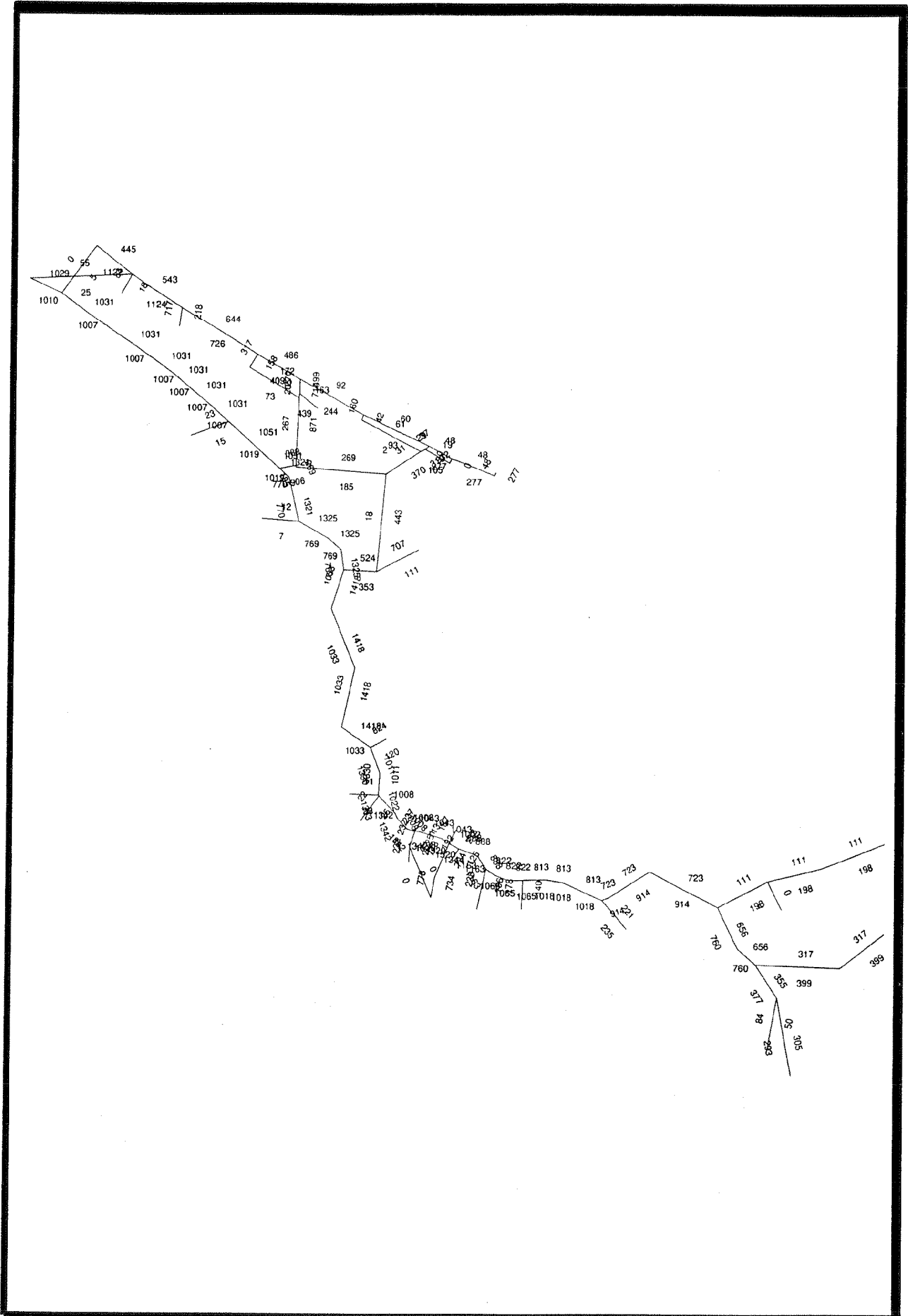
12pm11_9.NET

Base Option 2011 PM Peak



12of11_9.NET

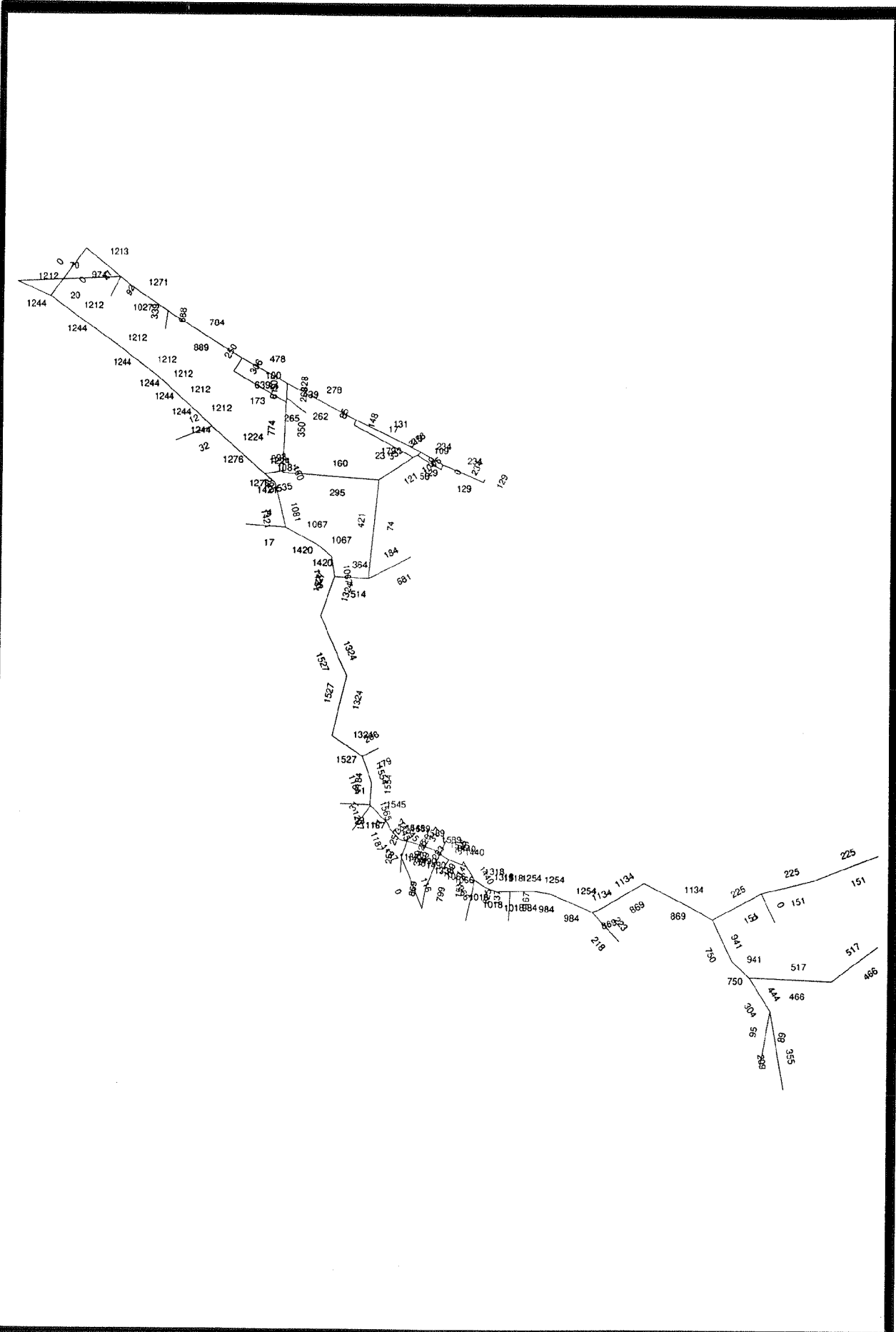
Base Option 2011 Off Peak



12am21_9.NET

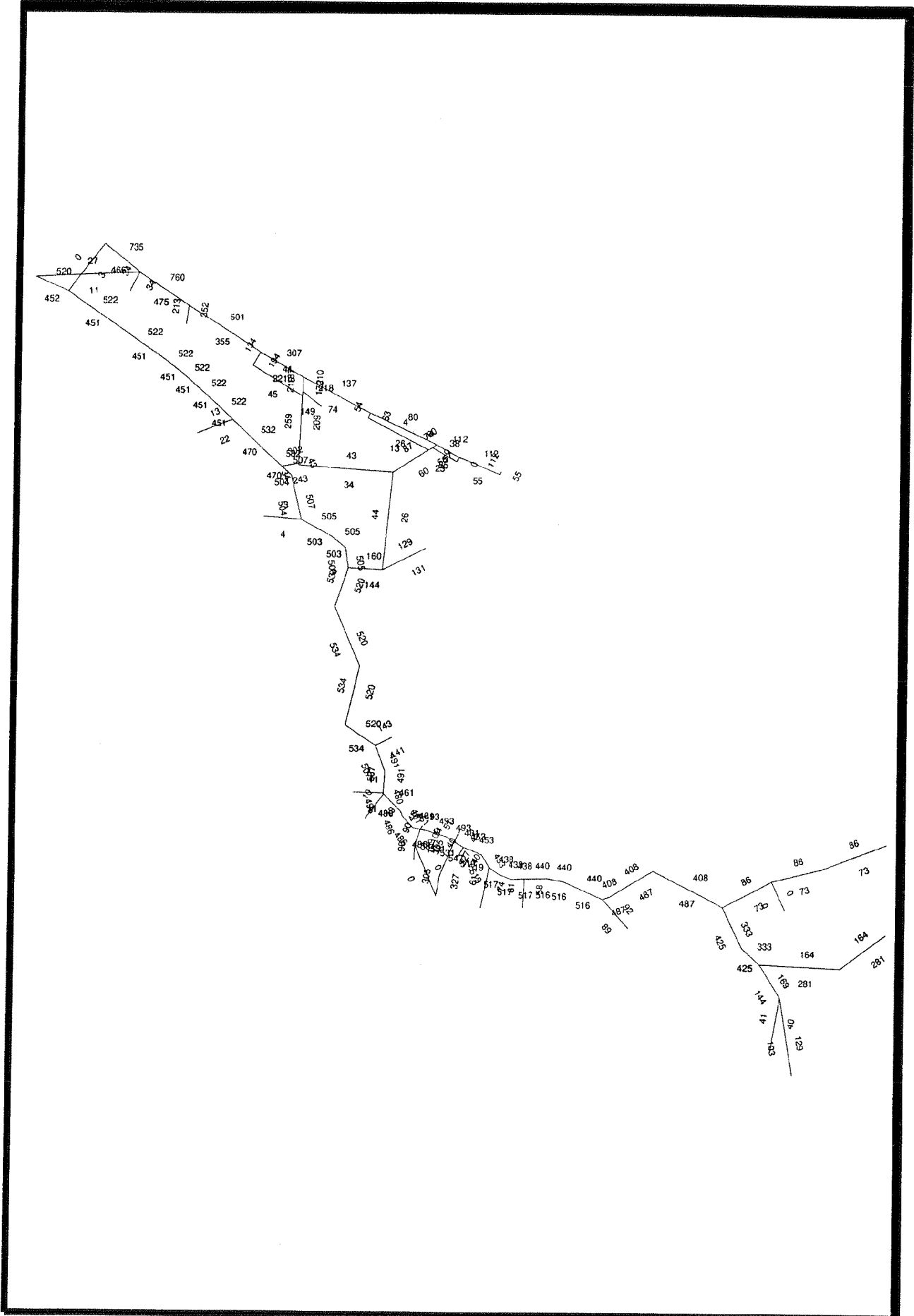


12ip21_9.NET

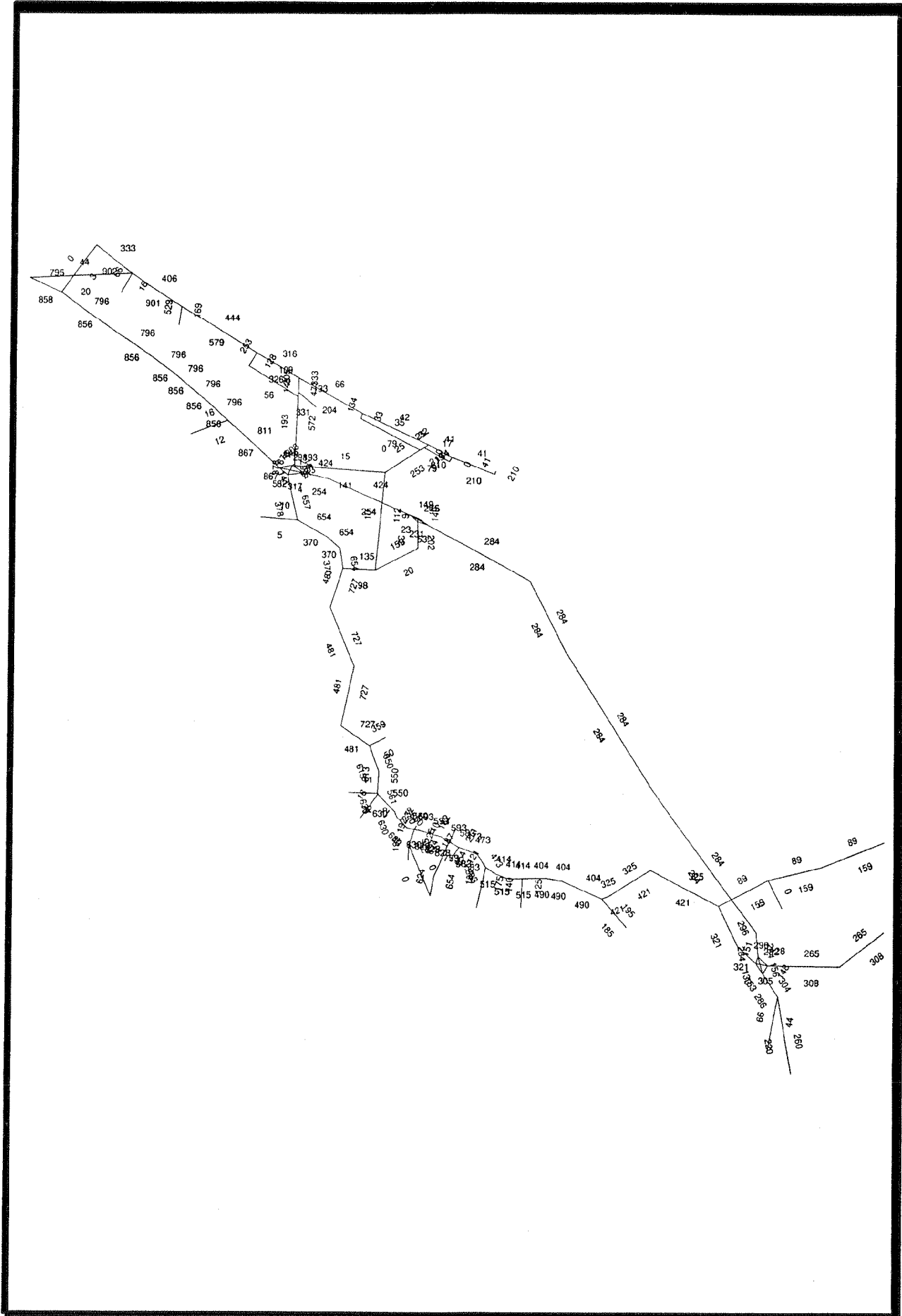


12pm21_9.NET

Base Option 2021 PM Peak

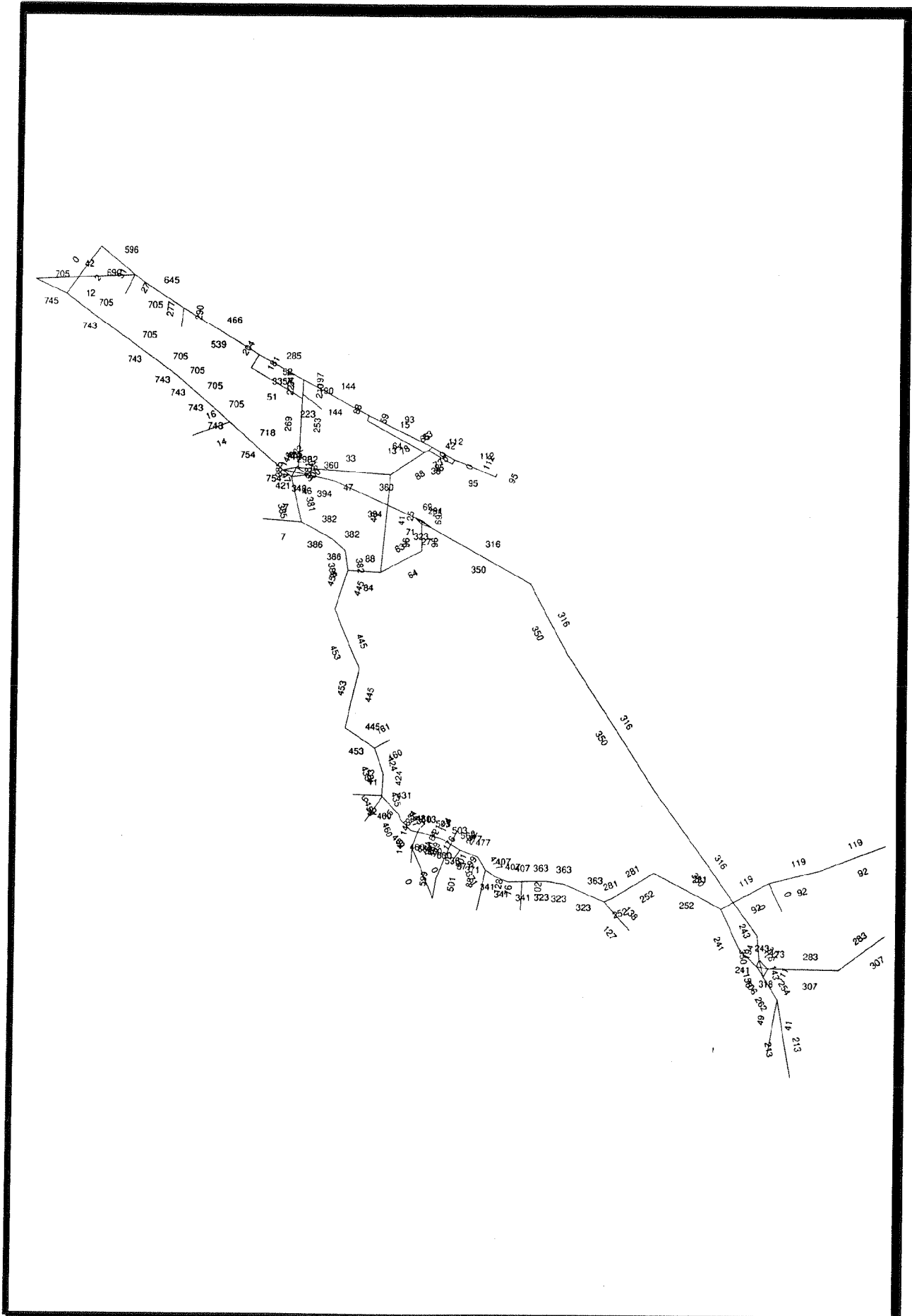


12of21_9.NET



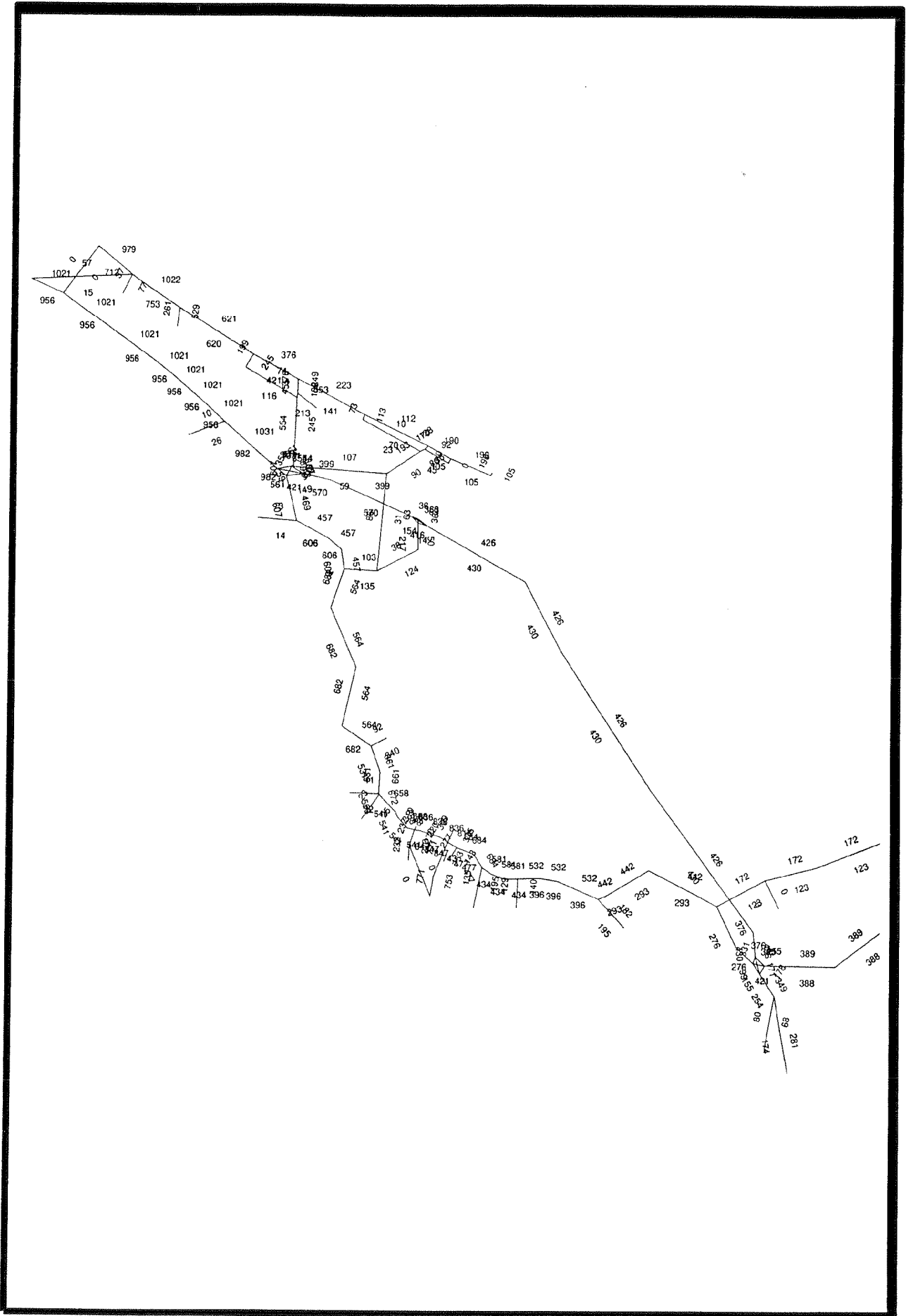
27am11_5.NET

Swamp Route (Option B) 2011 AM Peak



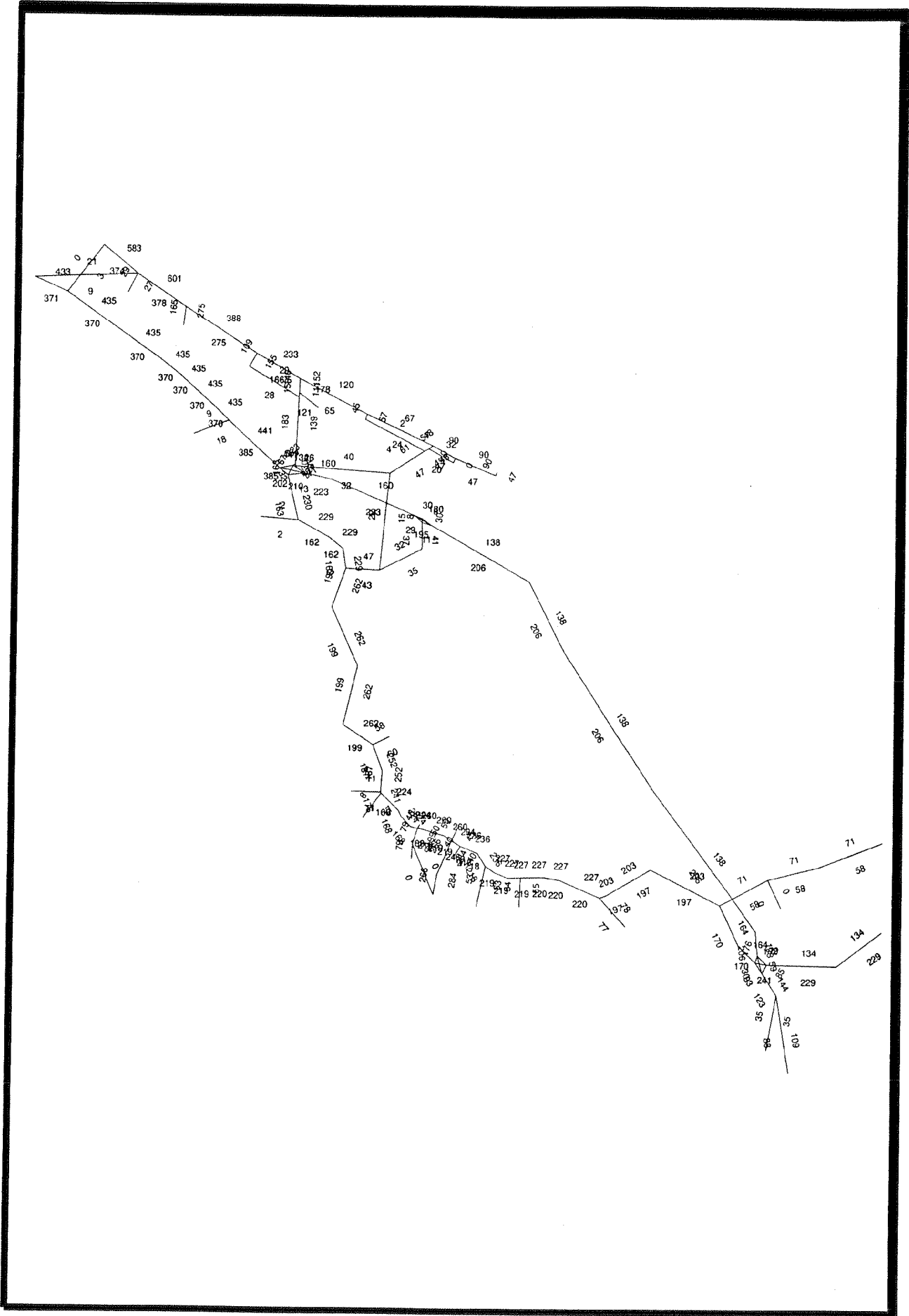
27ip11_5.NET

Swamp Route (Option B) 2011 Inter Peak



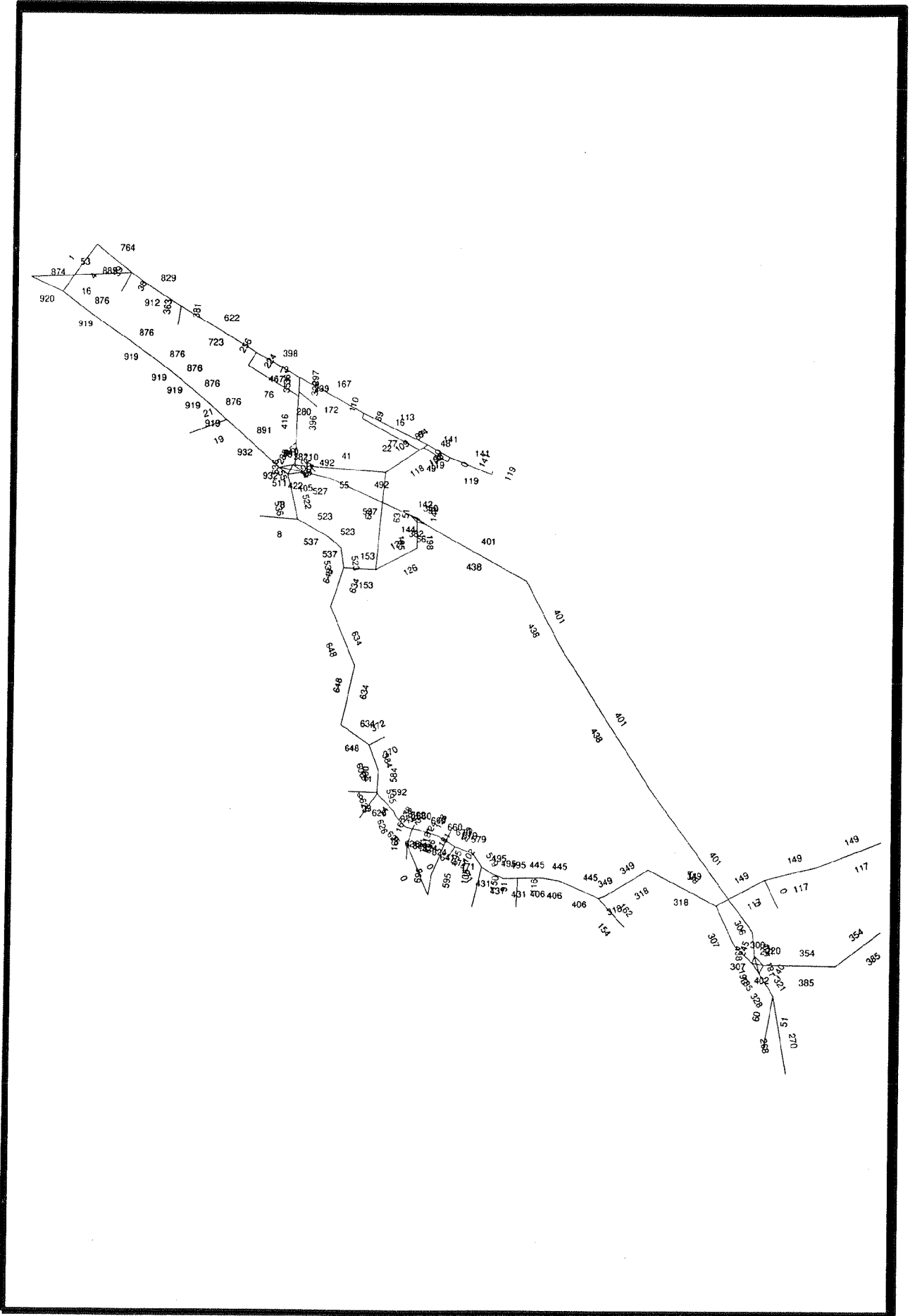
27pm11_5.NET

Swamp Route (Option B) 2011 PM Peak



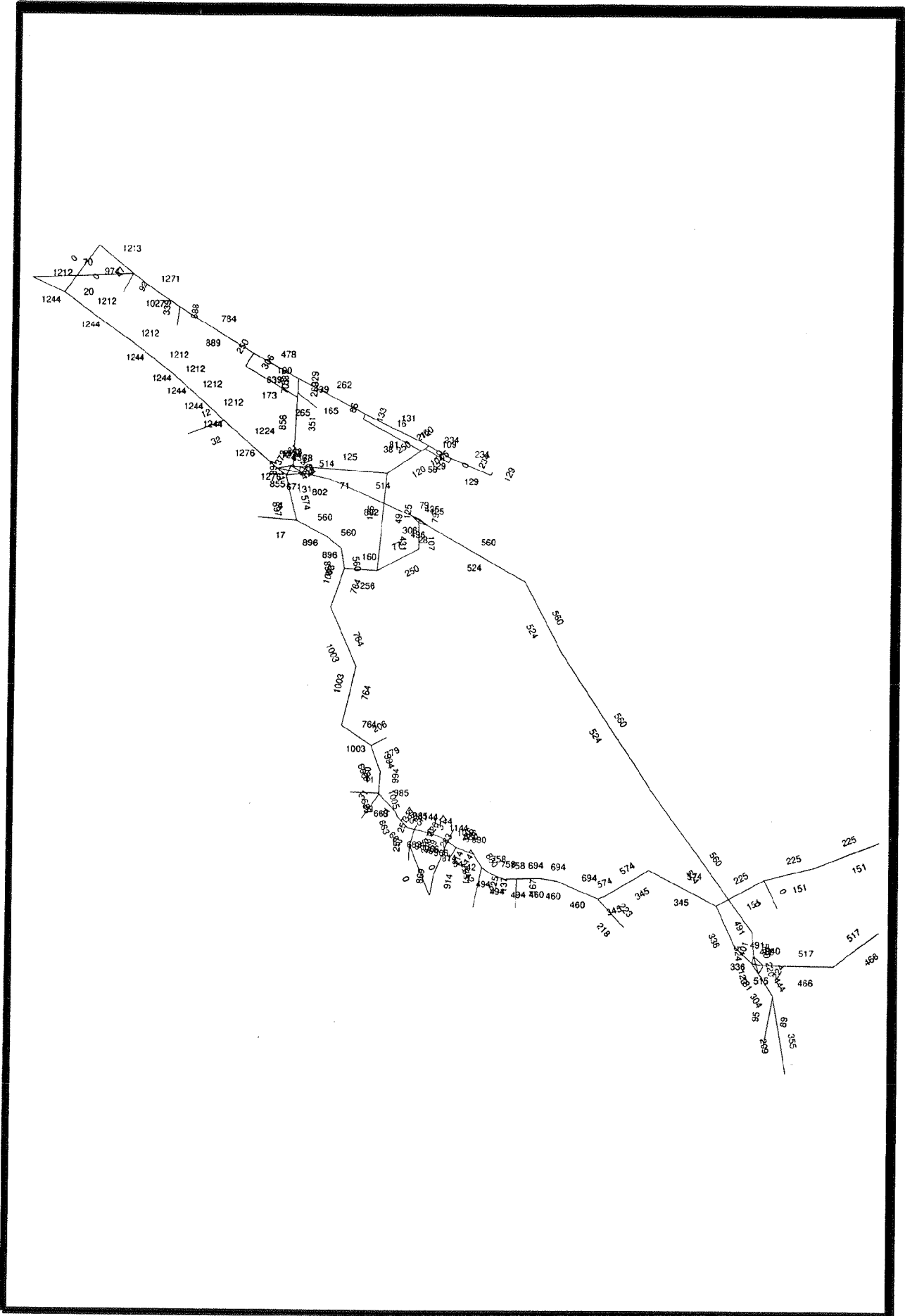
27of11_5.NET

Swamp Route (Option B) 2011 Off Peak



27ip21_5.NET

Swamp Route (Option B) 2021 Inter Peak

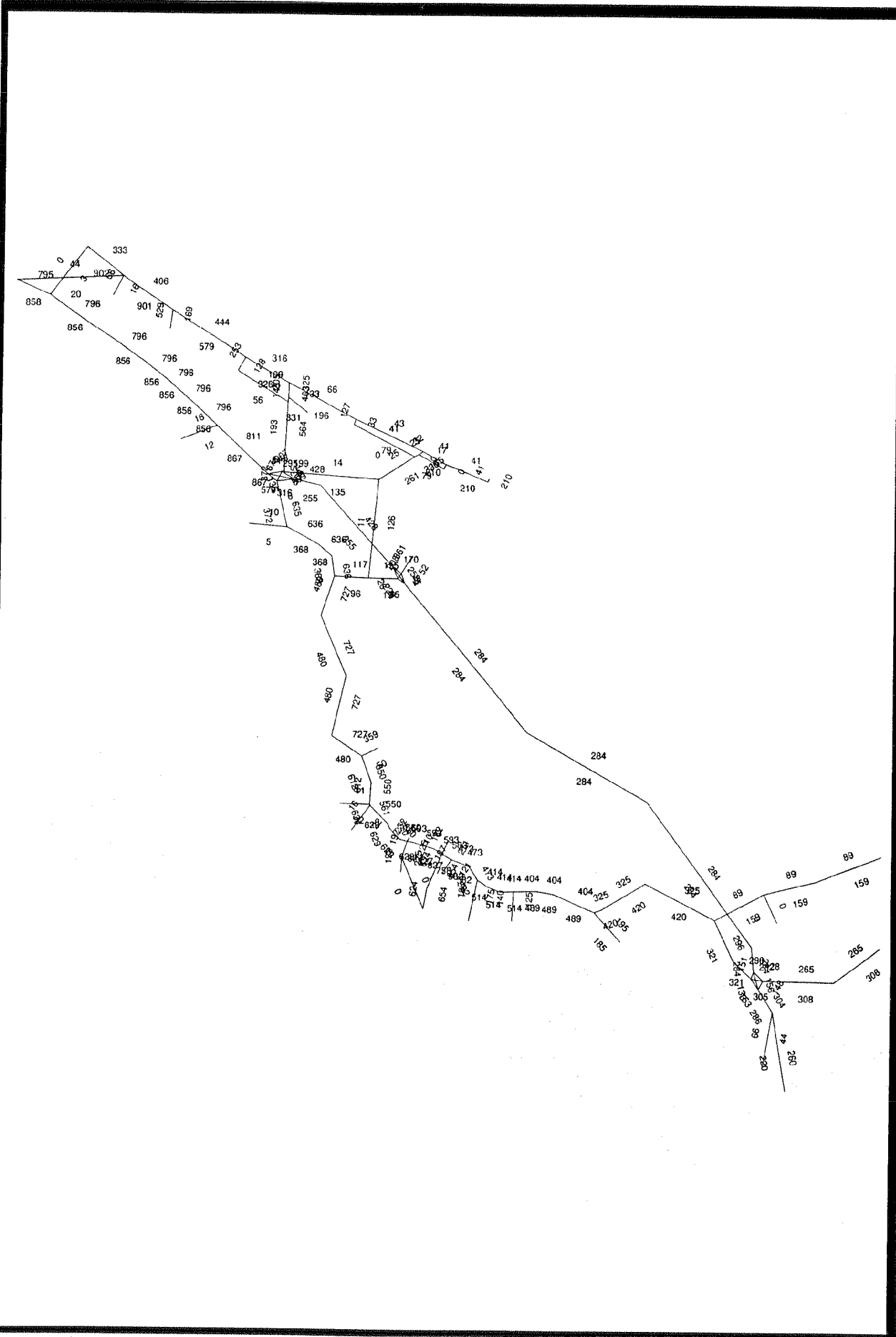


27pm21_5.NET

Swamp Route (Option B) 2021 PM Peak

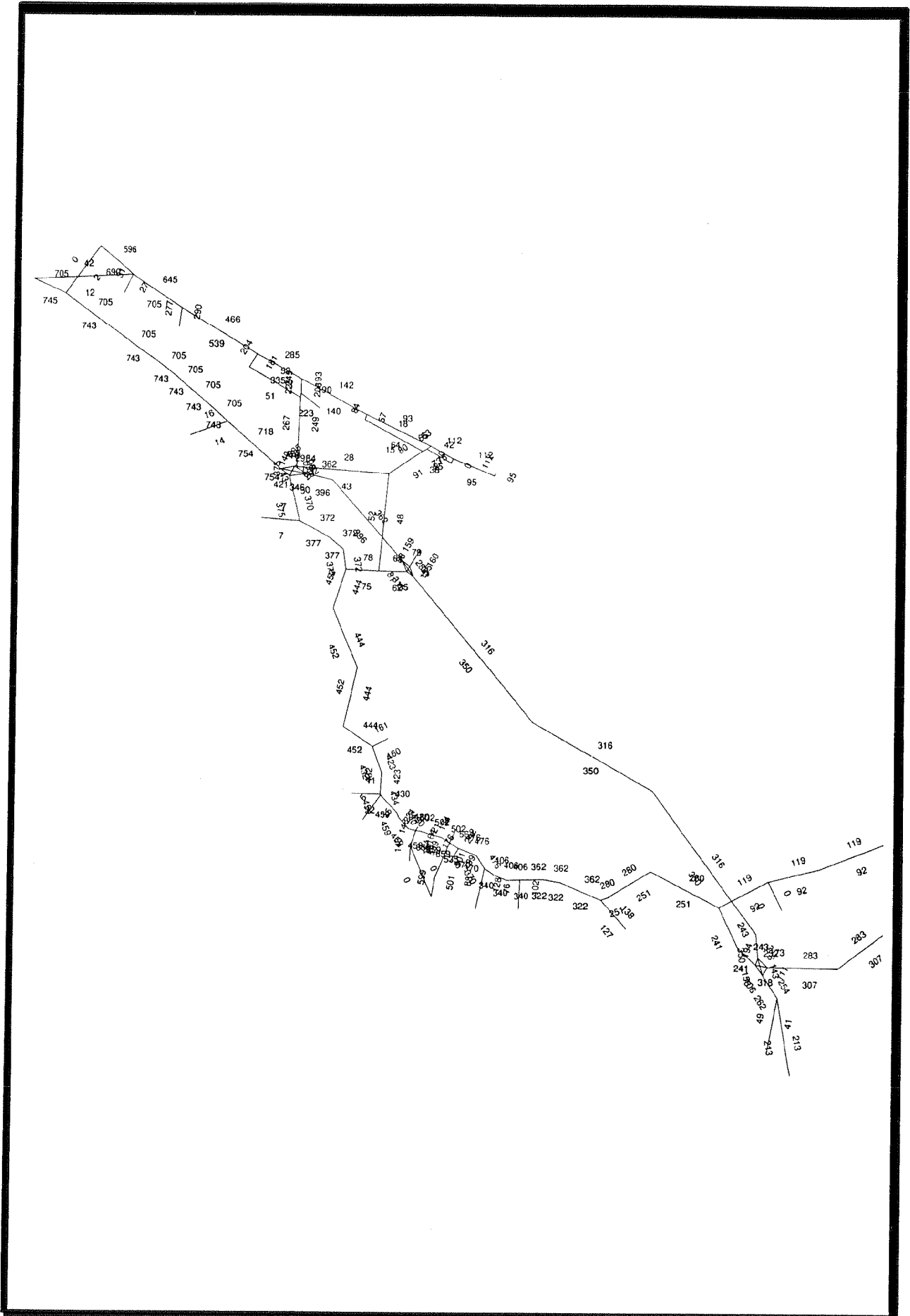


Swamp Route (Option B) 2021 Off Peak



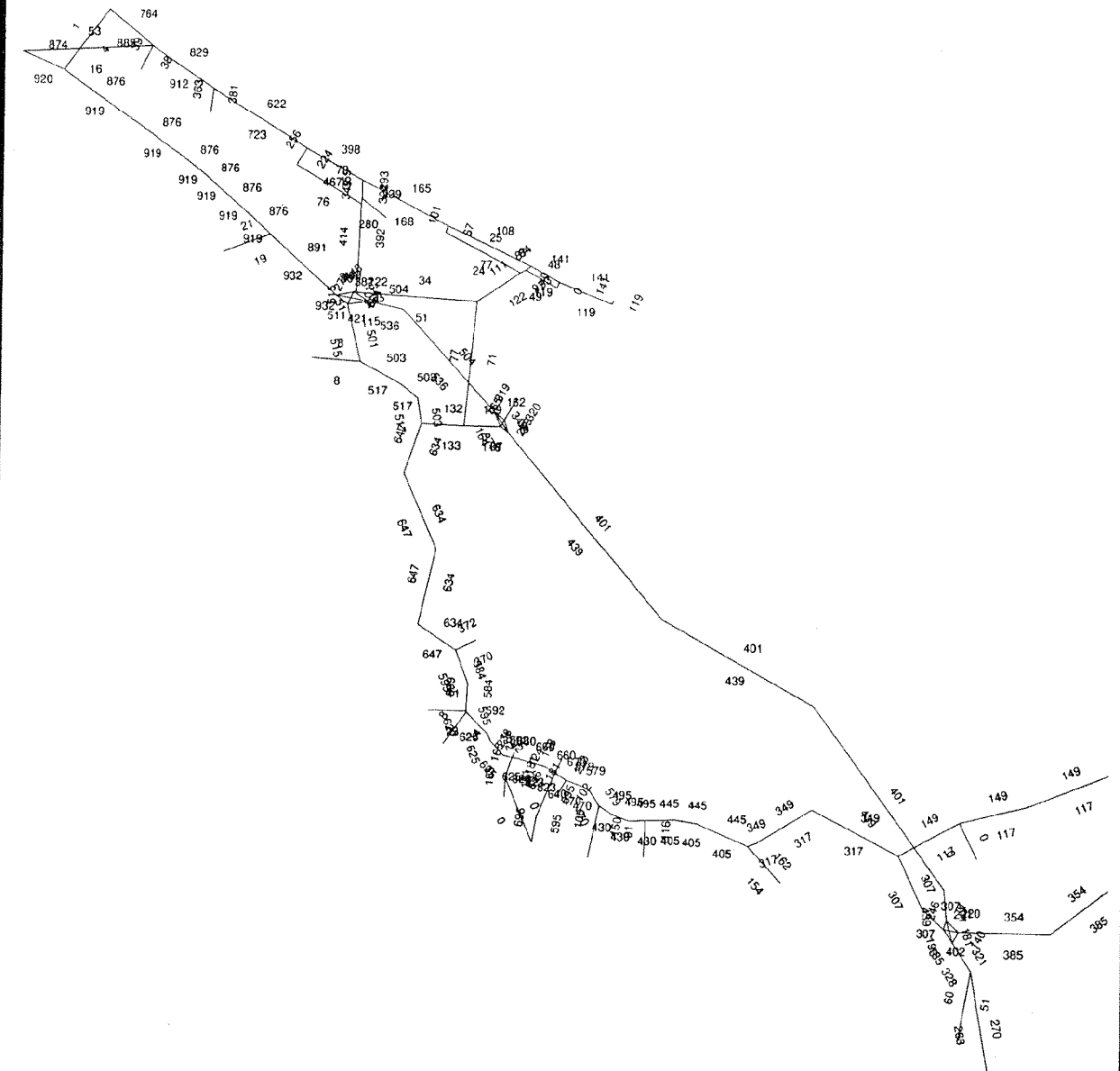
37am11_5.NET

Alternative Route (Option A3) 2011 AM Peak



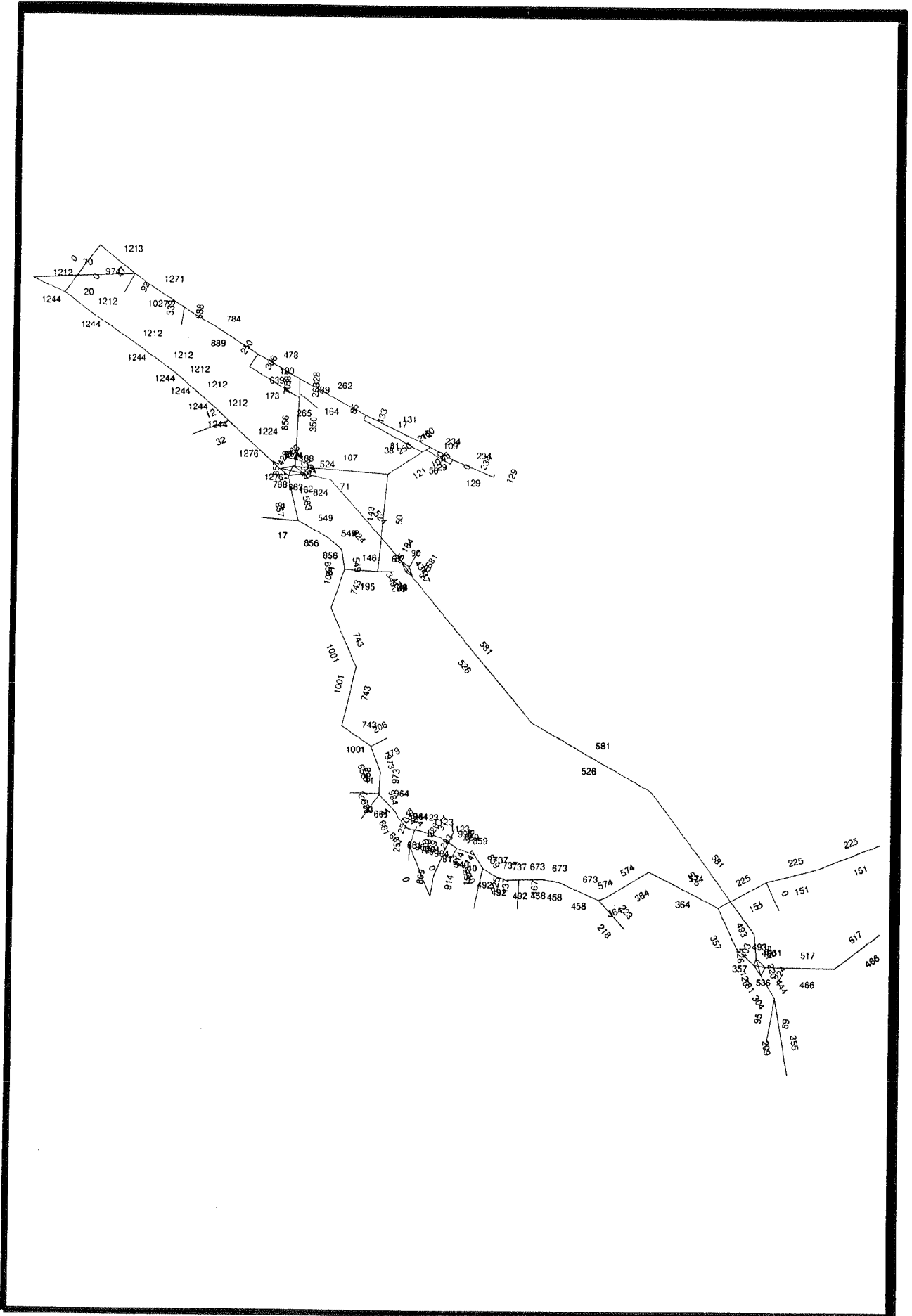
37ip11_5.NET

Alternative Route (Option A3) 2011 Inter peak



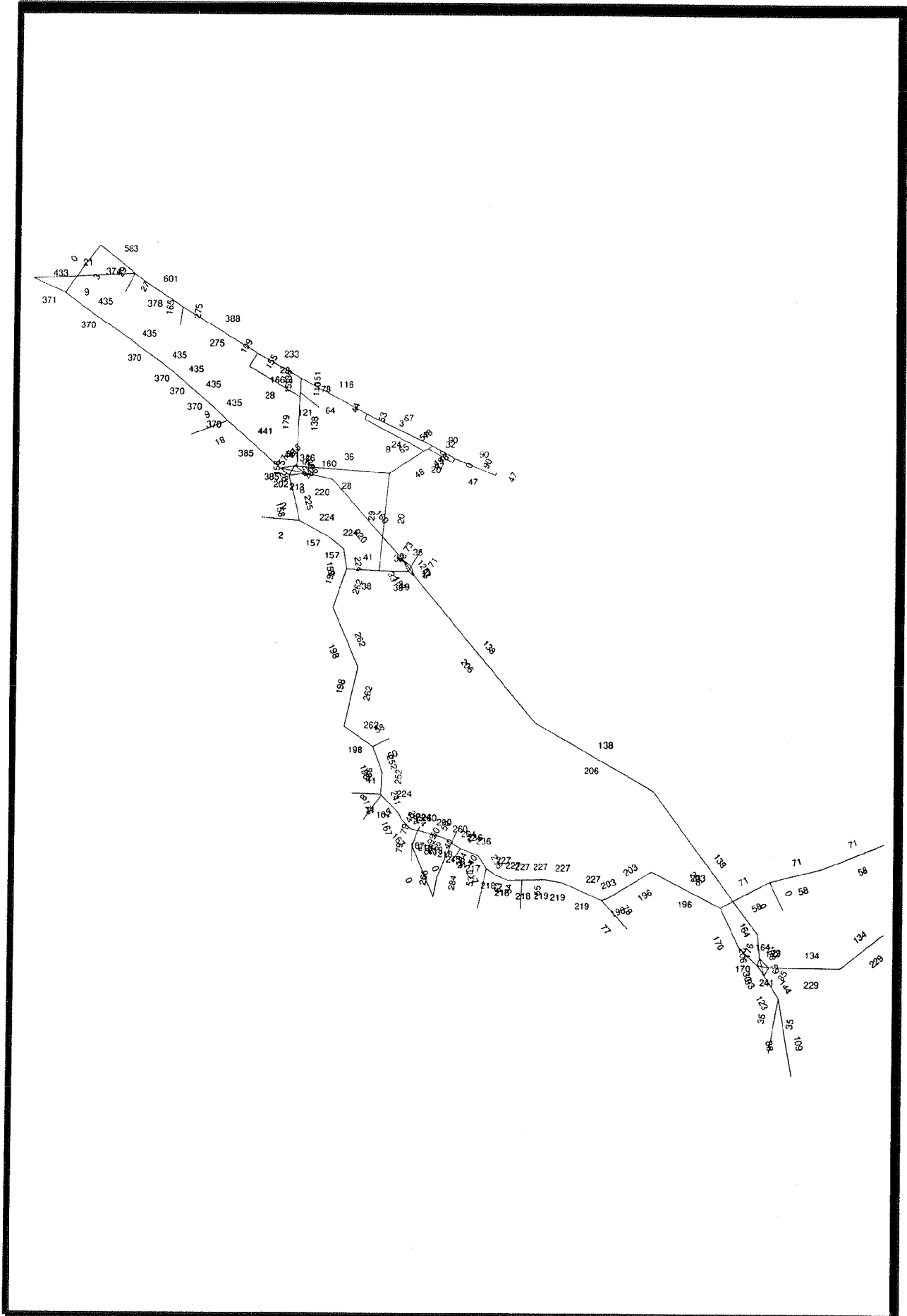
37ip21_5.NET

Alternative Route (Option A3) 2011 Off Peak



37pm21_5.NET

Alternative Route (Option A3) 2021 Inter Peak



37of11_5.NET

Alternative Route (Option A3) 2021 PM Peak



37of21_5.NET

Alternative Route (Option A3) 2021 Off Peak

APPENDIX C

Accident Cost Analysis

**Accident Rate Analysis:
Accident Costs on Links**

Link	Length	Speed	Existing Rates		New/Upgraded Rates																					
			Cost per Accident	Injury	Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury	
					Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury
2	1.56	70	\$314,000	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	66.7	
4	2.05	70	\$314,000	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3	48.3
5	4.4	70	\$314,000	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6	41.6
6	2.79	100	\$514,000	22.2	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6	17.6
7	4.96	100	\$514,000	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5
8	2.13	50	\$194,000	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
9	1.4	100	\$514,000	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1	36.1
10	1.1	70	\$314,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
13	1.59	70	\$314,000	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6	22.6
14	0.99	90	\$514,000	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9	23.9
15	0.99	70	\$314,000	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5	36.5
16	2.85	100	\$514,000	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8
17	3.7	100m	\$227,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
18	12.1	100m	\$227,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
19	1.09	100	\$514,000	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18
20	4	100m	\$227,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
21	11.6	100m	\$227,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
22	1.26	100	\$514,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
23	0.9	100	\$514,000	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12
TOTALS																										

**Accident Rate Analysis:
Accident Costs on Nodes**

Node	X	Speed	Existing Rates		New/Upgraded Rates																			
			Cost	Accident	Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury		Injury	
					Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury
100	1	50	\$100,000	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130	0.130
101	1	100	\$514,000	0.152	0.152	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068
102	1	100	\$514,000	0.165	0.165	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068
106	1	100	\$514,000	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129	0.129
107	1	100	\$514,000	0.249	0.249	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068
109	1	50	\$100,000	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042
110	1	50	\$100,000	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027	0.027
108	1	100	\$514,000	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068	0.068
118	1	100	\$514,000	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042
TOTALS																								

Note: For link numbers refer to Figure 1.

Accident Rate Analysis: Accident Costs on Nodes		2021 Costs																														
Node	X	Speed	Cost per Accident	Injury	2021																											
					2021Ea	2021_11	2021_12	2021_13	2021_14	2021_15	2021_16	2021_17	2021_18	2021_19	2021_20	2021_21	2021_22	2021_23	2021_24	2021_25	2021_30	2021_31	2021_32	2021_33	2021_34	2021_35	2021_40	2021_41	2021_42	2021_43	2021_44	
				Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	
100	1	50	\$194,000	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	
101	1	100	\$514,000	\$5,140	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	\$2,296	
102	1	100	\$514,000	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	
106	1	100	\$514,000	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	
107	1	100	\$514,000	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	
109	1	50	\$194,000	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	
110	1	50	\$194,000	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932
108	1	100	\$514,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
113	1	100	\$514,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
TOTALS				\$20,242	\$20,242	\$17,388	\$20,242	\$10,172	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$10,172	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	

Note: For link numbers, refer to Figur

Accident Rate Analysis: Accident Costs on Nodes 2031 Costs

Node	X	Speed	Cost per Accident	2031																						
				Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury	Injury								
100	1	50	\$184,000	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461		
101	1	100	\$514,000	\$5,140	\$2,286	\$5,140	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	\$2,286	
102	1	100	\$514,000	\$5,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403	\$1,403
106	1	100	\$514,000	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894
107	1	100	\$514,000	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041	\$2,041
109	1	50	\$184,000	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654
110	1	50	\$184,000	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932	\$1,932
108	1	100	\$514,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
118	1	100	\$514,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
TOTALS				\$20,242	\$17,368	\$20,242	\$10,172	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681	\$11,681

Note: For link numbers, refer to Figur

Accident Rate Analysis: Accident Costs on Nodes		2041 Costs																													
Node	X	Speed	Cost per Accident	2041Ea		2041_12		2041_11		2041_10		2041_09		2041_08		2041_07		2041_06		2041_05		2041_04		2041_03		2041_02		2041_01			
				Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals	Injury	Totals
100	1	50	\$184,000	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	\$461	
101	1	100	\$514,000	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	\$2,296	\$5,140	
102	1	100	\$514,000	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	\$3,200	
106	1	100	\$514,000	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	\$2,894	
107	1	100	\$514,000	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	\$7,471	
108	1	50	\$184,000	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	\$654	
110	1	50	\$184,000	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	\$422	
108	1	100	\$514,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	
118	1	100	\$514,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
TOTALS				\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	\$20,242	

Note: For link numbers refer to Figur

APPENDIX D

**Willingness to Pay
Intangible Benefits**

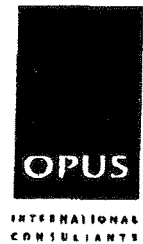
APPENDIX E

Cost and Benefit Time Streams

Faxed 15/7

15 July 1997

Transit New Zealand
P O Box 5084
WELLINGTON



ATTENTION: Colin Crampton

File: 2/61444

Dear Sir

TE PUKE INTERNAL BYPASS ECONOMICS : WILLINGNESS TO PAY SURVEY

This letter is an update of my previous letter of 20 March 1997 that formed the basis of a TNZ submission.

As you are aware, due to review criticisms, Opus International, McDermott Fairgray and Valuation Technologies (Dr Leslie Syme) agreed to undertake a validation survey of the intangible benefits. (Refer our discussions on 3 April and my fax of 4 April 1997). This survey concentrated on 2 aspects:

- i) determining the travel costs to alternative shopping centres and the amount that would be saved, and
- ii) the direct "willingness to pay" for improvements.

The survey was to include a minimum of sample size 100.

The preliminary results of the incompleted survey (sample of 85) were presented at a stakeholders meeting on 23 May 1997.

I am pleased to advise that the survey has now been completed (sample size 102). Although neither Leslie Syme or McDermott Fairgray have produced a revised report based on this second survey, I have been given the results. The values differ slightly from those presented at the stakeholders meeting based on the additional survey responses. Table 1 attached sets out the findings, comparison with previous surveys/assumptions and economics.

In summary:

- The validation survey generally confirms the findings of the original survey. The values are in the same order of magnitude.
- The questions in the 2nd survey relating to the travel cost savings were very direct and consequently the results are less open to interpretation.
- The survey indicated that there are a wide range of reasons people shop at alternative centres with a better range of shops, services and lower prices featuring regularly. Traffic nuisance and environment conditions was not ranked as a major reason for not

Opus International Consultants Limited
Hamilton Office
Quality Management Systems Certified to ISO 9001

Minolta House, Princes Street
Private Bag 3057
Hamilton, New Zealand

Telephone: +64 7 838 9344
Facsimile: +64 7 838 9324
Web site: www.opus.co.nz

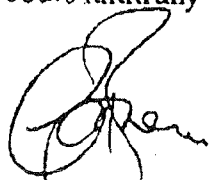
Formerly Works
Consultancy
Services Limited

shopping in the main street. Although \$6.4M p.a. is spent on travel to an alternative centre approx only 7% of all shopping trips would be saved by constructing the internal bypass.

- The validation survey found a higher level of protest votes (55%) in the WTP questions. This is likely to be related to all the interim publicity on the subject. In essence a lot of people either don't want the internal bypass, do not see it as their responsibility to pay for it or could not afford to pay any extra.
- Due to the low number of valid responses to the WTP questions in the 2nd survey, the value may not be as robust as the initial survey.
- The revised BCR is 2.9. This includes the alternative shopping centre travel cost savings (this is a tangible value) and rates WTP. I have assumed that 100% of the WTP value can be incorporated as in the 2nd questionnaire, the respondents offered this value even though they stated that they often shop elsewhere and may not alter their shopping pattern, ie I believe that there is no double counting.
- The validation survey uncovered a high number of concerns relating to the community severance effects. Many believed that the internal bypass would drive a bigger wedge between two socio-economic groups.
- The community now appears divided on the issue of the bypass. A large percentage of the community and stakeholders appear to favour the external bypass constructed as soon as possible whilst the CBD businesses prefer to have the internal bypass built immediately.
- Whilst these surveys appear to have quantified the WTP value for the bypass plus the travel to alternative shopping centres, it may not have necessarily captured the full costs of the environmental conditions imposed on the community by SH2 passing through its CBD.

I hope that the validation survey and findings assist your decision making on this project. Irrespective of the academic critiques, I am sure that there is a place for surveys to measure externalities/intangibles whether they be contingency valuations surveys or other types. I am also sure that this has been a valuable exercise for all those involved.

Yours faithfully



C A Brodie
CIVIL ENGINEERING

G:\TRANSPORT\1444\WTPSURVEY.L4

TABLE 1 : SURVEY FINDINGS AND ECONOMIC SUMMARY

	Original Survey August 1996	Subsequent Assumptions March 1997	2nd Survey April/May 1997
Tangible BCR			
PV Benefits	\$6.8M	\$6.8M	\$6.8M
PV Costs	\$3.6M	\$3.6M	\$3.6M
BCR	1.9	1.9	1.9
Sales leakage	\$13M to \$19M	N/A	N/A
Willingness to Pay via Rates via Parking => WTP via Rates PV (10 yrs)	\$268,000 pa N/A \$1.8M	\$300,000 pa (John Bollard) N/A \$2.0M	\$229,000 pa \$43,000 pa \$1.5M (rates)
Travel Cost Savings associated with travel to alternative shopping centres => Travel savings PV (10 yrs)	\$418,000 pa \$2.7M	\$500,000 p.a. (Opus estimate based on 10% saving of \$5M pa spend on travel to alternative centres \$3.3M	\$288,000 p.a. (total cost of travel to alternative centres is \$6.4M p.a.) \$1.9M
Adjusted BCR	2.3 to 3.3 Excludes sales leakage	3.2 Assumed travel costs plus 2/3 WTP to avoid double counting	2.9 Assumes total travel saving and total WTP rates

G:\INANS\PS1\1444\WPSURVEY.L4

APPENDIX E

Cost and Benefit Time Streams

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table 1: User Costs for 2011. Columns include Year, Month, and various cost categories (e.g., 1 Year, 2 Year, 3 Year, 4 Year, 5 Year, 6 Year, 7 Year, 8 Year, 9 Year, 10 Year, 11 Year, 12 Year, 13 Year, 14 Year, 15 Year, 16 Year, 17 Year, 18 Year, 19 Year, 20 Year, 21 Year, 22 Year, 23 Year, 24 Year, 25 Year, 26 Year, 27 Year, 28 Year, 29 Year, 30 Year, 31 Year, 32 Year, 33 Year, 34 Year, 35 Year, 36 Year, 37 Year, 38 Year, 39 Year, 40 Year, 41 Year, 42 Year, 43 Year, 44 Year, 45 Year, 46 Year, 47 Year, 48 Year, 49 Year, 50 Year). Rows list various cost items like '1 Year Cash Costs', '2 Year Cash Costs', etc.

Table 2: User Costs for 2012. Similar structure to Table 1, showing monthly cost streams for the year 2012.

Table 3: User Costs for 2013. Similar structure to Table 1, showing monthly cost streams for the year 2013.

Table 4: User Costs for 2014. Similar structure to Table 1, showing monthly cost streams for the year 2014.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with 13 columns: Year, Cash, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation. Rows include various project metrics like Net Present Value, Internal Rate of Return, Payback Period, and Break-Even Point for different years and scenarios.

Table with 13 columns: Year, Cash, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation. Rows include various project metrics like Net Present Value, Internal Rate of Return, Payback Period, and Break-Even Point for different years and scenarios.

Table with 13 columns: Year, Cash, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation. Rows include various project metrics like Net Present Value, Internal Rate of Return, Payback Period, and Break-Even Point for different years and scenarios.

Table with 13 columns: Year, Cash, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation. Rows include various project metrics like Net Present Value, Internal Rate of Return, Payback Period, and Break-Even Point for different years and scenarios.

Table with 13 columns: Year, Cash, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation, Continuation. Rows include various project metrics like Net Present Value, Internal Rate of Return, Payback Period, and Break-Even Point for different years and scenarios.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Main data table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Includes sub-sections for 'New Cost Items' and 'Costs to be Eliminated'.

Vertical text on the right side of the page, possibly a page number or reference.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with multiple columns for years (1990-2010) and rows for various cost categories like 'Annual Maintenance', 'Annual Operations', and 'Annual Construction'. Includes sub-sections for '1 lane Option A3, grade separated intersections, 4-laning Te Maunga to Domain' and '1 lane Option B, grade separated intersections, 4-laning Te Maunga to Domain'.

1 lane Option B, grade separated intersections, 4-laning Te Maunga to Domain

Table with multiple columns for years (1990-2010) and rows for various cost categories like 'Annual Maintenance', 'Annual Operations', and 'Annual Construction'. Includes sub-sections for '1 lane Option B, grade separated intersections, 4-laning Te Maunga to Domain' and '1 lane Option A3, grade separated intersections, 4-laning Te Maunga to Domain'.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with columns for year (1-25), lane, and various cost categories including construction, operation, and maintenance. It includes multiple sections for different lane configurations and user categories.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

2 lane Option B, grade separated intersections

Table with columns for Year (2011-2035), Lane, and various cost categories (Construction, Maintenance, etc.) with numerical values.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Includes sub-sections for '2 lane Option B, at grade' and '3 lane Option B, at grade'. Rows list various cost categories like 'Construction Costs', 'Maintenance Costs', and 'User Costs' over a 25-year period.

Table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Continuation of the cost stream analysis, showing detailed breakdowns for different project options and components.

Table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Further continuation of the cost stream analysis, including cumulative totals and annual averages.

Table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Continuation of the cost stream analysis, providing a comprehensive view of the project's financial requirements over time.

Table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Continuation of the cost stream analysis, detailing the long-term costs associated with the project.

Table with columns for Year, Cost Type, and Amount. Continuation of the cost stream analysis, showing the final years of the project's cost profile.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

Table with 10 columns: Year, Cost Type, Value, etc. Includes sub-sections for 'Year 1' through 'Year 10'.

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with multiple columns for years (2011-2035) and rows for various cost categories (Construction, Operation, Maintenance, etc.) for different lane configurations (4 lane, 4 lane with median, 4 lane with median and shoulders, etc.).

Table with multiple columns for years (2011-2035) and rows for various cost categories (Construction, Operation, Maintenance, etc.) for different lane configurations (4 lane, 4 lane with median, 4 lane with median and shoulders, etc.).

**25 YEAR BENEFIT COST RATIO
EVALUATION**

TIME STREAM OF USER COSTS

Table with columns for Year (1997-2048) and rows for NPV, NPV @ 10%, Year, and various cost categories (Travel Time Costs, Vehicle Operating Costs, Accident Costs, etc.)

4 lane Option A3 grade separated intersections

Table showing costs for 4 lane Option A3 grade separated intersections from Year 2011 to 2048, including Travel Time Costs, Vehicle Operating Costs, and Accident Costs.

4 lane Option A3, grade separated intersections, 4 laning Te Maunga to Domain

Table showing costs for 4 lane Option A3, grade separated intersections, 4 laning Te Maunga to Domain from Year 2006 to 2048, including Travel Time Costs, Vehicle Operating Costs, and Accident Costs.

Table showing 50 Year BCR, 25 Year BCR, and 25 Year PVC for various cost categories (Travel Time Costs, Vehicle Operating Costs, etc.)

Table showing 25 Year PVC excl WTP from first year of construction, 25 Year BCR from first year of construction, and 25 Year PVC from first year of construction.

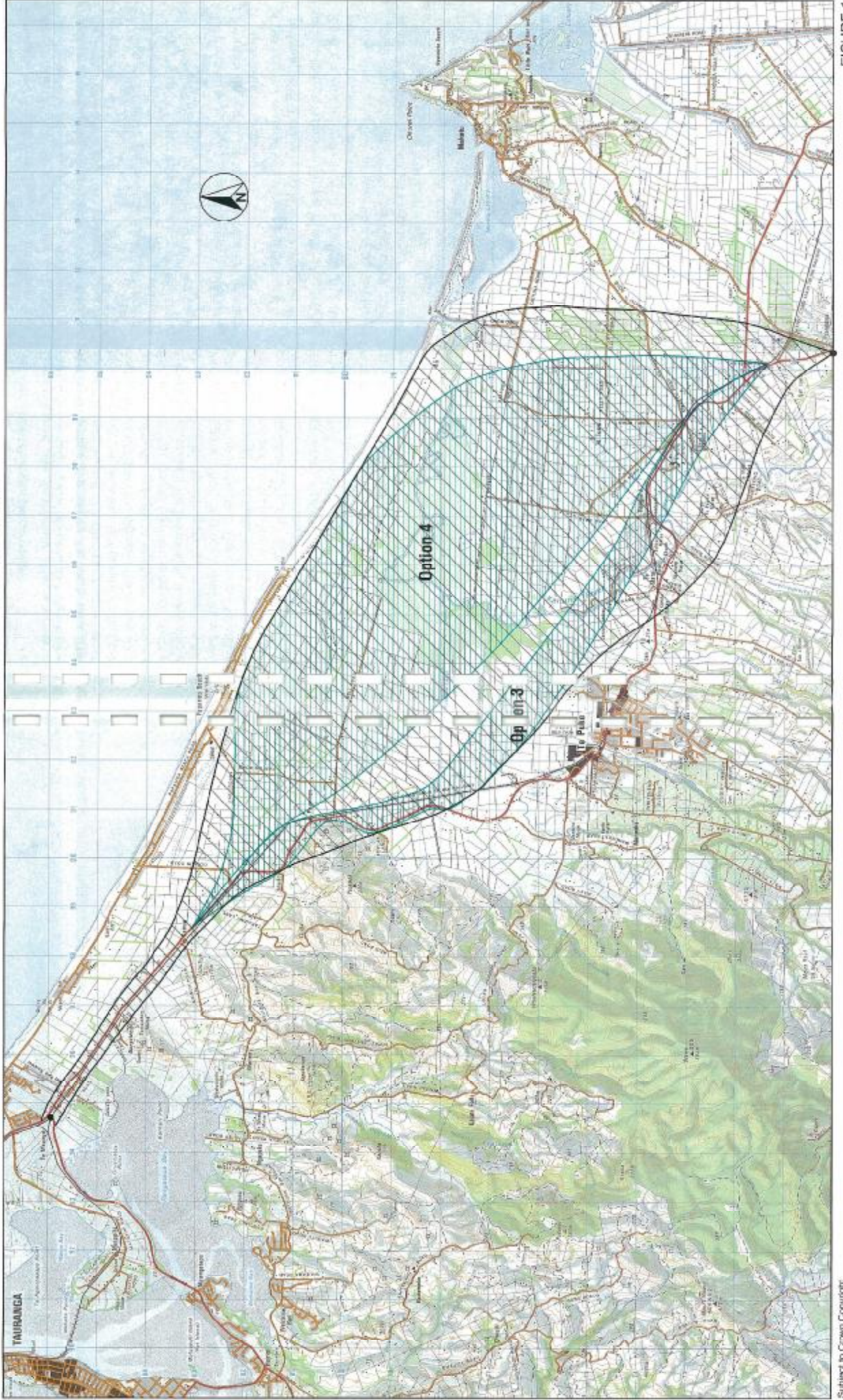
Table showing 25 Year BCR from 1st yr of construction, 25 Year PVC from 1st yr of construction, and 25 Year PVC from first year of construction.

APPENDIX 3
Newsletters

AREAS OF CONSIDERATION

Upgrading existing route plus associated localised improvement

- OPTION 1:
- OPTIONS 3 & 4:
- BA IDO INTEREST:



THE CONSULTANT'S BRIEF

The contract will require the consultant to investigate possible alignment improvements to State Highway 2 between the State Highway 29 junction at Te Maunga and the State Highway 33 junction at Paengaroa.

Preliminary scoping of options conducted by Works Consultancy Services Limited in 1990/91 identified two alignments that were worthy of further investigation with Benefit Cost Ratios (BCR) in the order of 3.0. The two alignments are as follows:

- Option 3 (called the Swamp Route) which is a staged alignment using parts of the existing highway but incorporating a major deviation between the Kopurua Canal and the Ranglunū Straight.
- Option 4 (called the Sandhills Route) which is a major deviation (no staging) between Domain Road and Paengaroa.

Common to both routes is the construction of the Te Maunga to Domain Road highway with 4 lanes.

At its March 1996 meeting the Transit New Zealand Authority resolved to designate the favoured route in the interests of preserving the route from changes in land use - particularly residential development. The Authority made funds available for this investigation during the 1996/97 and 1997/98 financial years.

The alignments described above are concepts only and during the investigation the respective routes will become more accurately defined as constraints are identified and managed.

It is recognised that community consultation is a critical factor in defining the path of these routes hence Transit New Zealand has defined a band of interest within which it will be sending regular newsletters. This is the area that is shown on the map. The generally defined corridors of options 3 and 4 are also depicted.

The design requirements are for the road to be four lanes with a grass divider in the middle. The road would have limited access to remove the current access problems.

CONSULTATION

The consultants will be required to undertake consultation with the community. Transit New Zealand also requires that groups such as the Automobile Association, Road Transport Association, Te Puke business representatives and Federated Farmers be consulted.

During August and September 1996 a series of preliminary Hui were held with TANGATA WHENUA groups affected by the study area. The presentation consisted of an introduction to Transit New Zealand, an overview of the project and the requirements of RMA consultation. There was also an opportunity for groups to highlight concerns and issues that could be focussed on by the successful consultant for the project. It was also a chance before the tender goes out to confirm the various tangata whenua groups and how they would like to be consulted. The groups identified will form the base for tangata whenua consultation for the project but are by no means the final make-up of tangata whenua groups as this will be further refined during the consultation process. If any other tangata whenua groups feel they should be included would they please contact Rawhiti Moses (Transit New Zealand Facilitator), 07 838 8227 to discuss.

The following are the groups identified where a preliminary hui was held:

- Waitaha (including associated Hapu)
- Tapuka (including associated Hapu)
- Nga Makino
- Ngati Pikiao
- Ngati Whakaue.

It is likely that, in addition to the newsletters, there will be meetings. Open Days, displays and the opportunity for you to send in submissions or to tell the consultants your opinions and information.

WHERE TO FIND INFORMATION

If you have information to give us or you want information on the project, then contact:

Colin Crampton
Transit New Zealand
Hamilton
Phone: 07 838 8220



Community Newsletter No.1



TAURANGA EASTERN ARTERIAL

Many of you will have heard of the roading studies in the Te Puke area that Transit New Zealand has undertaken over the past years. The purpose of those studies was to find solutions to the following issues:

- conflict between passing traffic and parking manoeuvres in the Te Puke main street
- safety of pedestrians crossing the main street
- environmental and social concerns for the effects of heavy vehicles in the main street
- a lack of passing areas and low overall speed in the Paengaroa to Te Maunga stretch of highway
- an ever increasing number of highway access points with insufficient sight distance
- vertical and horizontal alignment deficiencies in the vicinity of Te Puke and Bell Road
- safety of pedestrians from the school and marae at Waitangi crossing the highway

Transit New Zealand is in the process of finalising documentation to commission a consultant in February 1997 to complete the necessary studies and consultation to enable a formal Designation to be lodged with the District Councils for inclusion in their District Plan. It is expected that the studies will take at least a year.

The purpose of this newsletter is to alert you to the fact that this study is about to get under way and that you, as a landowner in the area of the study, will continue to receive newsletters next year as the study progresses. We are also interested to receive any information that you think would be beneficial to the study. On the back of this newsletter is the name of a Transit New Zealand staff member who is able to answer any questions you may have at this early stage in the programme.

Yours faithfully

Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
December 1995



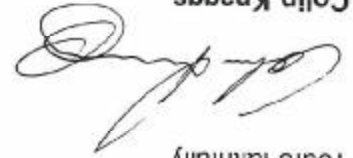
STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

You may have read in the newspaper that Transit New Zealand has appointed consultants (Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd) to undertake the studies and consultation to determine a new State highway alignment that bypasses Te Puke and Waitangi. The realignment is likely to start in the vicinity of Domain Road, Paparua and reconnect with the existing highway north of Paengaroa.

Transit New Zealand is proceeding now with the designation approval under the Resource Management Act for four-laning the highway from Te Maunga to Domain Road, Paparua. There are no alternative feasible alignments in this section mainly because of the existing and proposed residential zoning and the railway line. Investigations and consultation have occurred and the application has been lodged with the Tauranga District Council. The consideration of grade separated (like on the Auckland southern motorway) access to the State highway between Te Maunga and Domain Road will be part of the Eastern Arterial Project.

The Eastern Arterial studies and consultation will take approximately 14 months and we will be sending out newsletters regularly to keep you informed. We will also hold Open Days to give you the opportunity to meet with the consultants and get more detailed information.

Yours faithfully



Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand

May 1997

STAGE ONE

The bypass study area is from Domain Road to Paengaroa and includes all the land from the existing State highway to the coast. The Te Maunga - Domain Road study area is concerned with grade separated access to the four-laned highway which is the subject of a separate designation application. Stage One of the study is to determine what lands are not suitable for a State highway. There are three major areas of investigation.

- The first is to review past investigations and available information regarding the ground conditions such as wetland or peat areas. Such land presents construction difficulties.
- The second action is to consider the Matters of National Importance that are listed in the Resource Management Act 1991 and other important environmental matters. In particular we are aware that there are likely to be sites of cultural and spiritual significance to the tangata whenua that should be avoided if at all possible. There may also be sites of ecological importance such as Wildlife Reserves and the coastal environment generally, which need to be protected from development.
- The third element is to find options that meet Transit New Zealand design guidelines and are in accordance with Transit's Economic Evaluation criteria.

If you know of other matters that may influence the initial choice of options please let the consultant team know by contacting anyone on the numbers listed below.

Stage One will end with the presentation of some alignment options to the public. The Transit New Zealand brief requires that one of the options for further study must be an upgrade of the existing State highway alignment.

STAGES TWO AND THREE

Stage Two will involve the consideration of these alignments and the comparative scoring of each to determine which is the favoured option.

Stage Three involves the in-depth study of the favoured alignment and the preparation of an Assessment of Effects which is needed to gain consent under the Resource Management Act 1991.

PUBLIC CONSULTATION

Full public consultation is to occur during Stages Two and Three of the Project. During Stage One targeted groups and individuals with knowledge of the relevant elements will be contacted. If you wish to be consulted please telephone any of the consultancy staff listed below.

TANGATA WHENUA CONSULTATION

The consultants will be contacting hapu representatives to organise consultation immediately to determine where the sites of cultural and spiritual importance are located. Such information will be dealt with sensitively, and if necessary confidentially, to preserve the knowledge on such matters. As a starting point contact will be made with the following groups that Transit New Zealand staff have already met with:

- Waitaha (including associated Hapu)
- Tapuika (including associated Hapu)
- Ngati Makino
- Ngati Pikiao
- Ngati Whakauae
- Nga Potiki.
- Ngati Pukenga

If your hapu group has not been contacted and you would like to be consulted on this project please telephone the consultancy staff members listed below.

FURTHER INFORMATION

The consultants (Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd) have an office in Tauranga in Harrington House. You can meet by prior appointment the staff listed below or you can telephone us at any time. The contacts are:

Christine Ralph, Keith Frenz and John Hannah
Phone: 07 578 0896 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2968 email: cralph@beca.co.nz

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is:
Colin Crampton. He can be contacted through phone: 07 838 8220



STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

Since our last newsletter in May the consultants have completed the preliminary investigations to determine what areas are suitable for a new alignment of State Highway 2 from Domain Road to Paengaroa. This newsletter advises what constraints have been identified and we seek your response on the accuracy of this information. At this stage we would be interested in your ideas as to where alignments could be constructed. Your suggestions will be taken into account when the various options for the alignment are developed. Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd propose to develop the options and publish these in an October newsletter, so we need your contributions no later than 9 September 1997.

At its last meeting the Transit Authority confirmed that its energies would be directed to the Tauranga Eastern By-pass instead of the Te Puke Internal By-pass. This decision is supported by the Western Bay of Plenty District Council. However Transit and the Western Bay of Plenty District Council are working together on plans for the interim improvement of the Te Puke mainstreet and the Waitangi area. We will keep the public informed of the progress on those plans.

Yours faithfully

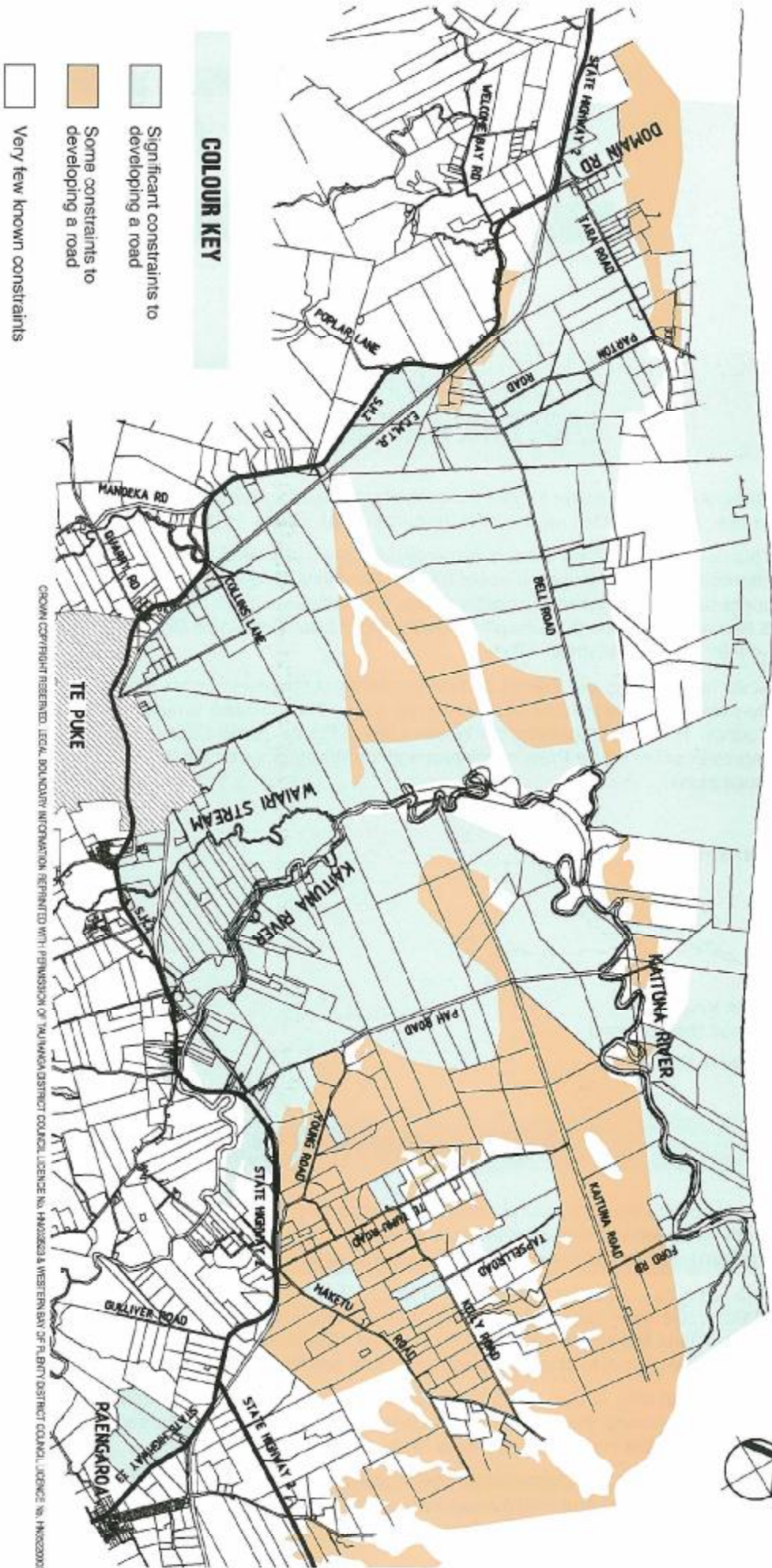
Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
August 1997

PRELIMINARY RESEARCH COMPLETE

Research into the background geotechnical aspects of the land have been completed and arrangements are being made to undertake some soil testing. All land in the area can support a highway construction but the peaty soils present more extensive construction and maintenance methods and consequently costs. The team has consulted with Ngati Pukenga, Nga Potiki, Waitaha, Tapuika, Ngati Whakau, Ngati Pikiao, Ngati Makino, and Ngati Kapawa to learn which areas have spiritual and cultural significance. There are few land holdings in Maori land title and few identified Pa or urupa. The Kaituna River and the coast were, and remain significant areas for the collection of food and consequently other activities.

The coastal strip is also considered to be an important ecological and landscape area and one that warrants consideration under the Resource Management Act. Other ecological areas include the Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve and the mouth of the Kaituna River.

Residential zoning at Papamoa has been proposed in the Tauranga Review District Plan and such development brings with it social and employment services. The Western Bay of Plenty District Council is investigating industrial zonings at north Te Puke and Rangitimu.



OWN COPYRIGHT RESERVED. LEGAL BOUNDARY INFORMATION REPRINTED WITH PERMISSION OF TAUMAKA DISTRICT COUNCIL. LICENCE NO. HA020003 & WESTERN BAY OF PLENTY DISTRICT COUNCIL. LICENCE NO. HA020003

COLOUR KEY

- Significant constraints to developing a road
- Some constraints to developing a road
- Very few known constraints

NOTE: Not to scale

WHAT ARE THE CONSTRAINTS TO DEVELOPING AN ALIGNMENT

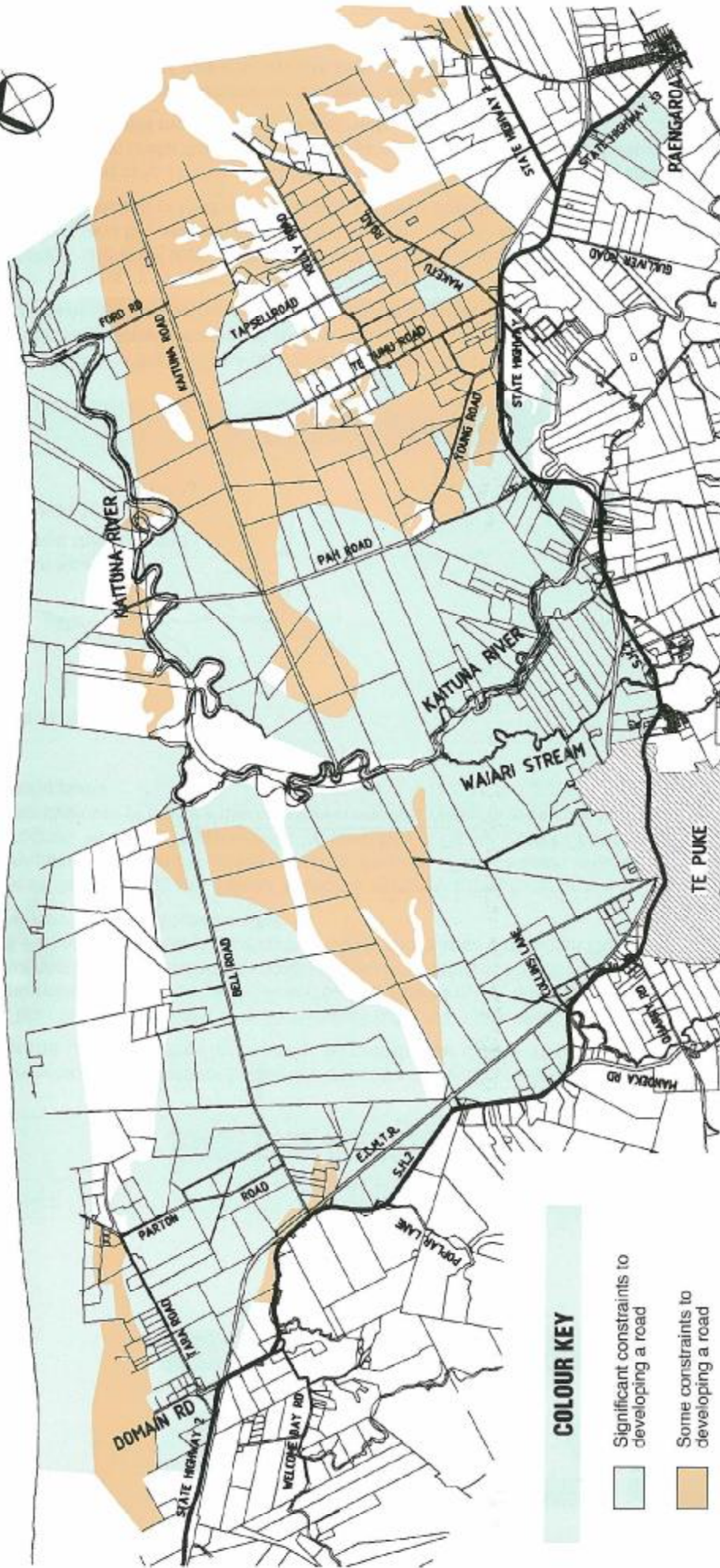
The plan in this newsletter is in three colours identifying three types of land constraints in the study area. All constraints are potentially reducible to some degree by further investigation, design measures, additional costs, or by negotiation.

Please tell us if this information is correct and if there are other significant aspects or features that a highway should avoid. We would be interested in your suggestions as to where to place a highway. Draw on the map and send it back to the address in the next column within three weeks. We would appreciate your responses by 9 September 1997.

FURTHER INFORMATION

The consultants (Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd) have an office in Tauranga in Harrington House, Willow Street, central Tauranga. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone us at any time. The contacts are:

Christine Ralph, Keith Frenzt and John Hannah: Phone: 07 578 0896, Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is: Colin Crampin. He can be contacted through phone: 07 838 8220



COLOUR KEY

-  Significant constraints to developing a road
-  Some constraints to developing a road
-  Very few known constraints

NOTE: Not to scale

CROWN COPYRIGHT RESERVED. LEGAL BOUNDARY INFORMATION REPRINTED WITH PERMISSION OF TAURANGA DISTRICT COUNCIL. LICENCE NO. HNS22003

WHAT ARE THE CONSTRAINTS TO DEVELOPING AN ALIGNMENT

The plan in this newsletter is in three colours identifying three types of land constraints in the study area. All constraints are potentially reducible to some degree by further investigation, design measures, additional costs, or by negotiation. Please tell us if this information is correct and if there are other significant aspects or features that a highway should avoid. We would be interested in your suggestions as to where to place a highway. Draw on the map and send it back to the address in the next column within three weeks. We would appreciate your responses by 9 September 1997.

FURTHER INFORMATION

The consultants (Beca Carter Hollings & Fernor Ltd) have an office in Tauranga in Harrington House, Willow Street, central Tauranga. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone us at any time. The contacts are:

Christine Ralph, Keith Frenz and John Hannah: Phone: 07 578 0696 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2265 email: cralph@beca.co.nz

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is: Colin Crampton. He can be contacted through phone: 07 838 8220



STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

Since our last newsletter in May the consultants have completed the preliminary investigations to determine what areas are suitable for a new alignment of State Highway 2 from Domain Road to Paengaroa.

This newsletter advises what constraints have been identified and we seek your response on the accuracy of this information. At this stage we would be interested in your ideas as to where alignments could be constructed. Your suggestions will be taken into account when the various options for the alignment are developed. Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd propose to develop the options and publish these in an October newsletter, so we need your contributions no later than 9 September 1997.

At its last meeting the Transit Authority confirmed that its energies would be directed to the Tauranga Eastern By-pass instead of the Te Puke Internal By-pass. This decision is supported by the Western Bay of Plenty District Council. However Transit and the Western Bay of Plenty District Council are working together on plans for the interim improvement of the Te Puke mainstreet and the Waitangi area. We will keep the public informed of the progress on those plans.

Yours faithfully

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Colin Knaggs", is written over a light blue background.

Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
August 1997

PRELIMINARY RESEARCH COMPLETE

Research into the background geotechnical aspects of the land have been completed and arrangements are being made to undertake some soil testing. All land in the area can support a highway construction but the peaty soils present more extensive construction and maintenance methods and consequently costs.

The team has consulted with Ngati Pukenga, Nga Potiki, Waitaha, Tapuika, Ngati Whakaue, Ngati Pikiaio, Ngati Makino, and Ngati Kapawa to learn which areas have spiritual and cultural significance. There are few land holdings in Maori land title and few identified Pa or urupa. The Kaituna River and the coast were, and remain significant areas for the collection of food and consequently other activities.

The coastal strip is also considered to be an important ecological and landscape area and one that warrants consideration under the Resource Management Act. Other ecological areas include the Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve and the mouth of the Kaituna River.

Residential zoning at Papamoa has been proposed in the Tauranga Review District Plan and such development brings with it social and employment services. The Western Bay of Plenty District Council is investigating industrial zonings at north Te Puke and Rangiuuru.

WE NEED TO HEAR FROM YOU BY 1ST DECEMBER

*So if you want to respond to the options
being studied you can:*

- Attend the "Information Days" to be held at:
The Paengaroa Hall on Tuesday 18 November
between 4pm and 8pm.
The Papamoa Sports Centre on Wednesday
19 November between 4pm and 8pm.
The Te Puke Hall (Pioneer Room) on Thursday
20 November between 4pm and 8pm.
- Phone Christine Ralph at Beca Carter Hollings &
Ferner Ltd on (07) 578 0896.
- Or you can write to Christine, C/- Beca Carter
Hollings & Ferner Ltd, PO Box 903, Tauranga,
Fax on (07) 578 2968 or Email on cralph@beca.co.nz

This is an opportunity to be involved in finding the route for Tauranga's Eastern Arterial, so please let us know what you think.

FURTHER INFORMATION

The consultant (Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd) has an office in Tauranga in Harrington House. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone us at any time. The contacts are:

Christine Ralph, Amanda Rowe and John Hannah
Phone: 07 578 0896 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2968 Email: cralph@beca.co.nz

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is:
Colin Crampson. He can be contacted through phone: 07 838 8220



Community Newsletter No. 4

STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

Welcome to Newsletter No. 4. This newsletter presents the three options to be studied and explains how the consultant, Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd, arrived at them. I emphasise that at this stage the preliminary analysis has identified options that are considered to be feasible and that these options will now be assessed in greater detail from several points of view; including ecology, landscape, noise, community values, archaeological and cultural.

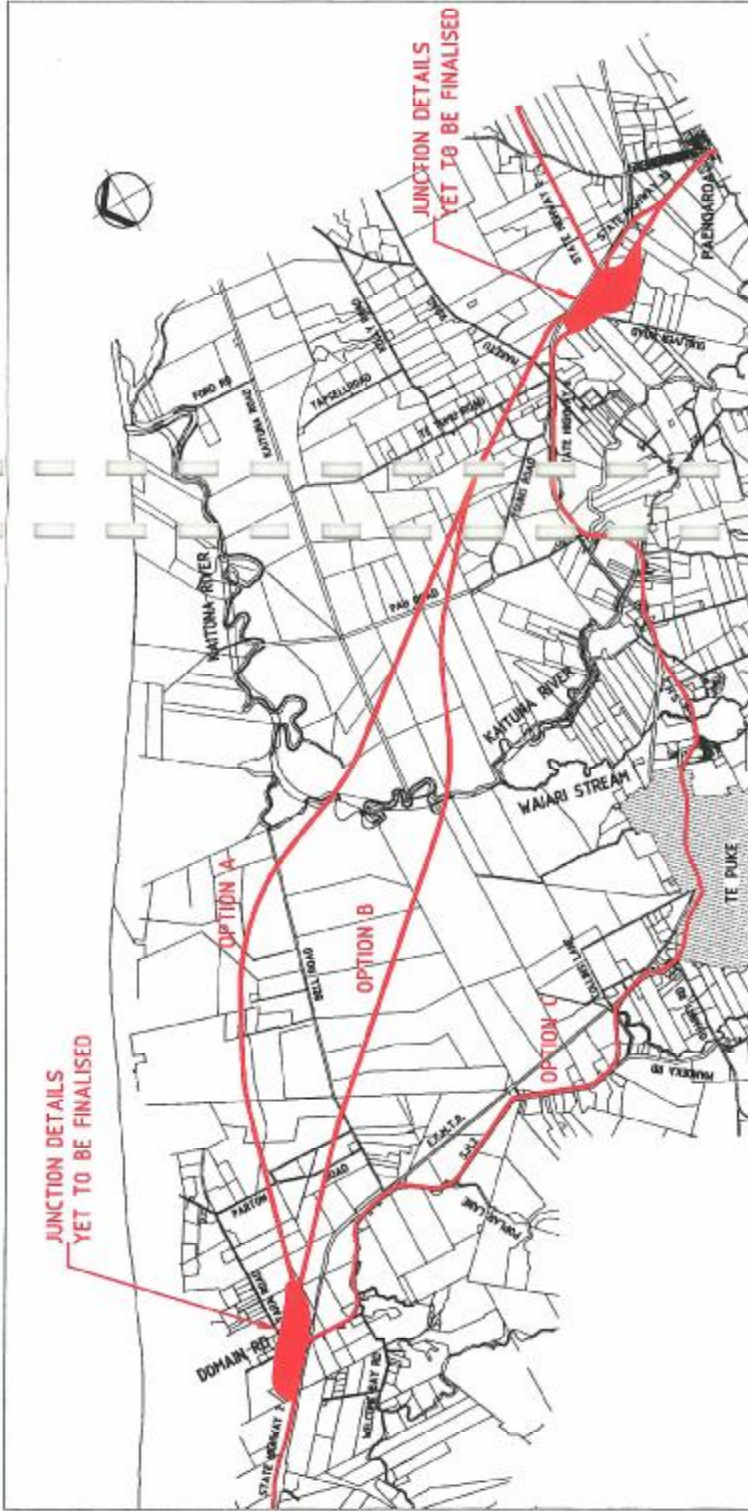
Consultation is a very important part of the preliminary and final assessments, and I invite you to submit your views on the options to the consultant either by phone or by letter. Transit New Zealand and Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd will also be holding "Information Days" to allow you to view larger scale plans and talk to members of the study team about the options. From now on the consultant is moving the study into top gear, so don't be surprised if over the next few weeks you come across people with clipboards wandering around your area. In some cases the consultant team will need to visit properties to study some things in more detail. If they need to come onto your property they will contact you to check that this is alright and make a convenient time to visit.

Don't forget that this is a crucial stage of the whole study and that your views are important as they will help shape the outcomes. The consultant looks forward to hearing from you and hopes that you find the information interesting.

Yours faithfully

Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
November 1997

OPTIONS TO BE CONSIDERED



Further consultation is about to commence to discuss these options.

Two meetings have been held with the Community Advisory Group and they have given feedback on the constraints documented in Newsletter No. 3 and on the options shown in this newsletter. The Community Advisory Group is made up of representatives of organisations with roading, ecological, community and tangata whenua interests.

HOW THE ASSESSMENT OF THE OPTIONS WILL BE DONE

The community's responses to the options will be considered alongside the many other factors to determine which of the alignments should be recommended for the preferred route. Following that recommendation, an Assessment of Environmental Effects necessary for approval of the preferred alignment will be completed.

Assessment Criteria

The following factors will be studied by a range of experts:

- Ecology**
 - e.g. wildlife, vegetation, habitat variety, species diversity and water quality.
- Landscapes**
 - e.g. landforms, opportunity for visual integration and visibility.
- Noise**
 - e.g. proximity and effect on dwellings, public buildings and marae.
- Social/Economic**
 - e.g. number of dwellings affected by alignment, existing land uses, community services and community responses.
- Archaeological/Cultural**
 - e.g. significance of archaeological and cultural sites, Maori land and areas of spiritual value.
- Transportation Aspects**
 - e.g. vehicle operating costs, travel time, crash savings and access control.
- Project Costs**
 - e.g. land purchase, mitigation measures, earthworks and road formation.
- Economics**
 - e.g. the relationship between the project costs and the benefits.

In constrained situations where the road is very close to sensitive land uses, an absolute minimum radius of 400 metres with up to 8% super elevation may be used.

B. Physical Constraints

- Alignment positioned to minimise disturbance to buildings where possible (e.g. avoid houses). This necessitates the new route being well clear of existing roads wherever possible so separate access can be maintained to properties which are service by these roads.
- Alignment positioned to suit topography to minimise cuts and fills (and hence minimise construction width).
- Alignment positioned to suit existing property boundaries to minimise disturbance to useable land where possible.
- Alignment positioned to avoid areas of existing or potential high density residential development.
- Alignment positioned to avoid, where possible, areas

- of unsuitable ground conditions.
- Alignment positioned to avoid areas of ecological importance e.g. the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve - Kaituna Wetlands.
- Alignment positioned to avoid areas of cultural sensitivity.
- One of the above has precedence over any of the others. The preliminary alignment selection is generally a balance between geometric requirements, physical constraints and cultural matters.

DESIGN

The proposed road will consist of four lanes, two in each direction. The four lanes will be separated by a grassed median 9 metres wide and a shoulder on each side of this grassed median strip of 1.5 metres. The outer edges of the road will each have a shoulder of about 2.5 metres and a berm.

SELECTION OF OPTIONS

The following was taken into account by the consultant when considering the alignment of the possible routes.

A. Geometric Requirements

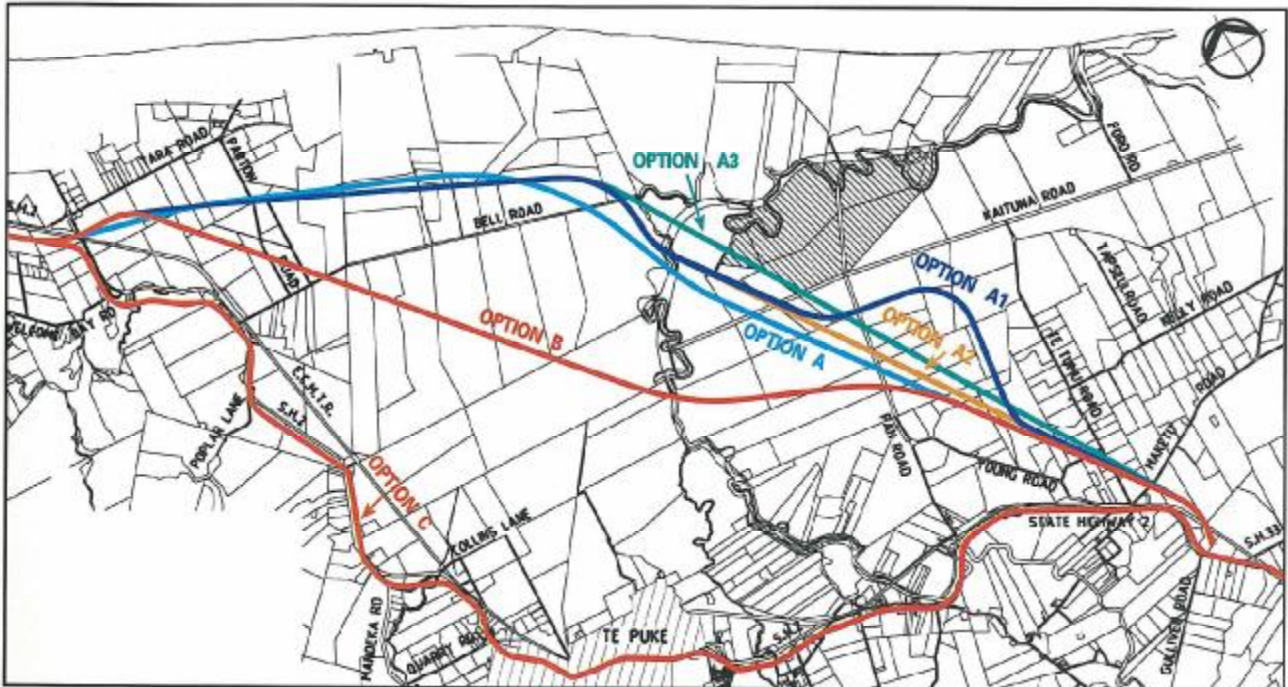
- The design speed is 100kph and takes account of the general environment.
- Desirable minimum horizontal radius is 500 metres.

CONSULTATION TO DATE

Consultation with local iwi is ongoing. Representatives of Ngati Pukenga, Nga Potiki, Waitaha, Tapuika, Ngati Whakaue, Ngati Pukiao, Ngati Makino and Ngati Kapawa have been consulted to identify areas of spiritual and cultural significance and Maori land titles. This has helped in the identification of the options.

TRANSIT NEW ZEALAND ARARAU AOTEAROA

Community Newsletter No. 5



CROWN COPYRIGHT RESERVED. LEGAL BOUNDARY INFORMATION REPRINTED WITH PERMISSION OF TAURANGA DISTRICT COUNCIL LICENCE No. HN/033523 & WESTERN BAY OF PLENTY DISTRICT COUNCIL LICENCE No. HN3522003

STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

The purpose of this newsletter is to tell you of three new options, Options A1, A2 and A3, which have emerged during consultation and are being considered in addition to Options A, B and C.

We had excellent turn-outs at the Open Days at Paengaroa, Papamoa and Te Puke in November. Our consultants spoke to at least 260 people during these three days when the original Options A, B and C were on display. We have received and analysed 104 submissions. The submissions did not reveal a clear opinion as to the preferred alignment. Various suggestions have been made during the on-going consultation and we show above three variations on Option A.

An assessment of these new options is being carried out at present and the next newsletter will be issued when a decision by Transit has been made on the preferred option, in May.

Yours faithfully

Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
March 1998

Fax

Business

Home

Contact Phone Numbers:

Property Address:

Your Name:

My comments are:

COMMENTS ON OPTIONS A1, A2 AND A3

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is: Colin Crampton. He can be contacted on telephone number: 07 838 8220

Amanda Rowe, Christine Ralph, John Hannah and Don Young
Phone: 07 578 0896 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2968 Email: arowe@beca.co.nz

The consultant, Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd, has an office in Tauranga in Harrington House. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone them at any time. The contacts are:

FURTHER INFORMATION

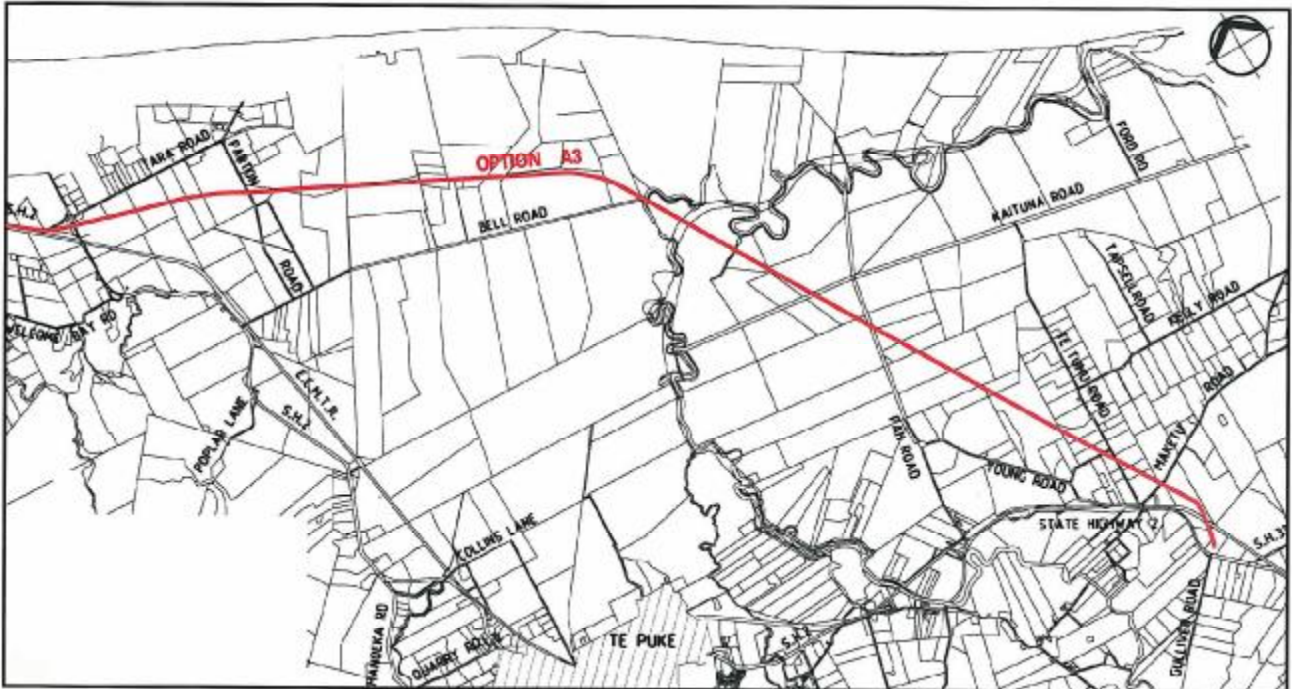
It is anticipated that an announcement on the preferred alignment will be made in May in Newsletter No. 6. Open Days will be organised when the Consultant has plans of the preferred alignment available for further discussion and analysis.

PREFERRED ALIGNMENT DELAYED

The hapu groups have been sent details of these options for their comments. Your comments are also welcomed.
At the bottom of this page is a tear off portion. If you wish to comment, please fill this out and send to Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd at the address below by 10 April 1998.

The three new options have come about as a result of consultation and are in response to some of the concerns raised. The new options attempt to traverse a longer section of the better sand hills country west of the Kaituna River and to follow property boundaries more closely. In addition, Option A3 cuts through part of the Kaituna Reserve, the part in rural production, in order to try and minimise the impact on, and disruption to, the nearby farms.
As with the original options, an assessment of the new options is being carried out. The community's response will be considered alongside the many other factors outlined in the last newsletter to determine which of the alignments should be recommended for the preferred route.

THE THREE NEW OPTIONS



CROWN COPYRIGHT RESERVED. LEGAL BOUNDARY INFORMATION REPRINTED WITH PERMISSION OF TAURANGA DISTRICT COUNCIL LICENCE No. HM033520 & WESTERN BAY OF PLENTY DISTRICT COUNCIL LICENCE No. HN35220003

STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

You will be aware that over the past 18 months Transit New Zealand's consultant, Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd (BCHF), has been studying options for the proposed Tauranga Eastern Arterial. I am pleased to announce that the favoured alignment for the Eastern Arterial is the A3 Option shown on the plan above. The Transit New Zealand Authority has resolved to proceed with the designation process to secure this land for the future roading corridor.

The next stage in the project is to carry out a more detailed assessment of environmental effects (AEE) on A3 (with some modifications). This AEE will form part of the requirement notices to Tauranga and Western Bay of Plenty District Councils to designate the route for the purposes of a State highway. The consultant will be carrying out consultation with affected landowners as part of this on going process.

Once the requirement notice has been made to the Councils there will be an opportunity for you to make formal submissions on the proposal. Until then though, the consultant is happy to hear from anyone who has concerns or queries.

Yours faithfully

Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
June 1998

BACKGROUND

Six options have been considered by the project team. As part of the option selection process a study team was involved in assessing each option. The study team involved consultants specialising in noise, landscape, archaeology, ecology, social, cultural, property valuation and economics in addition to engineers. From the assessments provided by each of the team members and the community input, the preferred alignment was recommended.

Economically, the A options proved better than Options B or C. Option A3 was preferred over the other A options on archaeological, social, noise and economic grounds. It has therefore been decided to progress Option A3 through to the next stage. The A3 option that will be progressed will be a version that avoids a Pa site near the Kaituna River and the Kahikatea stand on the Kaituna Reserve. The alignment will also ensure a habitat buffer of ecological areas of the reserve, the enhancement of the reserve drainage, maximisation of the use of the sandhill country, minimisation of the impact on dairy farm management and preservation of the flood protection scheme.

THE NEXT STAGE

The next phase of the project is to complete an AEE for Option A3. This AEE will be completed over the next few months so that the notice of requirement for the designation can be lodged with the Councils prior to Christmas. The AEE process will require some detailed design to be carried out including some design on the junctions at either end of the road. The design of these junctions will be available at the open days and will mean that those landowners who have been affected in a general way in these areas will get more detailed information regarding the degree of impact.

CONSULTATION

Consultation during the next phase, which is the assessment of environmental effects of the favoured option, will occur through:

- Individual meetings with landowners directly affected
- Open days
- Public submissions
- Personal advice to directly affected property owners
- Community/Cottage meetings on request
- Hapu meetings
- Meetings and responses of the Community Advisory Group.

OPEN DAYS

Open days will be held at:

Papamoā Sports Centre	13 July	4-8pm
Paengaroa Hall	14 July	4-8pm

If you cannot attend these open days, the consultant will meet with you at a mutually agreeable time.

SUBMISSIONS

Submissions concerning the preferred option will be received until 7 August 1998. Please send them to the address below stating your name and address.

FURTHER INFORMATION

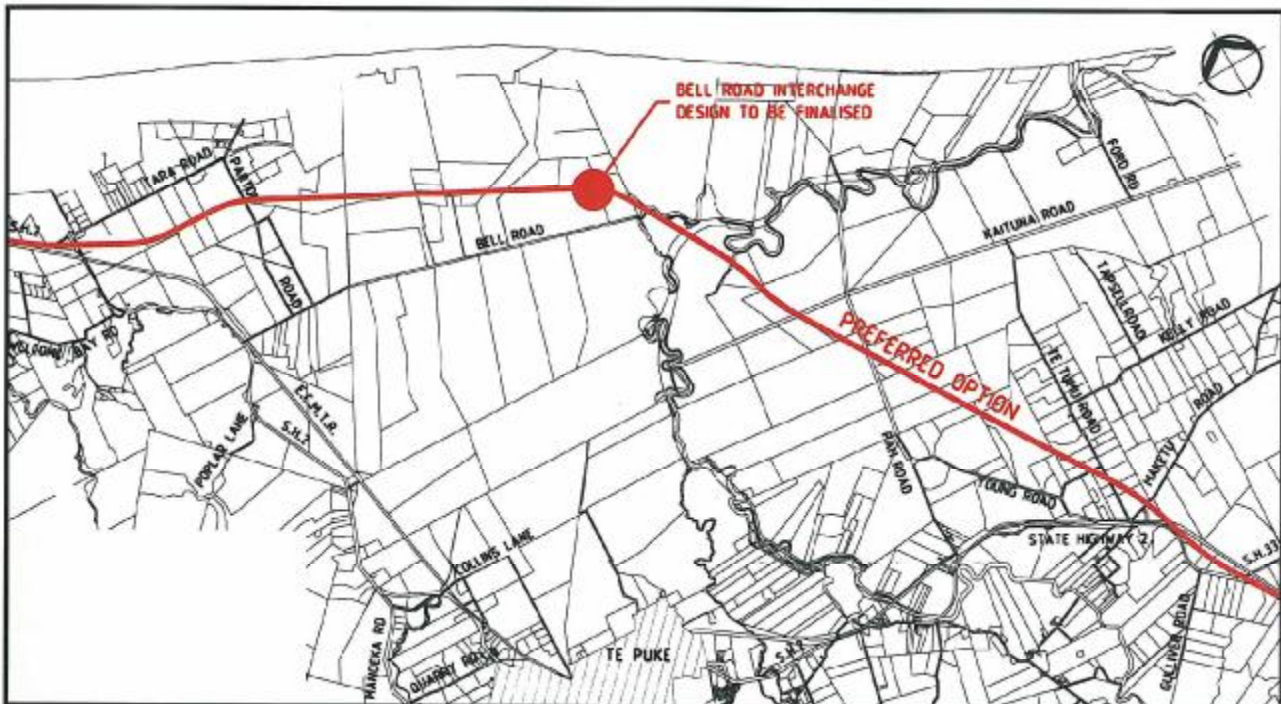
The consultant, Becca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd, has an office in Tauranga in Harrington House. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone them at any time. The contacts are:

Amanda Rowe, Christine Ralph and Don Young
Phone: 07 578 0896 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2968
Email: arowe@beca.co.nz

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is:

Colin Crampton. He can be contacted on telephone number: 07 838 8220

Community Newsletter No. 7



DRAWN COPYRIGHT RESERVED. LEGAL BOUNDARY INFORMATION REPRINTED WITH PERMISSION OF TAURANGA DISTRICT COUNCIL. LICENSE NO. 101/93323 & WESTERN BAY OF PLENTY DISTRICT COUNCIL. LICENSE NO. 101/932091

STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

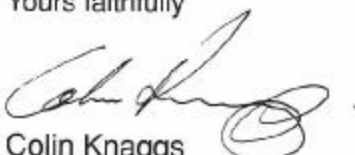
Since our last newsletter in June, our consultant, Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd (BCHF), has been carrying out consultation with directly affected landowners and preparing the Assessment of Environmental Effects (AEE) for the Designation.

It was hoped that the Designation Requirement Notice would have been lodged with the Tauranga and Western Bay of Plenty District Councils prior to Christmas. However, two developments have resulted in a delay. Tauranga District Council has decided to proceed with plans to designate land for another interchange in the location of Bell Road (see above plan). The purpose of this is to give access to the future urban growth area at Papamoia East. The design for this interchange, the necessary consultation and further AEE analysis will be carried out by BCHF. The Designation Requirement Notice will be lodged at the same time as the Designation for the Eastern Arterial.


In addition, during archaeological investigations for the AEE, the location of a Pa site underneath the proposed alignment, near the Kaituna River, has been confirmed. Due to the Pa site's importance, the route has been realigned to avoid it. The realignment is minor, affecting the route from the end of Bell Road to the Kaituna Reserve.

We are very appreciative of the community's willingness to respond to this project over the past months and your agreement to let our consultant's teams onto your properties. Despite the small delays described above the project is proceeding smoothly and is well on the way to being lodged, around April next year.

Yours faithfully



Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
December 1998



Paula Thompson
Tauranga District Council
December 1998

BELL ROAD INTERCHANGE

The Tauranga District Council's Strategic Plan, "Strategic Directions", envisages a substantial area of urban development north of the proposed Eastern Arterial, between the alignment and the coast, in the long term. In order to better serve this area, Tauranga District Council has decided to designate land for an interchange in the vicinity of Bell Road.

Proceeding with the designation of the land for this interchange at the same time as the designation for the Eastern Arterial gives future certainty, both for landowners and for the District Council, in the future planning of the area.

It is not intended to define the linkages between the interchange and Bell Road or any roads in Papamoa at this stage as these will be subject to future structure planning and subdivision arrangements. The interchange will be a typical diamond interchange involving overbridges.

PA SITE

Whilst carrying out investigations for the Eastern Arterial a Pa site was confirmed which, although previously recorded in the general area, has not in the past been accurately located. The investigations to date indicate that the Pa site was affected by the proposed alignment.

FURTHER INFORMATION

The consultant, Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd, has an office in Tauranga in Harrington House. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone them at any time. The contacts are:

Amanda Rowe, Christine Ralph and Don Young
Phone: 07 578 0896 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2968 Email: arowe@beca.co.nz

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is:
Collin Crampton. He can be contacted on telephone number: 07 838 8220

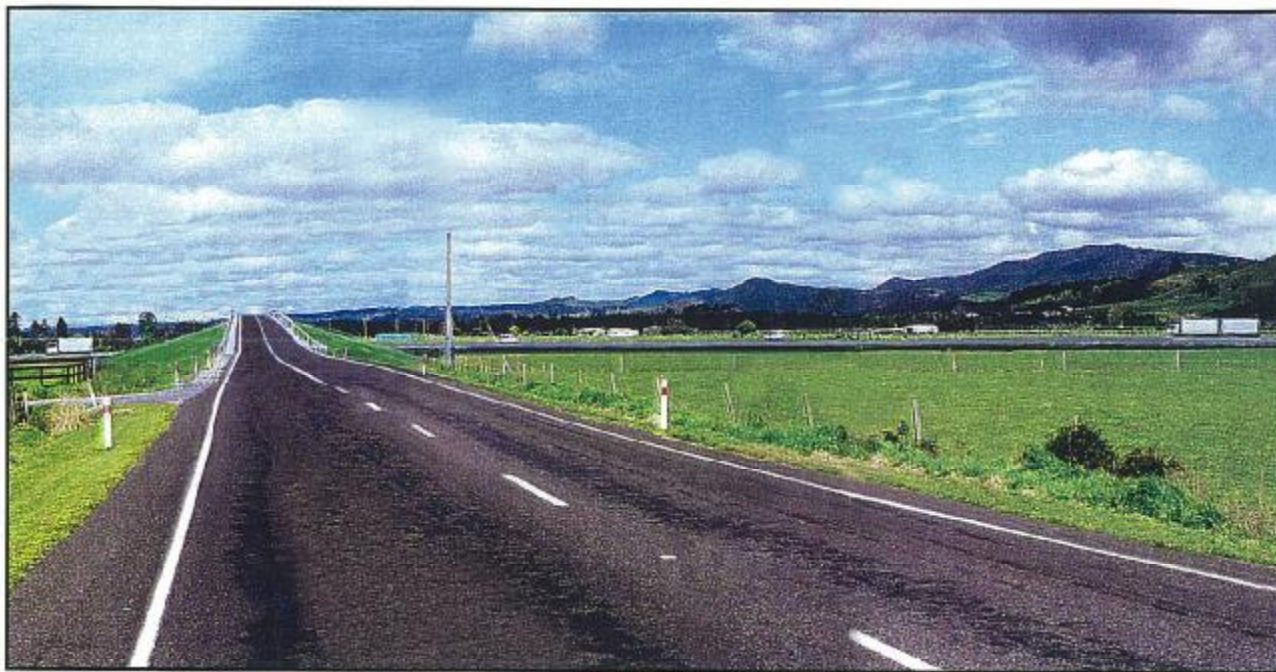
THE NEXT STAGE

The NZ Historic Places Act requires consent to be given prior to any modification, disturbance or destruction of archaeological sites. Because of the significance of the Pa, as advised through consultation with Waitaha representatives, it was agreed that the route should be realigned to avoid any adverse effects to the Pa. The alignment has been moved slightly further north at the end of Bell Road.

To retain an alignment that meets Transit's safety standards for highways the alignment to the east, between the Katuna River and the Katuna Reserve, has been moved slightly southwest as shown on the plan overlaid.

The consultants are currently completing the AEE on the proposed alignment with the above outlined modifications. Further consultation will be carried out with landowners directly affected by the changes.

Following completion of the additional work resulting from the above changes, BCHF will be lodging the Notice of Requirement on behalf of Transit around April 1999. The Designation will then be notified and you will get the chance to make submissions. In the meantime, please do not hesitate to contact the consultant at the telephone numbers and addresses given below.



View of Proposed Arterial and Parton Road Overbridge (Before Mitigation Planting)

STATE HIGHWAY 2 EASTERN ARTERIAL ROADING PROJECT

Our apologies for the time that has lapsed since the last newsletter. You may recall our last newsletter (December 1998) when we reported two outstanding issues preventing lodgment prior to Christmas 1998.

These matters have now been resolved and we are going to lodge the designation shortly. We are hopeful that a Hearing will be held in the latter part of this year, although it may not be until the New Year. The timing of the process is determined by the Tauranga and Western BOP District Councils.

Four Notices of Requirement for designation will be lodged with the respective Councils – one for the Eastern Arterial by Transit New Zealand and one for the Bell Road interchange by Tauranga District Council. The third and fourth notices relate to the Sandhurst Interchange (located between Truman Lane and Mangatawa Lane) which involves separate designations on behalf of Tauranga District Council and Transit New Zealand.

This newsletter includes a summary of the mitigation measures recommended in the draft Assessment of Environmental Effects. We have provided information on the social/recreational, ecological, visual, archeological and noise measures as they seemed to be of the most interest to people. More detailed information is recorded in the Assessment of Environmental Effects which will be available once the designations are lodged.

Yours faithfully

Colin Knaggs
Transit New Zealand
August 1999

ASSESSMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

The following is an outline of the mitigation measures recommended by the consultant team and agreed to by Transit New Zealand, and Tauranga District Council where it relates to the Bell Road interchange.

ECOLOGICAL

The alignment will be close to habitats of high and moderate value and the following measures are suggested to reduce potential effects:

- The Kaituna river crossing should be constructed from stopbank to stopbank to avoid disruption to river edge habitat;
- Wetland/swale treatment areas should be developed parallel to the highway to receive roadway stormwater before discharging into streams. Locally sourced plants should be used;
- Produce a Silt and Sedimentation Control Plan prior to construction commencing;
- Roadway derived stormwater from the highway at the reserve area will be isolated and directed to discharge into the Kaituna drainage scheme rather than the wetlands reserve.

VISUAL/LANDSCAPE

A planting plan has been prepared to mitigate any potential visual effects, particularly at main intersections and at the Kaituna River bridge.

ARCHAEOLOGICAL

- Transit NZ will seek to agree a protocol with all hapu that confirms the procedures to protect or manage archaeological sites under the NZ Historic Places Act during construction and to protect any artifacts that might be found.
- The exact position of several sites is unknown and consequently monitoring of earthworks in several locations is recommended. It is anticipated that a hapu representative would be present when topsoil is removed.

FURTHER INFORMATION

The consultant, Becca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd, has an office in Tauranga in Harrington House. You can meet, by prior appointment, the staff listed below or you can telephone them at any time. The contacts are:

Christine Ralph, Nick Regnault, Don Young and John Hannah
Phone: 07 578 0896 Postal Address: PO Box 903, Tauranga
Fax: 07 578 2968
Email: nregnault@beca.co.nz

The Transit New Zealand Project Manager is:

Colin Crampton. He can be contacted on telephone number: 07 838 8220

NOISE

The mitigation measures that are recommended to maintain noise levels within Transit guidelines include:

- use of noise attenuation barriers and bunds to screen houses and the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve from traffic noise, and the use of noise-reducing road surfaces.
- An even lower noise level is being recommended for the area near the reserve. Monitoring will be undertaken at the Reserve at six-monthly intervals. Should noise levels exceed 50dBA then additional noise mitigation works will be implemented to reduce the level by 4 dBA.

SOCIAL

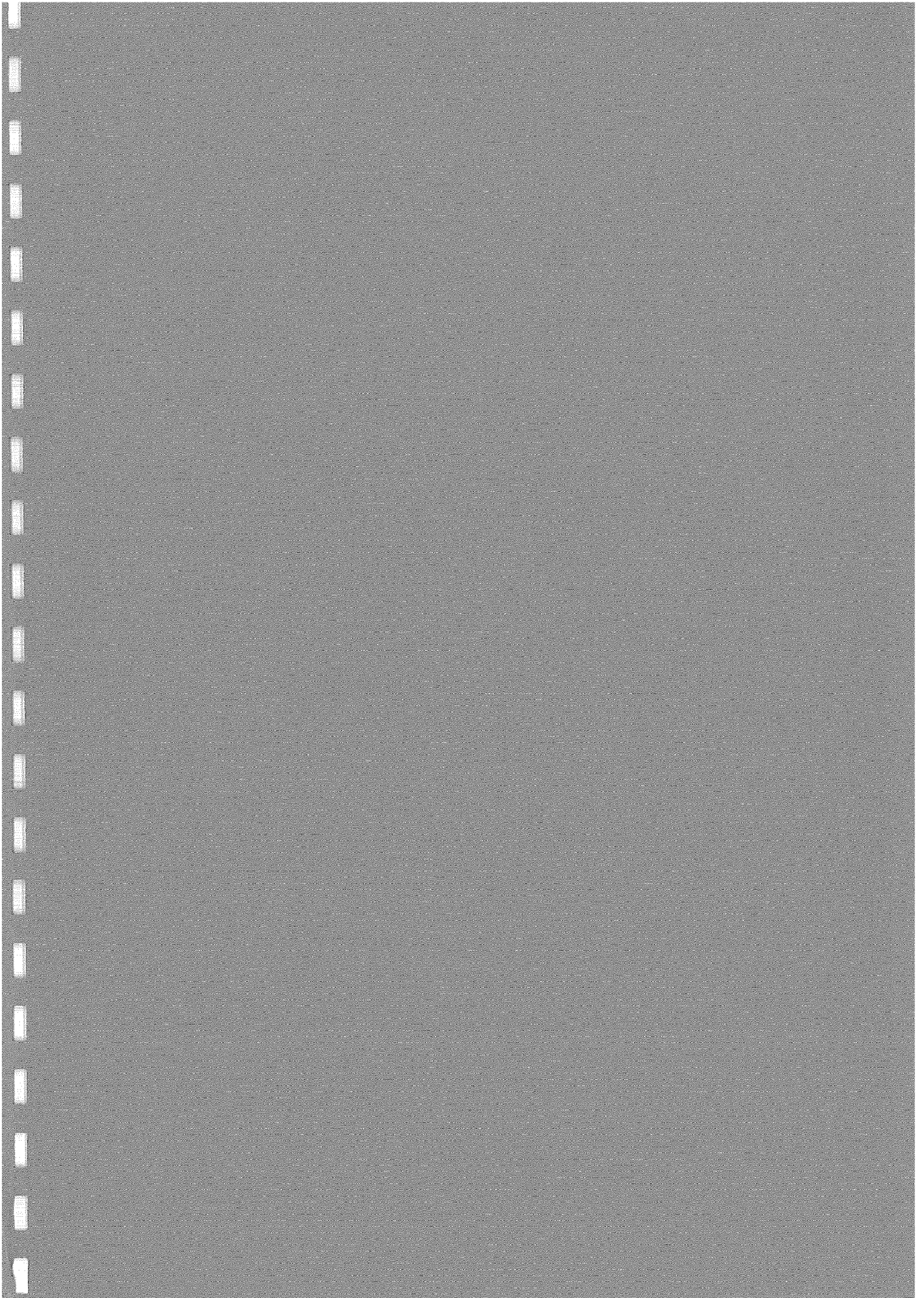
Transit NZ will:

- Contribute to the Kaituna Drainage Scheme's capital and maintenance costs administered by Environment BOP;
- Provide project information to the Councils for distribution to the community on an ongoing basis and to directly affected landowners as required.
- Meet the construction costs of an alternative access to the Reserve from the end of Te Tumu Road, (along the unformed portion of Kaituna Road), because the current access from Pah Road will no longer be available.
- Produce a Dust Mitigation plan as part of the earthworks consents, to ensure that dust is not a problem during construction.
- Provide directional signs to Te Puke at each end of the arterial.

RECREATION

- To mitigate the loss of approximately 8.66ha of reserve land, Transit NZ will:
- Provide approximately 10.7ha of land adjacent to the reserve to be vested as a Government Purpose Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve.
- The stormwater retention pond at the reserve required during construction may be retained if the Department of Conservation and Eastern Fish and Game Council consider it appropriate to the long-term use of the reserve.

APPENDIX 4
Ecological Characteristics and Appraisal of Effects

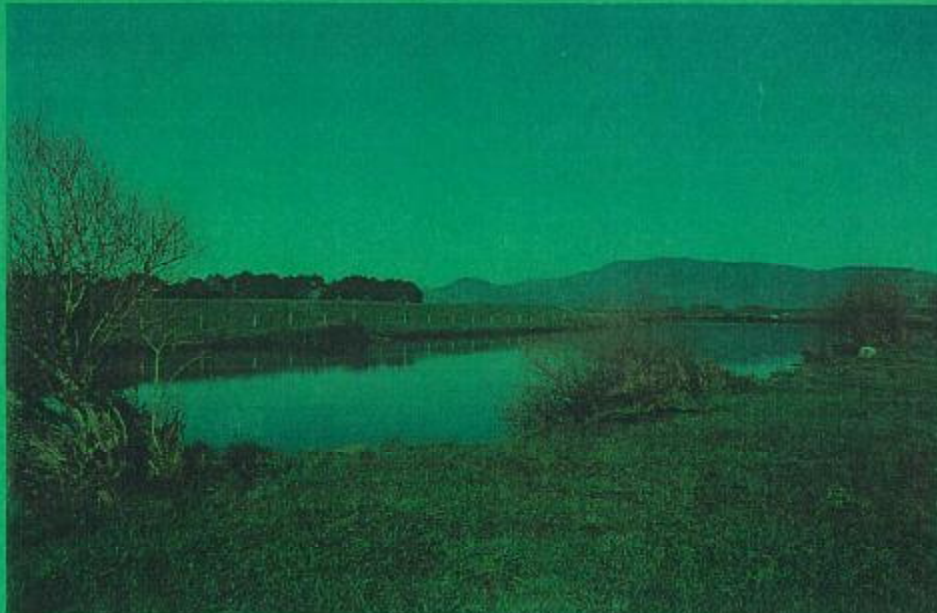


TRANSIT NEW ZEALAND, HAMILTON

TE PUKE EASTERN ARTERIAL

ECOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS

AND APPRAISAL OF EFFECTS



BIORESEARCHES

Consulting Biologists and Archaeologists, P O Box 2828, Auckland 1, New Zealand

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

Transit New Zealand, Hamilton

Te Puke Eastern Arterial

Ecological Characteristics

and Appraisal of Effects

AUGUST 1999

FOR : BECA CARTER HOLLINGS & FERNER LTD (TAURANGA)
BY : BIORESEARCHES
K V Bennett B.Sc; Dip. Wild. Mgt
G L Don M.Sc Hons
R O Gardner Ph.D
E StG Sides M.Sc Hons

BIORESEARCHES

CONTENTS

	Page No.
1. INTRODUCTION	1
2. ECOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS	13
2.1. Vegetation and Flora	13
2.1.1. Introduction	13
2.1.2. Vegetation History	13
2.1.3. Vegetation and Flora	23
2.1.4. Conclusions	27
2.2. Wildlife	27
2.2.1. Introduction	27
2.2.2. Avifauna	28
2.2.2.1 Alignment Area	28
2.2.2.2 Notable Species	35
2.2.2.3 Sand Ridge Habitat	36
2.2.2.4 Constructed Pond Habitats	38
2.2.3. Reptiles and Amphibians	41
2.2.4. Other Wildlife	41
2.2.5. Conclusions	41
2.3. Freshwater Habitats	42
2.3.1. Water, Elutriate and Sediment Quality	42
2.3.1.1 Introduction	42
2.3.1.2 Methods of Analysis	44
2.3.1.3 Results and Discussion	46
2.3.1.4 Conclusions	51
2.3.2. Aquatic Biota	53
2.3.2.1 Introduction	53
2.3.2.2 Methods	53
2.3.2.3 Results	53
2.3.2.4 Previous Fish Surveys	60
2.3.2.5 Conclusions	62
3. IMPACTS OF PROPOSED DEVELOPMENTS	64
4. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS	80
4.1. Conclusions	80
4.2. Recommendations	81
5. REFERENCES	83

CONTENTS

	Page No.
6. APPENDICES	90
Appendix 6.1 Tauranga Ecological District Summary	91
Appendix 6.2 Wetland Habitat Summary	92
Appendix 6.3 Regional Coastal Environment Plan Summary	93
Appendix 6.4 Kaituna River Wetland Summary	94
Appendix 6.5 Wildlife Habitat Summary	95
Appendix 6.6 Kaituna River Whitebait Spawning Sites	96
Appendix 6.7 Fisheries Record Forms	97
Appendix 6.8 Benthic Macroinvertebrate Results	98
Appendix 6.9 Botanical Report - 1983	99
Appendix 6.10 Whangamarino Wetland Bird Habitats	100
7. PLATES	101

1. INTRODUCTION

This report presents the results of field investigations of the final preferred Option (Option A3) for the Te Puke Eastern Arterial which would bypass Te Puke township on its northern side (Figure 1).

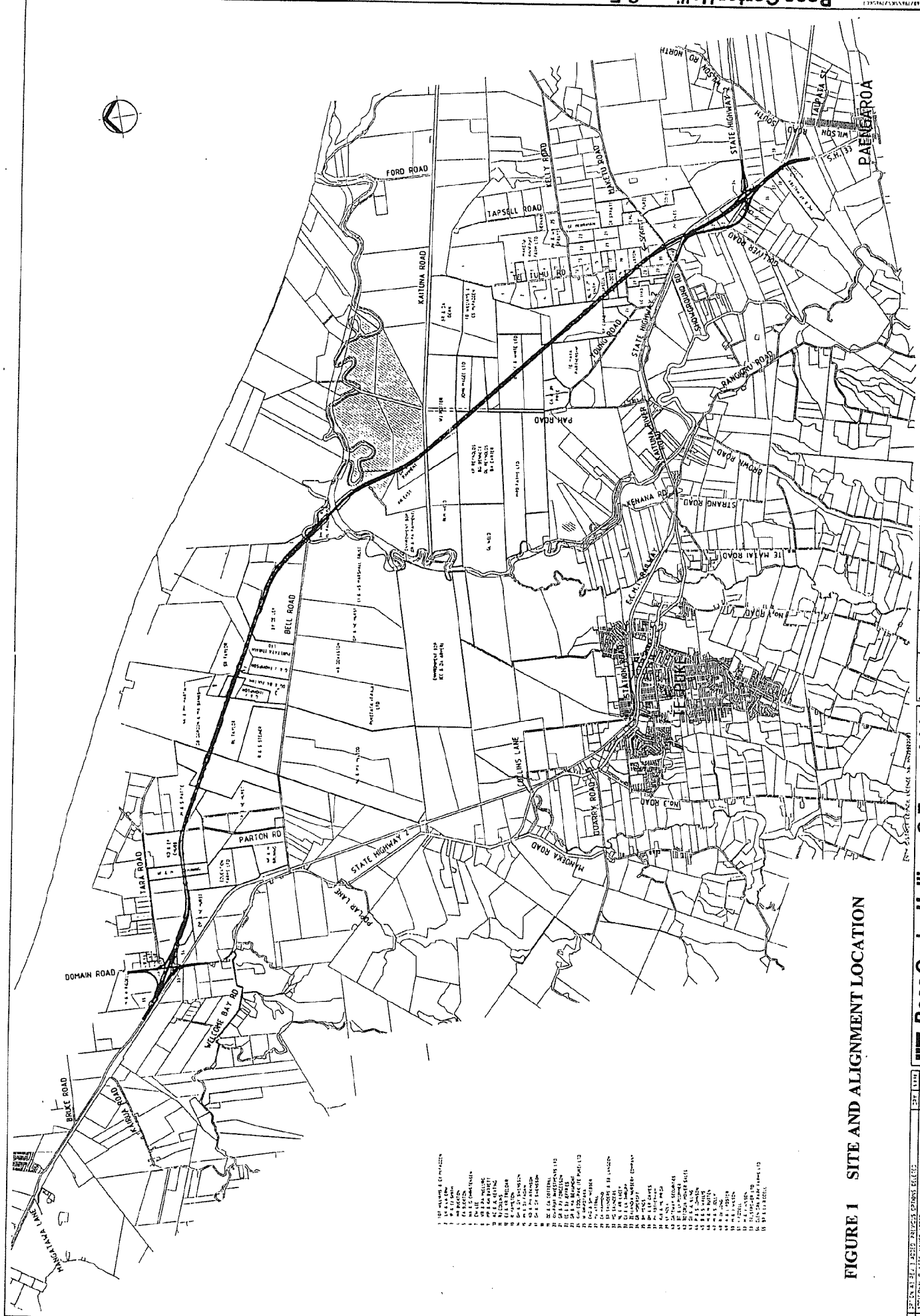
That Option was selected from several alternatives via a desk-top evaluation which considered a range of factors (eg. land ownership, geotechnics, economics, noise, landscape etc) including ecological aspects. The final evaluation ranked Option A3 as the least preferred on an ecological basis in isolation, but was the most preferred when all the other factors were integrated.

Subsequent to the original proposal for Option A3, the proposed roadway alignment was moved to avoid all the areas of remnant kahikatea vegetation to the north of Kaituna Road, which are situated in an otherwise grazed area of the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve (Figure 2). As a result of this modification the Option A3 alignment would traverse land which is comprised predominantly of grazed pasture.

Option A3 would also cross a waterway draining into the Bell Rd oxbow of the Kaituna River, the Bell Rd oxbow itself to the northeast of the Niccol property entrance, the Kaituna River to the southwest of the present launching ramp and carpark, the Waimarae Stream which flows into the western section of the Kaituna wetland and several large constructed drains.

This report focuses on the ecological aspects of the proposed alignment. It does not consider aspects such as recreational or amenity values, such as the use of some areas for waterfowl and “upland” game hunting.

A total of six sites were sampled for aquatic biota and five for water, sediment and elutriate quality. Specific surveys to document the vegetation and wildlife features were also completed. An additional part of the brief for this survey was to provide comment on some areas of the Kaituna wetland habitat. The brief did not include a full baseline field survey of the entire Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve.



- 1. 101. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/22/23
- 2. 102. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/23/24
- 3. 103. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/24/25
- 4. 104. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/25/26
- 5. 105. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/26/27
- 6. 106. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/27/28
- 7. 107. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/28/29
- 8. 108. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/29/30
- 9. 109. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/30/31
- 10. 110. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/31/32
- 11. 111. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/32/33
- 12. 112. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/33/34
- 13. 113. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/34/35
- 14. 114. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/35/36
- 15. 115. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/36/37
- 16. 116. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/37/38
- 17. 117. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/38/39
- 18. 118. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/39/40
- 19. 119. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/40/41
- 20. 120. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/41/42
- 21. 121. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/42/43
- 22. 122. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/43/44
- 23. 123. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/44/45
- 24. 124. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/45/46
- 25. 125. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/46/47
- 26. 126. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/47/48
- 27. 127. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/48/49
- 28. 128. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/49/50
- 29. 129. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/50/51
- 30. 130. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/51/52
- 31. 131. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/52/53
- 32. 132. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/53/54
- 33. 133. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/54/55
- 34. 134. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/55/56
- 35. 135. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/56/57
- 36. 136. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/57/58
- 37. 137. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/58/59
- 38. 138. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/59/60
- 39. 139. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/60/61
- 40. 140. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/61/62
- 41. 141. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/62/63
- 42. 142. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/63/64
- 43. 143. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/64/65
- 44. 144. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/65/66
- 45. 145. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/66/67
- 46. 146. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/67/68
- 47. 147. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/68/69
- 48. 148. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/69/70
- 49. 149. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/70/71
- 50. 150. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/71/72
- 51. 151. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/72/73
- 52. 152. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/73/74
- 53. 153. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/74/75
- 54. 154. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/75/76
- 55. 155. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/76/77
- 56. 156. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/77/78
- 57. 157. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/78/79
- 58. 158. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/79/80
- 59. 159. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/80/81
- 60. 160. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/81/82
- 61. 161. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/82/83
- 62. 162. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/83/84
- 63. 163. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/84/85
- 64. 164. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/85/86
- 65. 165. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/86/87
- 66. 166. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/87/88
- 67. 167. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/88/89
- 68. 168. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/89/90
- 69. 169. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/90/91
- 70. 170. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/91/92
- 71. 171. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/92/93
- 72. 172. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/93/94
- 73. 173. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/94/95
- 74. 174. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/95/96
- 75. 175. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/96/97
- 76. 176. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/97/98
- 77. 177. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/98/99
- 78. 178. HULLMAN & CO. 1912/99/100

FIGURE 1 SITE AND ALIGNMENT LOCATION

237	11111
238	11112
239	11113
240	11114
241	11115
242	11116
243	11117
244	11118
245	11119
246	11120
247	11121
248	11122
249	11123
250	11124
251	11125
252	11126
253	11127
254	11128
255	11129
256	11130
257	11131
258	11132
259	11133
260	11134
261	11135
262	11136
263	11137
264	11138
265	11139
266	11140
267	11141
268	11142
269	11143
270	11144
271	11145
272	11146
273	11147
274	11148
275	11149
276	11150
277	11151
278	11152
279	11153
280	11154
281	11155
282	11156
283	11157
284	11158
285	11159
286	11160
287	11161
288	11162
289	11163
290	11164
291	11165
292	11166
293	11167
294	11168
295	11169
296	11170
297	11171
298	11172
299	11173
300	11174
301	11175
302	11176
303	11177
304	11178
305	11179
306	11180
307	11181
308	11182
309	11183
310	11184
311	11185
312	11186
313	11187
314	11188
315	11189
316	11190
317	11191
318	11192
319	11193
320	11194
321	11195
322	11196
323	11197
324	11198
325	11199
326	11200
327	11201
328	11202
329	11203
330	11204
331	11205
332	11206
333	11207
334	11208
335	11209
336	11210
337	11211
338	11212
339	11213
340	11214
341	11215
342	11216
343	11217
344	11218
345	11219
346	11220
347	11221
348	11222
349	11223
350	11224
351	11225
352	11226
353	11227
354	11228
355	11229
356	11230
357	11231
358	11232
359	11233
360	11234
361	11235
362	11236
363	11237
364	11238
365	11239
366	11240
367	11241
368	11242
369	11243
370	11244
371	11245
372	11246
373	11247
374	11248
375	11249
376	11250
377	11251
378	11252
379	11253
380	11254
381	11255
382	11256
383	11257
384	11258
385	11259
386	11260
387	11261
388	11262
389	11263
390	11264
391	11265
392	11266
393	11267
394	11268
395	11269
396	11270
397	11271
398	11272
399	11273
400	11274
401	11275
402	11276
403	11277
404	11278
405	11279
406	11280
407	11281
408	11282
409	11283
410	11284
411	11285
412	11286
413	11287
414	11288
415	11289
416	11290
417	11291
418	11292
419	11293
420	11294
421	11295
422	11296
423	11297
424	11298
425	11299
426	11300
427	11301
428	11302
429	11303
430	11304
431	11305
432	11306
433	11307
434	11308
435	11309
436	11310
437	11311
438	11312
439	11313
440	11314
441	11315
442	11316
443	11317
444	11318
445	11319
446	11320
447	11321
448	11322
449	11323
450	11324
451	11325
452	11326
453	11327
454	11328
455	11329
456	11330
457	11331
458	11332
459	11333
460	11334
461	11335
462	11336
463	11337
464	11338
465	11339
466	11340
467	11341
468	11342
469	11343
470	11344
471	11345
472	11346
473	11347
474	11348
475	11349
476	11350
477	11351
478	11352
479	11353
480	11354
481	11355
482	11356
483	11357
484	11358
485	11359
486	11360
487	11361
488	11362
489	11363
490	11364
491	11365
492	11366
493	11367
494	11368
495	11369
496	11370
497	11371
498	11372
499	11373
500	11374

Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Ltd.
 Authorised Wellington Practising Engineer
 No. 1010
 18/01/2011

TRANSIT
 Tauranga Eastern District
 18/01/2011

TRANSIT
 Tauranga Eastern District
 18/01/2011

TRANSIT
 Tauranga Eastern District
 18/01/2011

TRANSIT
 Tauranga Eastern District
 18/01/2011

TRANSIT
 Tauranga Eastern District
 18/01/2011

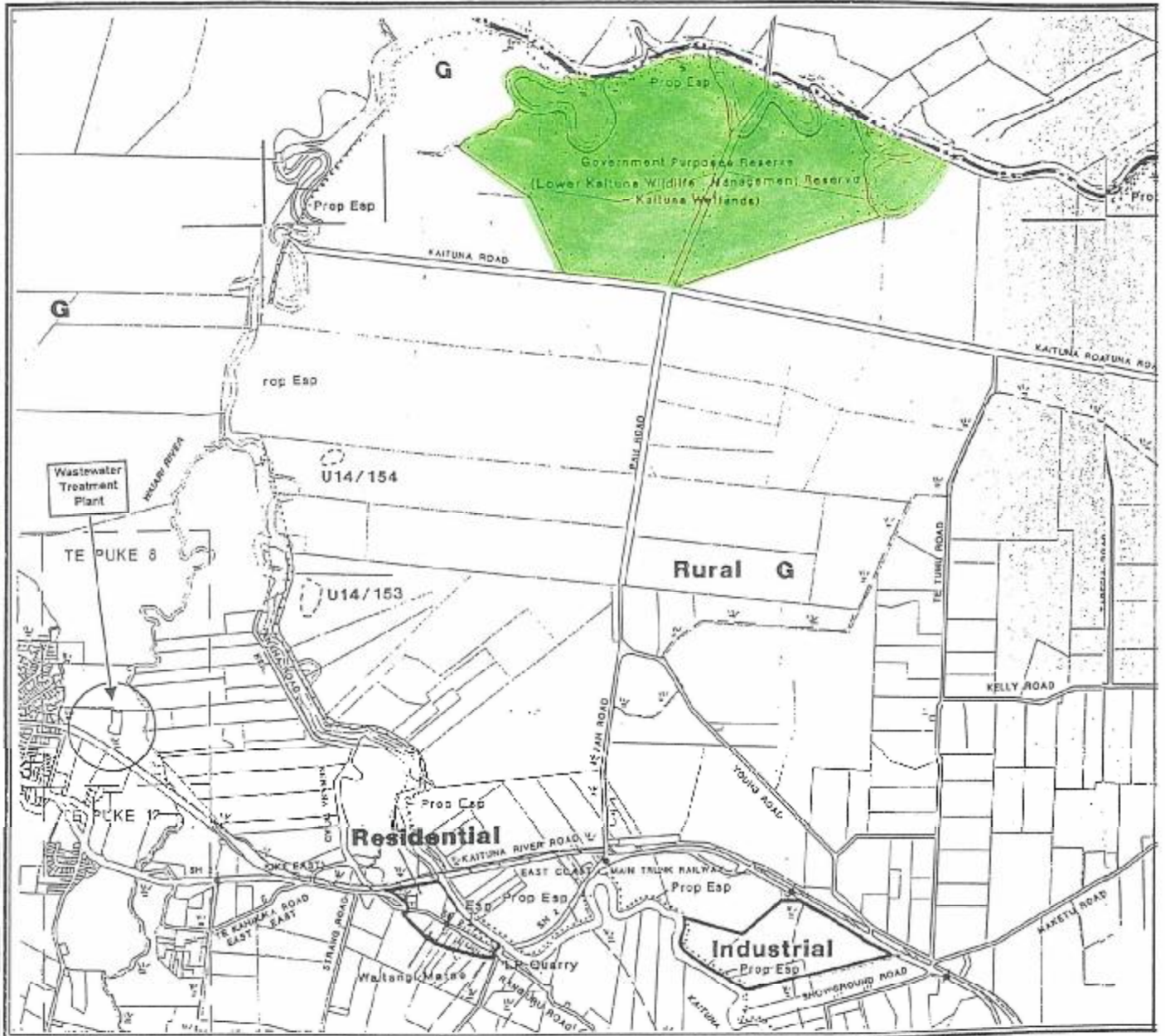


FIGURE 2 LOWER KAITUNA WILDLIFE MANAGEMENT RESERVE

Irving, 1991 following the preliminary botanical survey of Miller, 1983 considered that the whole Lower Kaituna Management Reserve (“*apart from pasture and rough pasture areas*”) should be ranked as being of high botanical value (i.e. it is the last or one of the last few remaining areas of a vegetation type within an Ecological District in a modified condition but retaining the main elements of composition and structure).

Both Irving, 1991 and Beadel, 1994 use rankings for botanical conservation developed by Shaw 1988, 1994. Those rankings in descending order of significance are exceptional (= national importance), very high (= regional importance), high (= district importance) and moderate (= local importance). This scale is comparable with the N.Z. Wildlife Service (now D.O.C.) ranking system for indigenous fauna. International botanical sites are those containing ecological processes, vegetation types or taxa that have significance beyond New Zealand because of (a) features so special that they have an international profile and (b) they are of importance for international research (e.g. comparable with similar features in other countries).

Note that the “footprint” of the proposed alignment does not intrude into the area of the Reserve defined as having a high botanical rating by Irving, 1991.

The Eastern Arterial roadway would lie in the Tauranga Ecological District, a summary of which is presented in Appendix 6.1. (McEwen, 1987).

The Department of Conservation (D.O.C), 1996 describes the “Maketu-Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna River Mouth Complex” as a significant wetland habitat complex in an international context. That area of c.863 ha comprises the Waihi Estuary, Maketu Estuary and the adjacent Kaituna River mouth. The description in D.O.C, 1996 does not, however, include specific reference to the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve which is adjacent to the proposed alignment (refer Appendix 6.2).

The Proposed Regional Coastal Environment Plan (Environment B.O.P, 1995) also lists the “Maketu/Waihi Estuaries and Okurei Point” as being an Area of Significant Conservation Value (ASCV) but the wetland area adjacent to the proposed alignment is excluded on the basis of its

being beyond the coastal zone. The landward boundary of the Coastal Zone is defined as whichever is the lesser of -

- (i) *“1 km upstream from the mouth of the river; or*
- (ii) *the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5.”*

The E.B.O.P, 1995 Summary is shown in Appendix 6.3.

The proposed Bay of Plenty Regional Land Management Plan lists the “Kaituna River and Wetland/Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve” as being a significant wetland habitat. The listed habitats essentially follow Rasch, 1989.

Beadel, 1994 considered the botanical values of Kaituna River freshwater wetland, which is included in the “Maketu/Waihi Estuaries and Okurei Point” ASCV, to be of importance in the context of the District; it was not considered to be of Regional or National Significance. Maketu Spit and Waihi Estuary were also considered to contain vegetation of significance within the District (Appendix 6.4).

Nearby areas of coastal vegetation of higher significance were the Kaituna sand dunes (National significance) and the Te Arawa freshwater (Maketu-Waihi) wetland which is of Regional significance (Appendix 6.2).

Beadel, 1994 notes, however, that the “Kaituna River” vegetation is contiguous with a larger area (i.e. that closer to the proposed alignment) which is outside the coastal zone.

Rasch, 1989 (based on 1982-84 field surveys) rated the “Kaituna River and Wetland/Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve” (i.e. 22 km of river and 50 ha of wetland) as being of “High” wildlife value. The 50 ha area of wetland at the “Matakana Island Wildlife Refuge” was considered to be of “Outstanding” wildlife value (Appendix 6.5).

The total area of the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve is c.229 ha. Of that area c.56 ha are presently leased as grazing land by the Department of Conservation.

The comment in Rasch, 1989 regarding a 50 ha area of wetland having a “High” wildlife value appears to underestimate the area of notable habitat within the Reserve relative to similar remaining areas in the District.

Garrick, 1990 summarised the natural features of the Reserve based on a description of the area prepared in 1980. Between 1980 and 1990 there had been no formal surveys undertaken within the Reserve although the area had been briefly inspected by a botanist in 1983. Garrick, 1990 concluded that *“on the basis of size alone then, the Kaituna reserve is of considerable local and regional significance in terms of its existing and potential values as wildlife habitat. In terms of representativeness, that is, as an example of a freshwater wetland type which formerly characterised the area, the reserve is of lesser significance than some of the other wetlands which occur within the region due to the many unnatural and modifying influences which have acted on it and the future management undertakings which will be required to maintain it as a wetland. Nevertheless the area is still of some importance in this regard as an example of a ‘landform’ or ecosystem which has been severely reduced in extent elsewhere.”*

At present the Management Reserve area is jointly managed by the Department of Conservation in regard to high flora and fauna values of the northern portion in particular, and the Eastern Fish and Game Council, which has excavated areas of the wetland and planted native vegetation to create waterfowl habitat. That area, predominantly in the southeastern section, as well as other areas, is utilised for gamebird hunting, including both waterfowl and “upland” gamebirds.

The Department of Conservation’s Management Strategy lists the following regarding the Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve:-

Issue

“4 *Joint management of the Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve is between two different agencies (the Department and Eastern Region Fish and Game Council) result in differing objectives for management of the Reserve.*”

Management

“4 *Raise and maintain water levels (about 1 m above Moturiki datum) in the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve in conjunction with the Environment BOP.*

5 *Divide the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve into :*

- *areas essential for protecting representative ecosystems; and*
- *areas which could be used for gamebird and waterfowl hunting.*

The latter areas would be managed by Eastern Region Fish and Game Council, through appointment to control and manage under the Reserves Act 1977.

Priority activity for Tauranga Management Area

- *Manage the freshwater wetlands on Matakana Island and Kaituna to ensure their long term viability.”*

The Kaituna River provides habitat and a migratory pathway for a diversity of native fish (refer Section 2.3.2.4.) but was not considered to be a wetland area of national importance to fisheries (Davis, 1987). Maketu Estuary was considered to be of “significant” but not “outstanding” fisheries value; “*This estuary is important to the Maori people as a traditional fishing area, although it has been modified substantially by the local catchment board.*” (Davis, 1987).

Mitchell, 1990 identified whitebait spawning sites in the lower Kaituna River. Those sites are shown in Appendix 6.6 and are within the area identified by Beadel, 1994 as containing significant vegetation in the context of the District. That area is well beyond the proposed roadway alignment.

A whitebait survey of the Kaituna River was conducted by Fisheries Research Division (Saxton *et al*, 1987) in 1983 (August to November) which found that of 7973 whitebait analysed, 88.2% were inanga (*Galaxias maculatus*), 8.5% were banded kokopu (*G. fasciatus*) while 3.0% were koaro (*G. brevipinnis*). Of the total sample 0.3% were unidentified *Galaxias* species including giant kokopu (*Galaxias argenteus*) which was described as relatively insignificant in terms of the numbers present.

In general the Kaituna River was classified as an inanga-dominated whitebait river. On the basis of both mean and peak counts for the five main whitebaiting waterways in the Bay of Plenty (Rangitaiki, Waioeka, Whakatane, Kaituna Rivers and Pongakawa Stream) the Kaituna River was rated as the fourth in order of importance as listed respectively above.

Therefore the most significant habitat **traversed** by the Option A3 alignment would be the Kaituna River mainstem upstream from the existing boat ramp and carpark.

The most significant **nearby** habitat is the non-pasture area of the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve.

The ungrazed area of the Reserve, which consists of c.130 ha of wetland habitat and c.43 ha of scrub/sand ridge habitat, represents about 74% of the remaining, but once extensive, Kawa Swamp (refer Figure 4A), i.e. it is the only large remnant of the swamp remaining. In the context of the eastern Tauranga Ecological District it is the largest area of heavily vegetated wetland habitat, and on an areal basis is similar to the lower and middle reaches of the Kaituna River (Table 1A).

The Reserve was not, however, included in D.O.C. 1996 which summarises wetland habitats of

international significance, or in E.B.O.P. 1995 which outlines areas of regional significance. Within the context of the Bay of Plenty Conservancy area the Reserve represents less than 1% of the total area of wetland habitat. The reason for the Reserve's exclusion from the "Maketu - Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna Mouth Complex" wetland was that it was too dry (i.e. did not contain sufficient or sufficiently high wetland values) at the time of the comparative assessments (D.O.C. pers. comm.). The recent installation of a new culvert (refer below) should alleviate that situation on a permanent basis.

The wildlife value of the Reserve area was stated as "high" (i.e. district importance) in Rasch, 1989 and local or regional (i.e. moderate or very high) in Garrick, 1990. Its botanical values were also described as "high" by Irving, 1991. (Table 1B).

Of the c.130 ha of wetland habitat in the Reserve (i.e. excluding scrub and grazed pasture) all areas have been modified to varying degrees by drainage works which had commenced in the 1920's (Figure 3) and the more recent Kaituna River Catchment Scheme which resulted in realignment of the River's mainstem. The most recent modification to the area has occurred in its southeastern portion; Eastern Region Fish and Game Council has excavated a number of shallow ponds and planted native vegetation for the purposes of wildfowl shooting and habitat enhancement and has constructed vehicle access tracks around some pond perimeters. A number of permanent maimais is present. The Council also owns and administers a 7 ha Wildlife Refuge on the southern side of Waihi Estuary. The brief summarised basis for the more recent works in the Reserve is outlined below.

Garrick, 1990 stated that since 1980 *"the wetlands have been subject to prolonged periods in which inundation has been less frequent and extensive than was previously the case, and accordingly it is probable that there has been some change in the distribution and abundance, and possibly even presence, of certain flora and fauna. More extensive drying out of parts of the reserve during this period may also have resulted in some change to ground levels and contours through shrinkage and settling, and it is conceivable that the 1989 Edgecumbe earthquake may have had a similar net effect."*

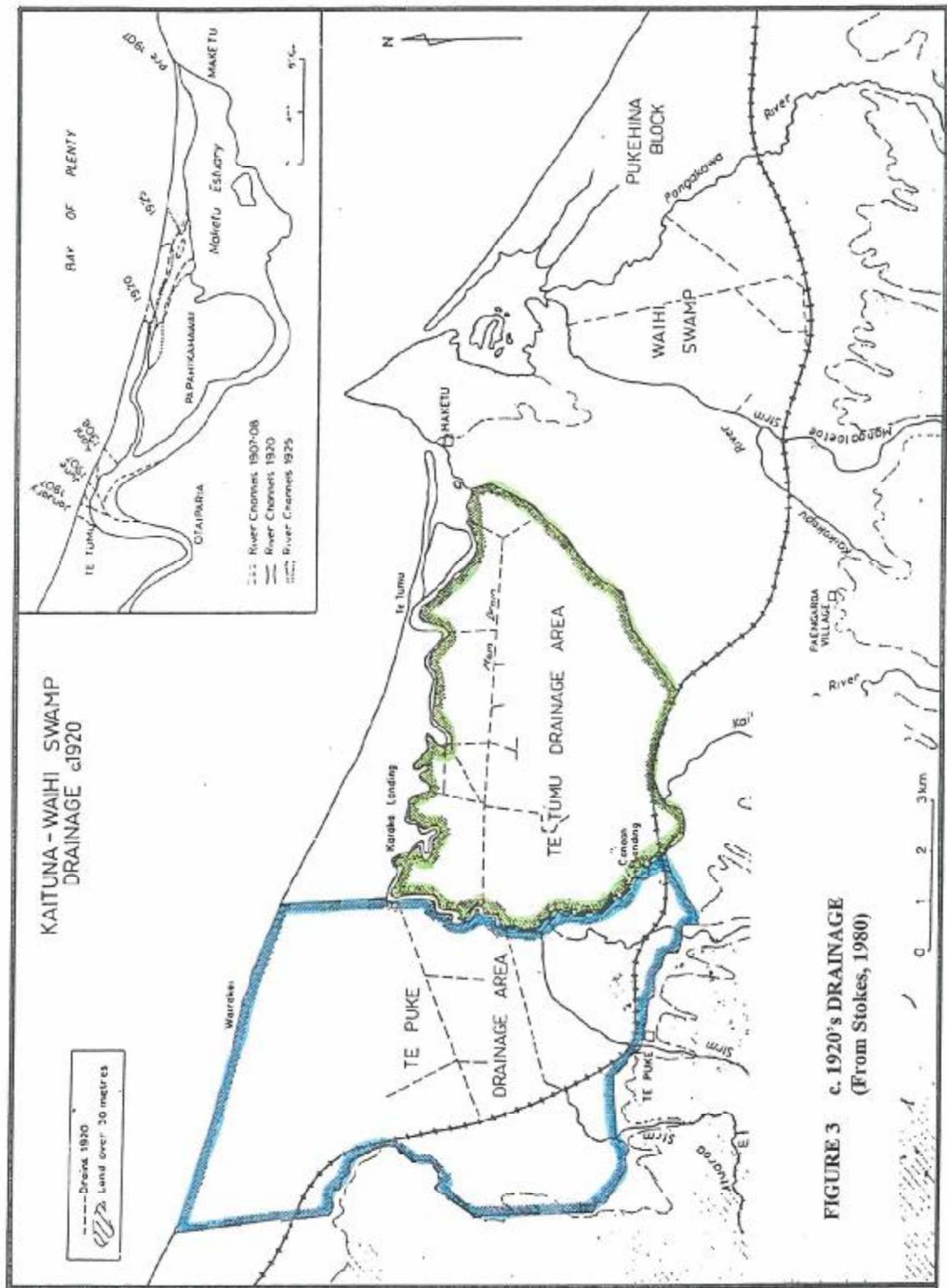


FIGURE 3 c. 1920's DRAINAGE (From Stokes, 1980)

It was decided that water levels should be raised to c.0.7 m across a series of excavations.

“Excavation and development of ponds in the vicinity of old river loops and water courses is likely to result in the creation of diverse and productive wetland bird habitat. However, much of the reserve elsewhere has an underlying peat horizon, and excavation in these areas may not produce the same diversity and quality of habitat. Bog or peat soils are more acidic and less fertile than mineralised soils and this should be borne in mind and investigated before development plans for the restoration and enhancement of the reserve are drawn up.

Currently resource information pertaining to the reserve is also inadequate. Prior to the formulation of any management or development plan, surveys of the distribution of flora and fauna within the area will be required. As previously indicated, flora of rare or threatened status may be present within the reserve, as may be some vegetation associations not adequately protected elsewhere. Flora and fauna surveys would identify parts of the reserve that may require special attention; would assist with the design of an enhancement programme and management planning in general; and would enable a better assessment to be made of the reserve's significance to the Department of Conservation and to fish and game interests. Such information is needed to answer, amongst numerous other concerns, such questions as what weed management will be required, should certain areas be grazed, should a planting/revegetation programme be undertaken?”

The suggested courses of action in Garrick, 1990 which relate to the habitats of native flora and fauna were as follows :

- “7. Undertake a botanical survey of the reserve to determine whether significant flora and/or vegetation associations are present within the area, and to provide such other resource information as may be required for management planning.*
- 8. Undertake a wildlife survey to investigate the current distribution and abundance of species, and to describe and assess habitats.”*

The field investigations reported in the following section were completed in the period 3 - 6 August 1998 under fine, dry conditions. None of the waterways was in flood at the time of sampling. The eastern part of the Reserve and western-most kahikatea stand were also inspected on 27 July 1999 with members of Eastern Fish & Game and the Wildfowlers Association.

Following completion of the field investigations reported herein, a 1.2 m diameter culvert was installed at the "lower oxbow" which will enable pumping of water from the diagonal drain to the wetland to cease. The flap-gate controlled culvert, understood to be situated above the upstream intrusion of the salt wedge, will raise water levels generally throughout the wetland area, provide ready access to the wetland for fish and probably aid the control of terrestrial weed species in lower lying areas. The new culvert is about two kilometres downstream from the proposed Kaituna River bridge crossing of the alignment and about 1.7 km from the alignment itself at its closest point.

Plates of the sampling stations and general habitat are shown in Section 7.

Following the draft AEE preparation, discussions were held with Eastern Fish and Game, Department of Conservation and the Wildfowlers Association; comments were also received from Environment B.O.P.

TABLE 1A

WETLAND AREA SUMMARY

KAWA SWAMP REMNANTS		
	ha approx.	% total
Kaituna River (lower; Beadel, 1994)	34	19.3
Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve	130 (c)	73.9
Te Arawa wetland	12	6.8
TOTAL	176 ha	
EASTERN TAURANGA ECOLOGICAL DISTRICT (Mt Maunganui to Waihi Estuary)		
(notable wildlife and/or botanical freshwater wetlands; Rasch, 1989; Beadel, 1994)		
	ha approx.	% total
Middle Kaituna River (10.5 km)	32 (a)	9.3
Lower Kaituna River (22 km)	110 (b)	32.0
Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve	130 (c)	37.8
Te Arawa wetland	12	3.5
Waewaetutuki (part)	60	17.4
TOTAL	344 ha	

- (a) 1.5 km stated in Rasch, 1989 incorrect; based on nominal width of 30 m
 (b) based on nominal width of 50 m
 (c) total area: c.229 ha
 grazed: c.56 ha
 75% remainder : c.130 ha (25% scrub/sand ridge habitat)

BAY OF PLENTY CONSERVANCY (D.O.C, 1996)
(wetland sites of international importance)

Wetland Area	ha (approx.)
● Tauranga Harbour	19554
● Maketu-Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna River Mouth Complex	863 (a)
● Ohiwa Harbour	2800
● Kaituna Catchment Lakes and Wetland Complex : <div style="text-align: right; padding-right: 20px;"> Lake Rotorua Lake Rotoiti Lake Rotoehu Lake Rotoma </div>	13253
● Upper Tarawera Catchment Lakes & Wetland Complex	7658
● Arahaki Lagoon	30
TOTAL	44158 ha

- (a) excludes Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve and Kaituna River areas.

The term "wetland" is used in the sense defined in the text of the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat (the Ramsar Convention). Thus wetlands are "areas of marsh, fen, peatland or water, whether natural or artificial, permanent or temporary, with water that is static or flowing, fresh, brackish or salt, including areas of marine water the depth of which at low tide does not exceed six metres". (D.O.C, 1996).

TABLE 1B WETLAND AREA VALUES AND SIGNIFICANCE

KAWA SWAMP REMNANTS	Botanical	Wildlife
Kaituna River (lower; Beadel, 1994)	District Beadel, 1994	High Rasch, 1989
Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve	High Irving, 1991	High Rasch, 1989 Local or Regional Garrick, 1990
Te Arawa wetland	Regional Beadel, 1994	NR Rasch, 1989
EASTERN TAURANGA ECOLOGICAL DISTRICT (Mt Maunganui to Waahi Estuary)		
Middle Kaituna River	NR Beadel, 1994	High Rasch, 1989
Lower Kaituna River	District Beadel, 1994	High Rasch, 1989
Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve	as above	as above
Te Arawa wetland	as above	as above
Waewaetutuki (part)	District Beadel, 1994	NR Rasch, 1989

NR = not rated

Also refer Appendix 6.4 - significant botanical sites in the Tauranga Ecological District.

Also refer Appendix 6.5 - significant freshwater wetland wildlife habitats.

Rankings (decreasing order of significance) (a) international, national, regional, district.

(b) outstanding, high, moderate-high, moderate, potential.

2. ECOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS

2.1. Vegetation and Flora

2.1.1. **Introduction**

The route is situated in the low-lying coastal terrain c.5 km upriver from the mouth of the Kaituna River, on sandy alluvium or sandy peats. This ground was subject to intensive drainage projects near the beginning of this century, and the native vegetation, perhaps originally of flax, cabbage tree scrub communities and kahikatea forest, is now found only on the wettest ground, towards the Kaituna River mouth.

2.1.2. **Vegetation History**

Figure 4 (Stokes, 1980) indicates that the broad vegetation type in the proposed alignment area in pre-European times was "swamp" adjacent to the coast with "fern and manuka scrub" further inland.

Soils on either side of the Kaituna River consist of gleys and organics (Stokes, 1980). The Te Puke block of 10,510 ha in 1879 is described by Stokes, 1980 as consisting "*mainly of open fern land, gently undulating but crossed by deep bush covered gullies*". To the north was an area of coastal swamp and sand hills; to the south, some fairly broken country covered with bush. The "swampland" on the eastern and southern side of the Kaituna River was known as the Kawa Swamp; the similar area on the western side (adjacent to the existing Bell Road) was the Te Parapara Swamp. (Refer Figure 4A).

The main early industry was flax milling which persisted in various forms and with a variable number (0-5) of mills operating at any one time. "*Large areas were damaged by fires which swept through the swamps periodically; big fires were recorded in 1891, 1905, 1906, 1908 and 1914*" (Stokes, 1980).

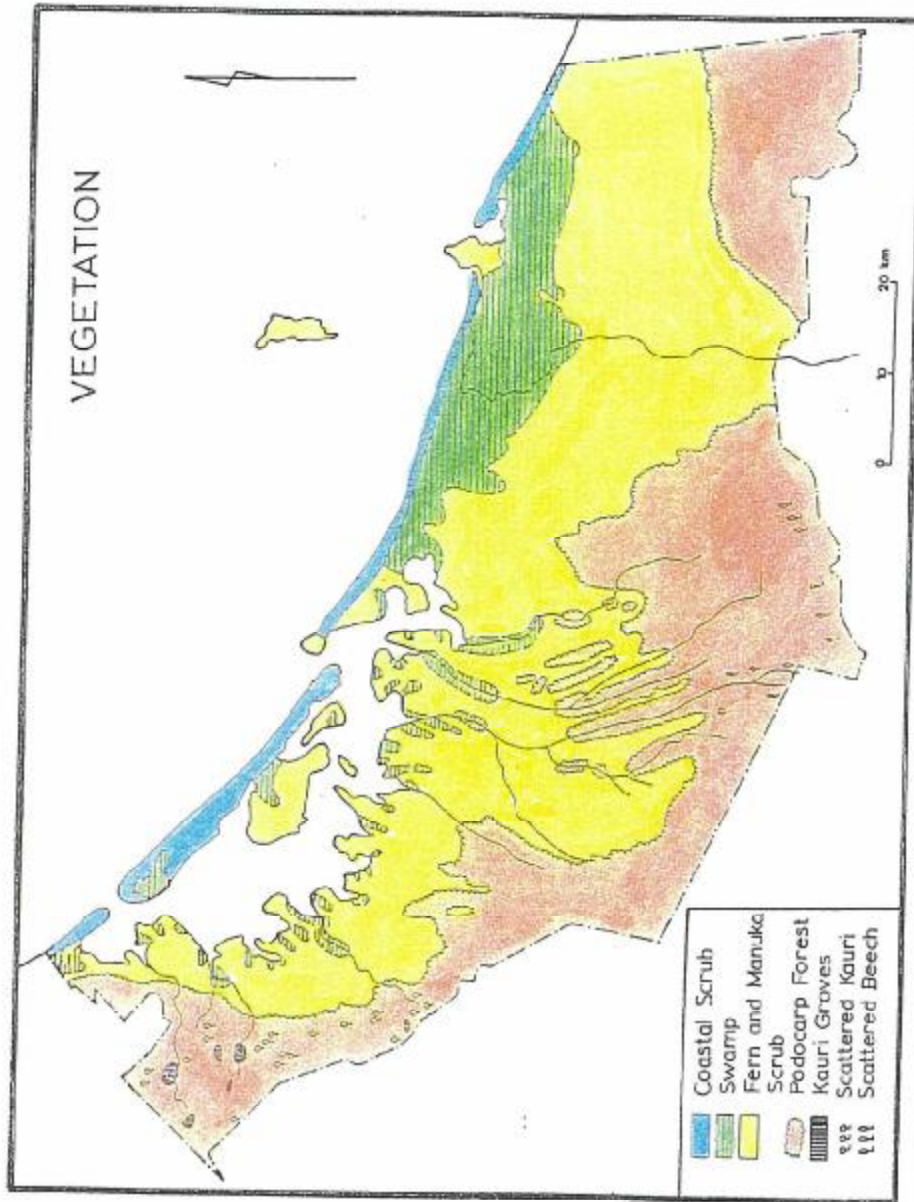


FIGURE 4 PRE-EUROPEAN VEGETATION
(From Stokes, 1980)

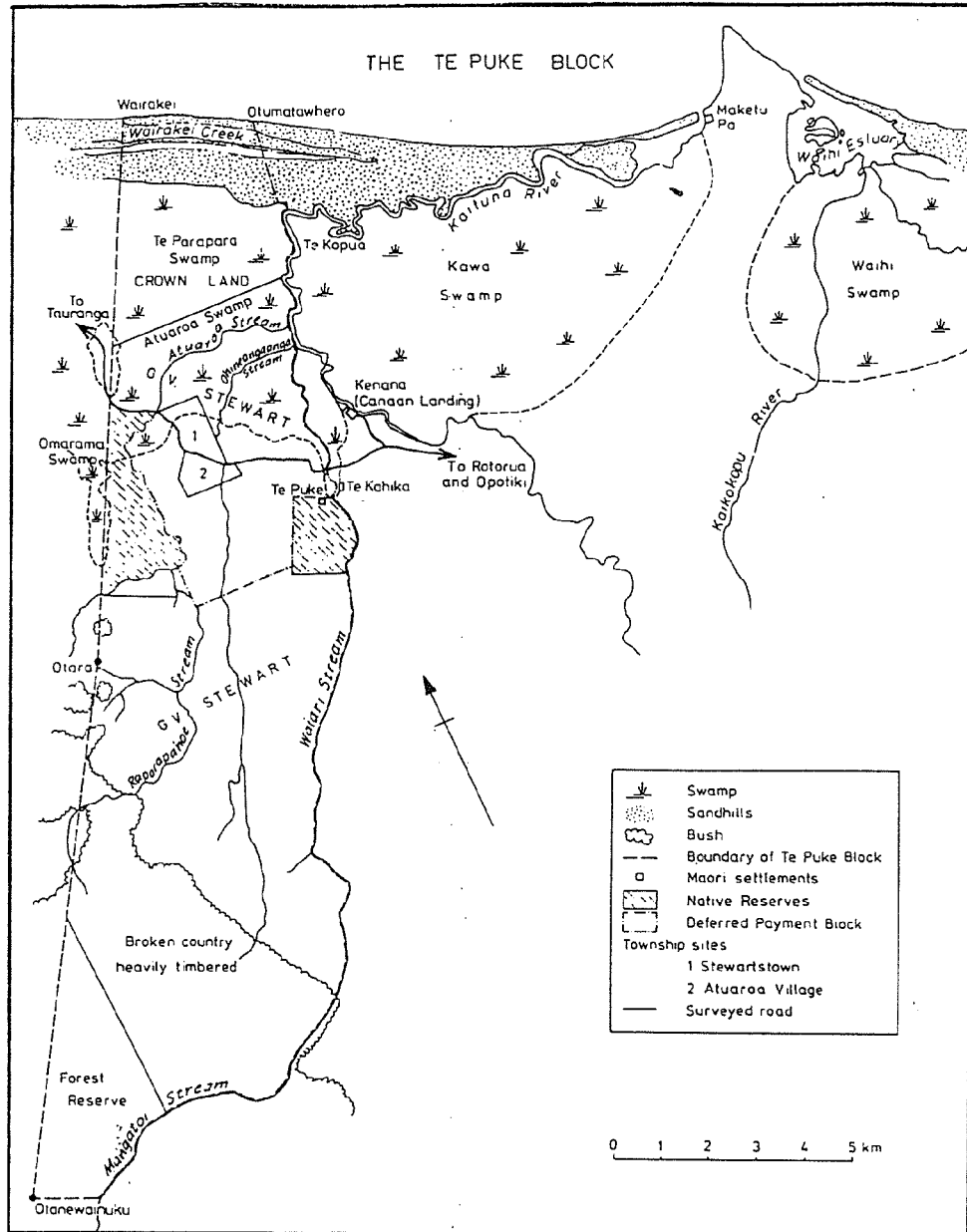


FIGURE 4A 1879 FEATURES OF THE
"TE PUKE BLOCK"
 (From Stokes, 1980)

"In June, 1926 an Auckland Company, Flaxlands Development Ltd, purchased an area of approximately 3,000 acres of Kaituna Swamp Land which at time of purchase was covered in thick manuka scrub, raupo and rubbish" (Taylor, 1969). The aim was to establish an industry based on flax cultivation rather than depleting wild stocks; the operation closed in 1930 but *"By August, 1931, the growth of flax exceeded all expectations being free from disease and judged as being as fine as any other flax from plantations anywhere in the North Island"* (Taylor, 1969). Native flax fibre had difficulty competing overseas with plantation-grown sisal and jute but a small internal market persisted until 1945.

The 1943 topographic map (Figure 5) indicates that significant drainage had occurred by that time in the areas to the west, south and south east of the lower Kaituna River. Those areas were defined in c.1920 as the Te Puke and Te Tumu Drainage Areas.

Vegetation adjacent to the lower Kaituna still covered a significant area and consisted of flax and manuka reaching a height of c.6 m in inland areas and adjacent to Kopura (Kopuroa) Canal, with flax, manuka and blackberry in the present Wildlife Management Reserve Area. Clusters of taller vegetation are shown north of the present Pah Road extension and to the west of Pah Road. Drains were present in the present Reserve area.

The 1965 topographic map (Figure 6) indicates that further vegetation clearance mainly involved the "8' Manuka, Flax" on either side of Pah Road and encroachment into the southern edges of the flax, manuka and blackberry adjacent to the Kaituna River and along Kaituna Road. The major drain at the Pah Road right angled bend had been constructed at this time.

Drainage patterns in c. 1960 are also shown on Figure 6A together with the area flooded in July 1951. Figure 6B shows the Stage I works which had been completed by the Kaituna River Board by 1951. (National Resources Survey, 1962).

The 1980 topographic map (Figure 7) shows further contraction of the vegetation in the area adjacent to the Kopuroa and Raparapahoe Canals and to the east of the large drain at the Pah Road bend. Otherwise the area now vested as the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve,

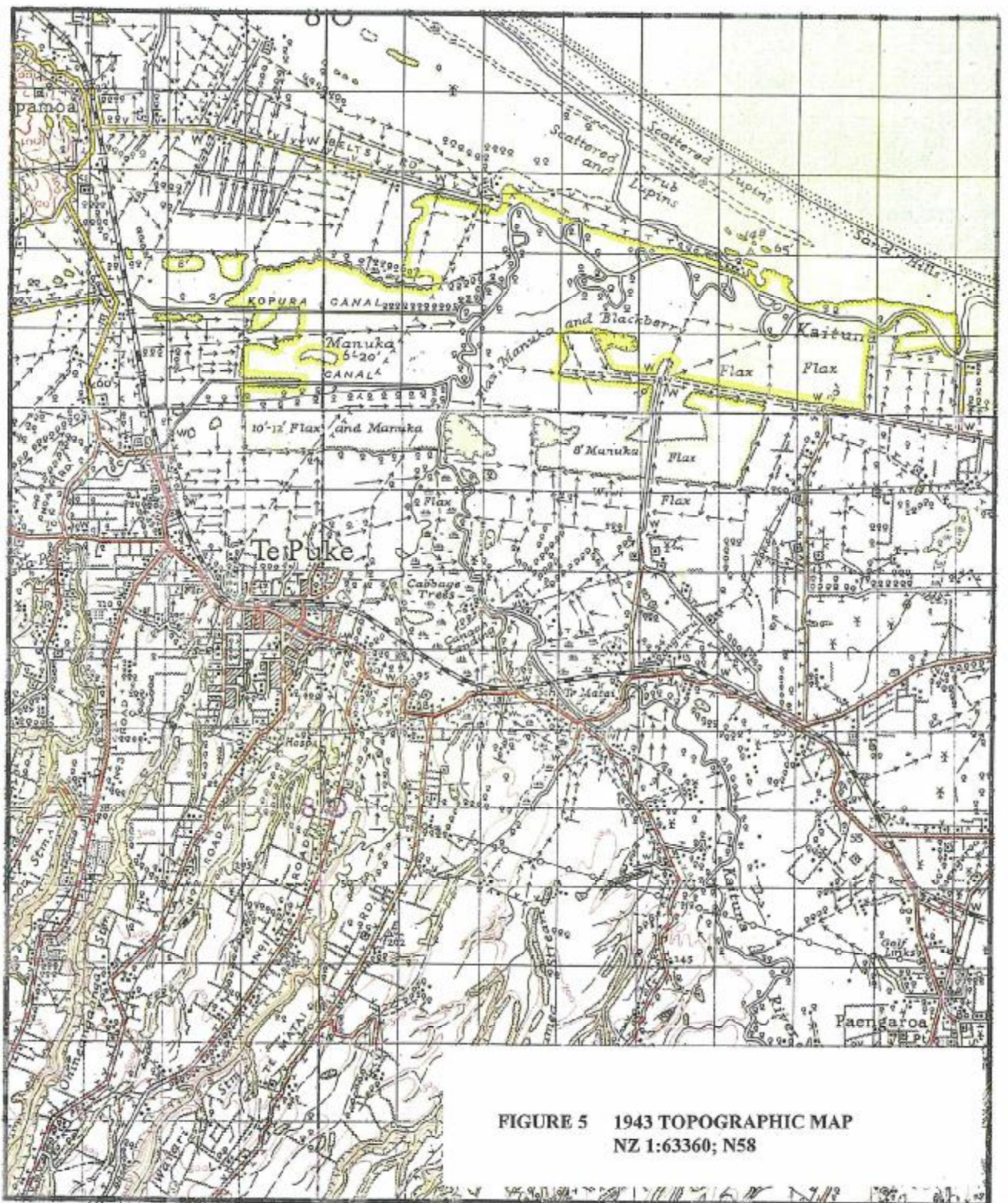
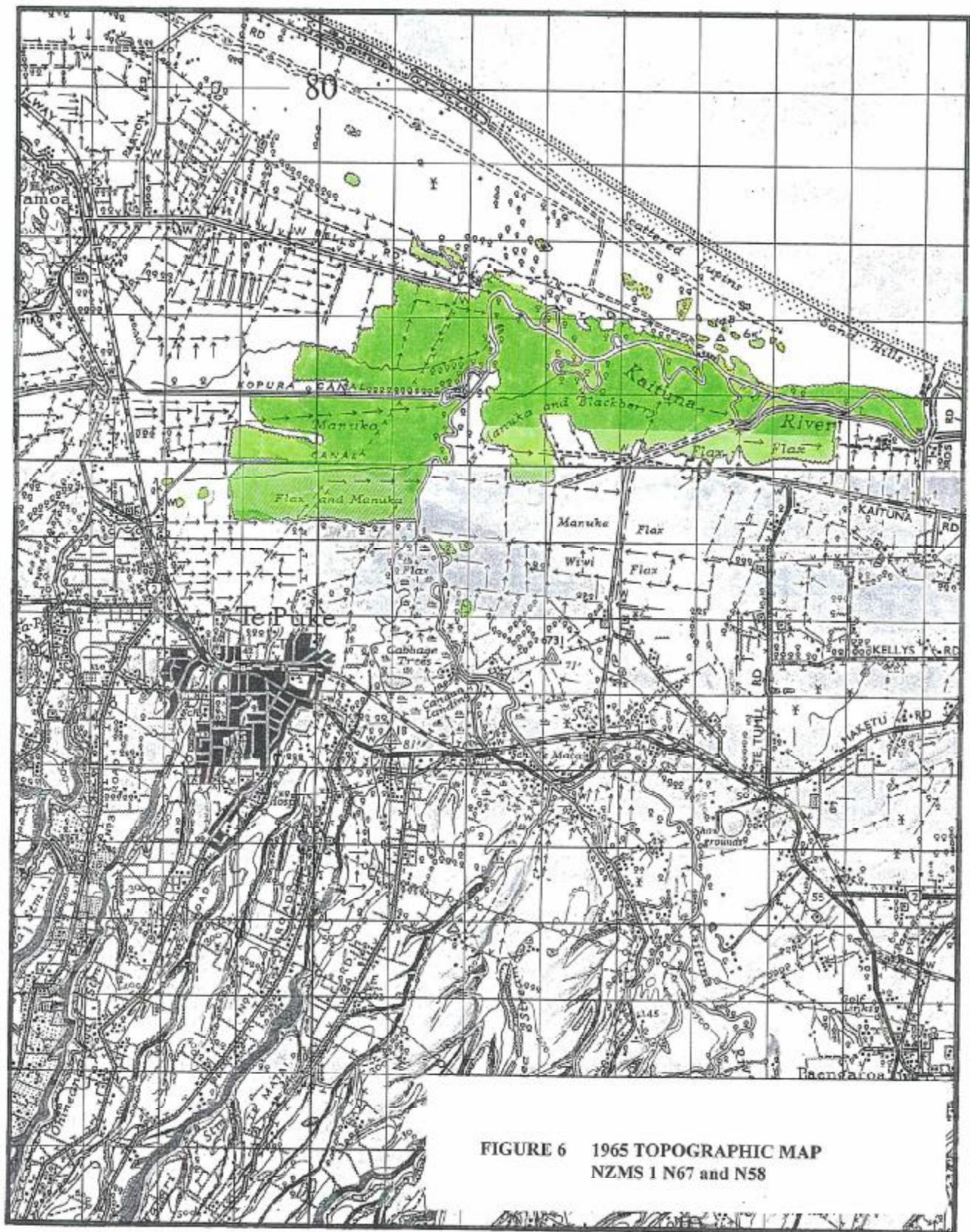


FIGURE 5 1943 TOPOGRAPHIC MAP
 NZ 1:63360; N58



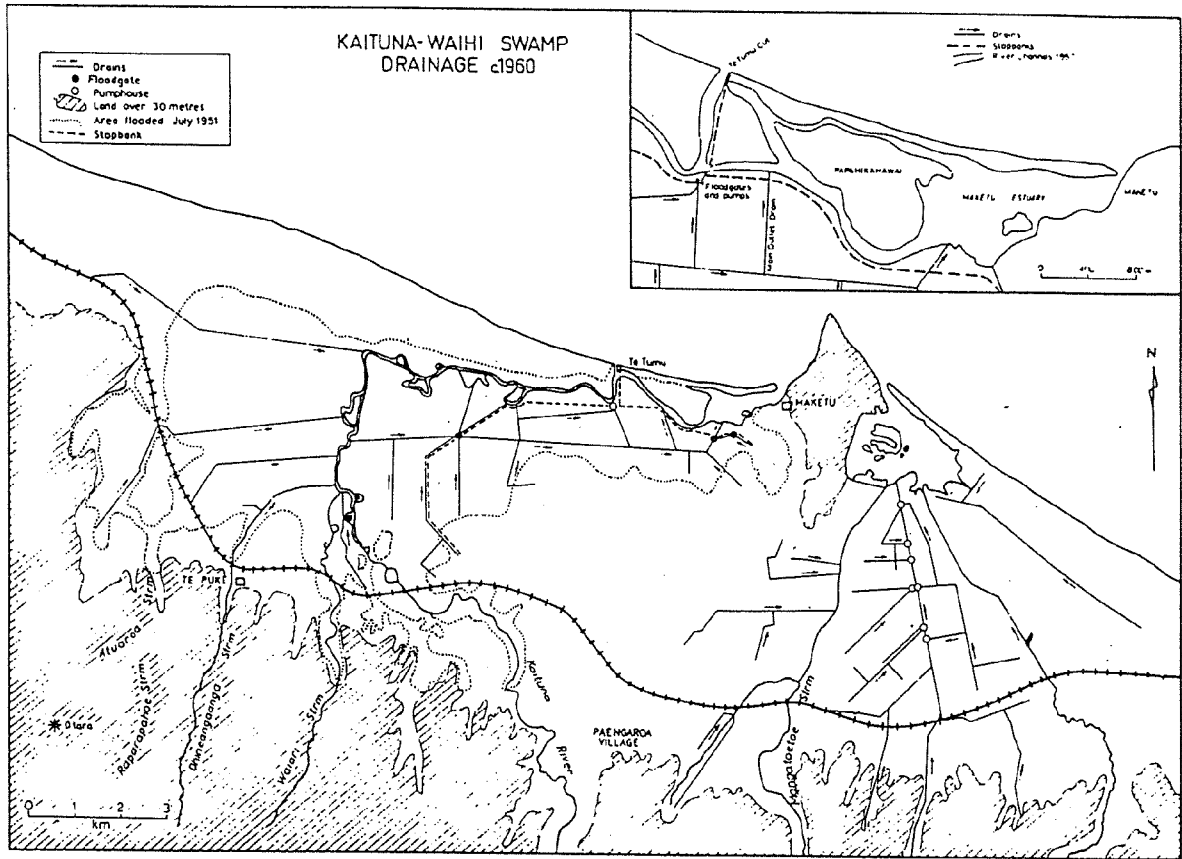


FIGURE 6A c. 1960's DRAINAGE
(From Stokes, 1980)

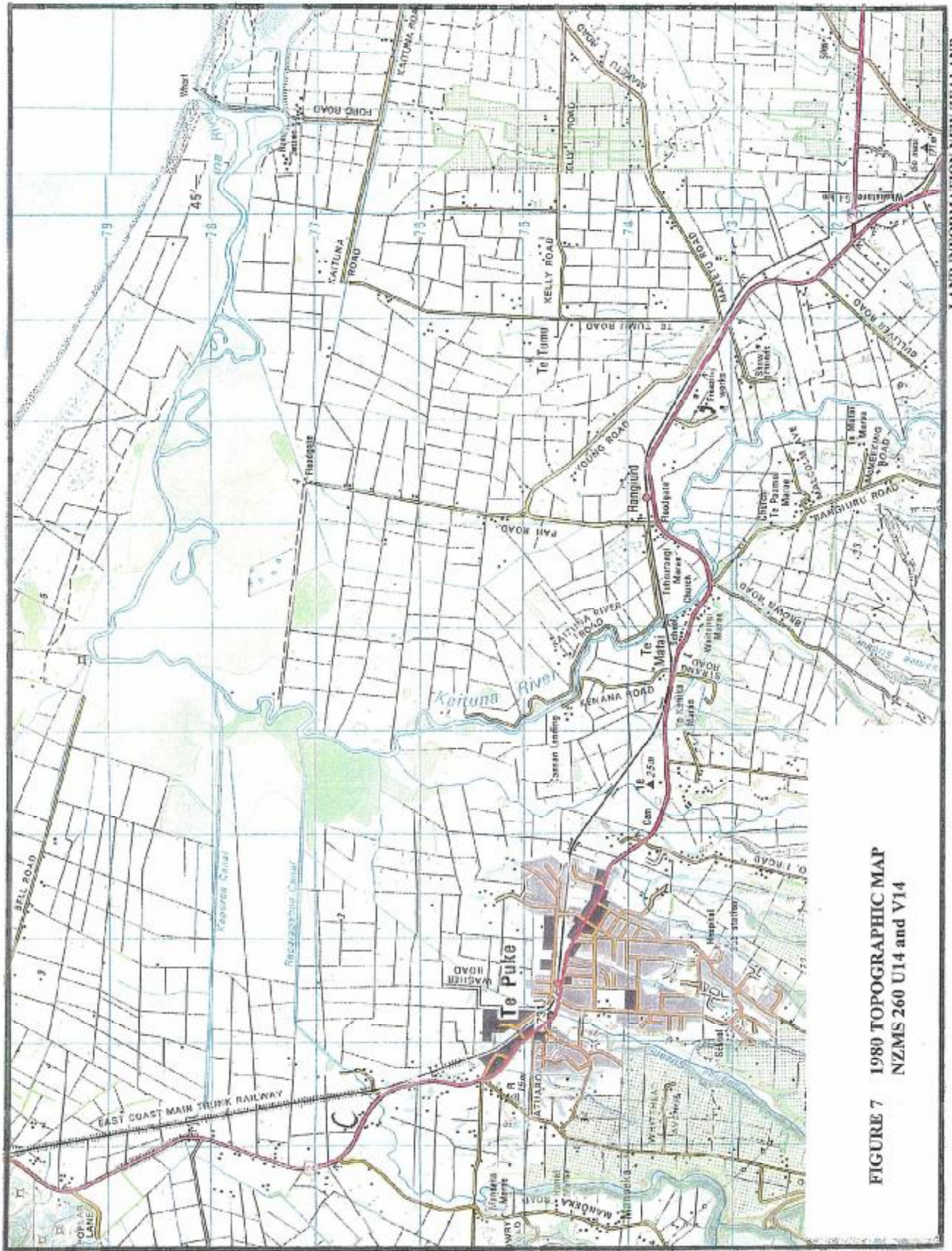


FIGURE 7 1980 TOPOGRAPHIC MAP
NZMS 260 U14 and V14

LAND INFORMATION NEW ZEALAND
MAP LICENCE NI 004404/1

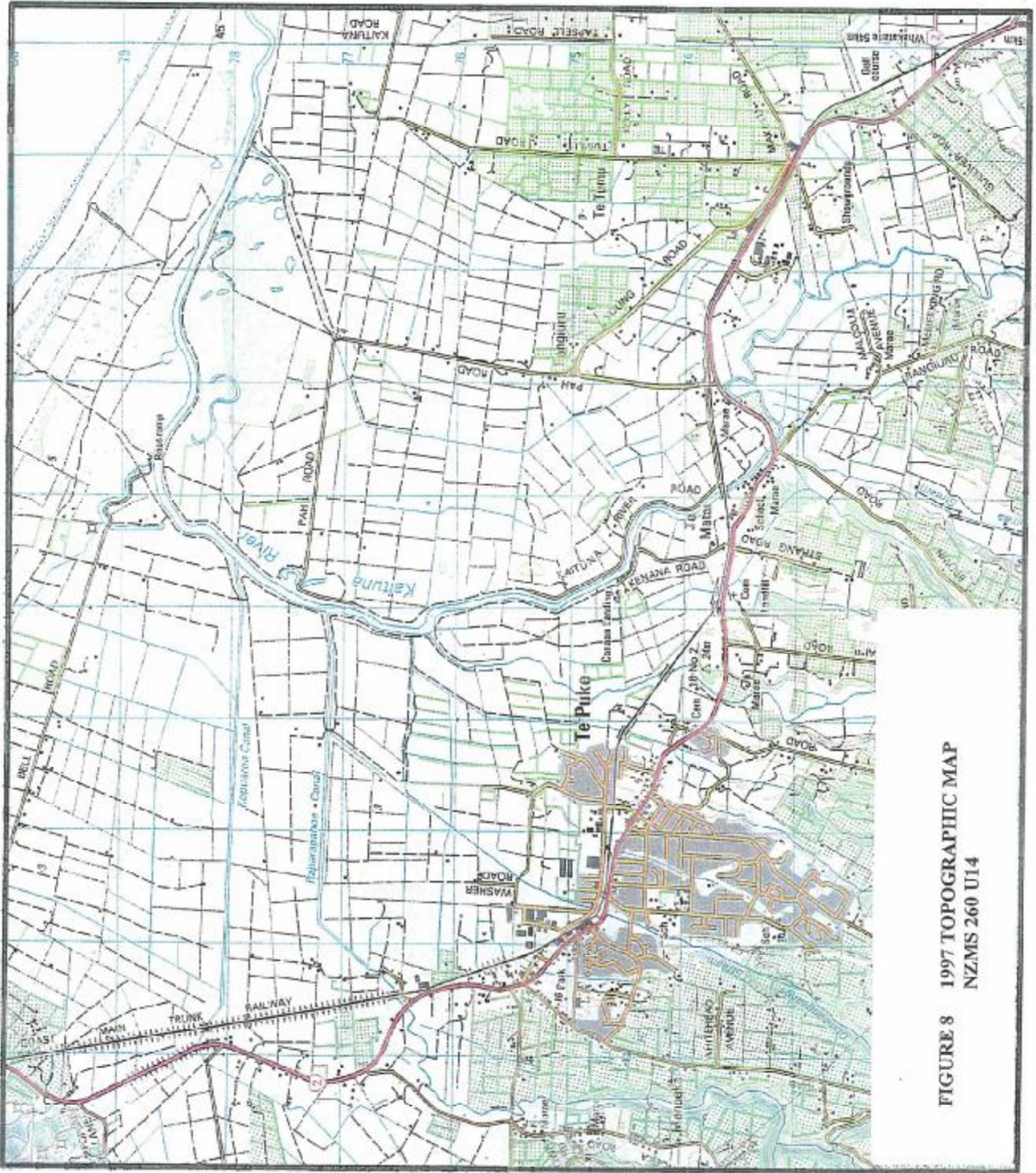


FIGURE 8 1997 TOPOGRAPHIC MAP
NZMS 260 U14

LAND INFORMATION NEW ZEALAND
MAP LICENCE NL 094494/1

including most of the area now in pasture, is unchanged in comparison with the situation illustrated in 1965. A relatively large area (c. 10 ha) of un-developed land is also shown in the now Potter property, and, on the opposite side of the road, the only cleared area is the c. 10 ha block which was cleared prior to 1943.

Between 1980 and 1997 (Figure 8), however, following major realignment of the lower Kaituna River, significant additional land development had occurred throughout the area on both sides of the lower River. Most of the vegetation was removed between the Raparapahoe Canal and Bell Road, adjacent to the Bell Road oxbow and on the northern side of the realigned River channel.

Major clearance also occurred to the north of Pah Road in the now Pamment, East and Department of Conservation properties and south of Pah Road in the now Potter property. Figure 8 reflects the distribution of the present vegetation of the area generally and the Wildlife Management Reserve specifically, including some of the areas excavated by the Eastern Fish and Game Council. No significant standing waterbodies had been present in that area previously.

Therefore, the most significant reduction in tall vegetation and wetland habitat had occurred prior to 1943, however, a substantial undeveloped area remained in the area around the lower Kaituna River. That vegetation, though undergoing some further contraction and drainage, still covered a large area until about 1980, after which the most significant vegetation clearance in the Pah Road area occurred. This clearance occurred in the area that is now the D.O.C. grazing lease when a fire destroyed a cover dominated by tall willow. (A. Garrick pers. comm; Miller, 1983).

Miller, 1983 completed a preliminary botanical assessment of the then proposed Reserve. Features noted at that time were its recent drying out, the "*rampant growth of certain weed species*", the adverse effects of cattle and goats and the "*invasion of plants*", such as raupo and willowweed, in the old Kaituna River loops.

"*Most of the Reserve is covered by a canopy, consisting in the main of willows. (Salix spp.) Or kanuka (Leptospermum ericoides).*" Beneath the canopy was a dense understorey of coprosmas,

blackberry, ferns, carices and various herbaceous plants, but more open areas were badly overgrown with blackberry and thistles and contained dense thickets of flax.

Plant communities are described in full in Appendix 6.9. (Miller, 1983).

Miller concluded that no species of endangered plant was found but an uncommon orchid, *Pterostylis micromega*, was present near the Reserve's centre. That orchid, also known as tukukiwi and swamp greenhood, now has a Category A (highest) national conservation priority rating but was not re-located in that area during a subsequent survey in December 1990.

Miller, 1983 concluded that the "*reserve forms a large potential wetland in a district where wetlands have largely been eliminated. It contains areas of kanuka/manuka swamp and cabbage tree swamp, both being wetland types that are increasingly uncommon.*"

Miller's recommendations (Appendix 6.9) were that the water table should be raised substantially, stock should be removed, raupo should be controlled, the vegetation canopy should not be reduced to small pockets by indiscriminate clearing and further botanical assessment would be desirable.

Garrick, 1990 noted the following on the basis of the Miller, 1983 report:-

"The vegetation of much of the area was noted to have been modified by fire, clearance for agriculture, and by the invasion of adventive species. Drains constructed through the area must also have had an influence. Four vegetation 'zones' were identified as follows:

- (1) areas adjacent to water courses in which oxygen weed, Polygonum sp. raupo, large sedges and rushes were dominant;*
- (2) areas in and adjacent to permanent water where the vegetation was dominated by manuka, flax, cabbage tree, coprosmas, raupo, Polygonum*

sp, rushes and sedges and other semi-aquatic species;

- (3) *areas of vegetation comprising native and introduced species in approximately equal proportions with the latter forming a dense canopy;*
- (4) *areas composed entirely of introduced flora with willow the predominant canopy species, and blackberry, grasses and other herbaceous species in the understories.*

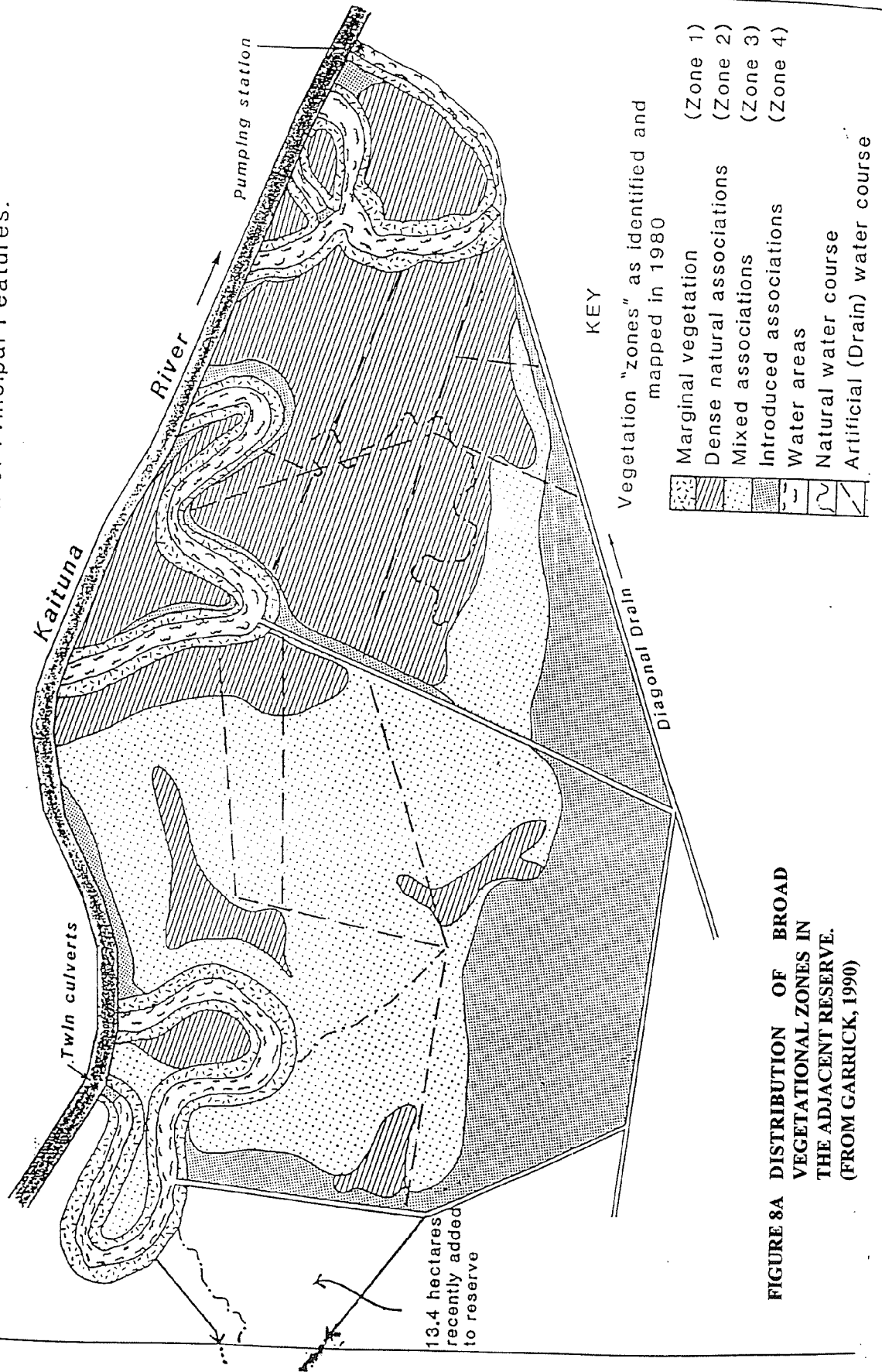
The composition and distribution of these vegetation types (Figure 1) indicates substantial parts of the area were inundated by tidal overflow and flooding with sufficient frequency and to a sufficient extent to maintain a 'damp' state at least for much if not all of the year, though some parts of the reserve are likely to have been summer-dry. 'Permanent' water was likely to have largely been confined to a few watercourses and drains, and to areas in or adjacent to the oxbows which were created as a result of the Kaituna scheme."

Figure 1 above is reproduced in this report as Figure 8A; of particular note regarding the proposed alignment is the location of marginal vegetation (Zone 1) at the margin of the wetland area closest to the alignment and the presence of "introduced associations" (i.e. Zone 4; grazed pasture) beside the proposed alignment to the south of the oxbow. No "dense natural associations" (Zone 2) would be traversed by the proposed alignment.

Irving, 1991 produced a more detailed description of vegetational types which were mapped (Figure 8B) from aerial photographs and ground checks. Note, however, that the kahikatea stands in grazed pasture near the proposed alignment have been omitted. The Irving, 1991 vegetational zones in comparison with the present situation are shown on Figure 8C.

Vegetational zones nearest the proposed alignment as present in December 1990 were as follows:-

Figure 1. Lower Kaituna Wetlands: Location and Distribution of Principal Features.



KEY

Vegetation "zones" as identified and mapped in 1980

	Marginal vegetation	(Zone 1)
	Dense natural associations	(Zone 2)
	Mixed associations	(Zone 3)
	Introduced associations	(Zone 4)
	Water areas	
	Natural water course	
	Artificial (Drain) water course	

FIGURE 8A DISTRIBUTION OF BROAD VEGETATIONAL ZONES IN THE ADJACENT RESERVE. (FROM GARRICK, 1990)

REFERENCE

- CM Cabbage tree - (swamp maire) forest
- V Muehlenbeckia complexa vine/land
- Ma Manuka
- MC Manuka - Coprosma propinqua - flax
- Cwf Cabbage tree / grey willow / flax - sedges - grasses
- Wc Grey willow / Coprosma spp - flax - sedges
- Sc Grey willow
- L Willow spp / sedges - blackberry - grass
- Ca Carex sedge/land
- Ba3 1983 burn (Honeyeuckle - blackberry - bracken vine/land)
- HB Honeyeuckle - bracken - blackberry tangle
- T Tracks
- R Rough pasture
- Old river ox-bows and dug out stream beds and drains
- Willow Edge
- Drains

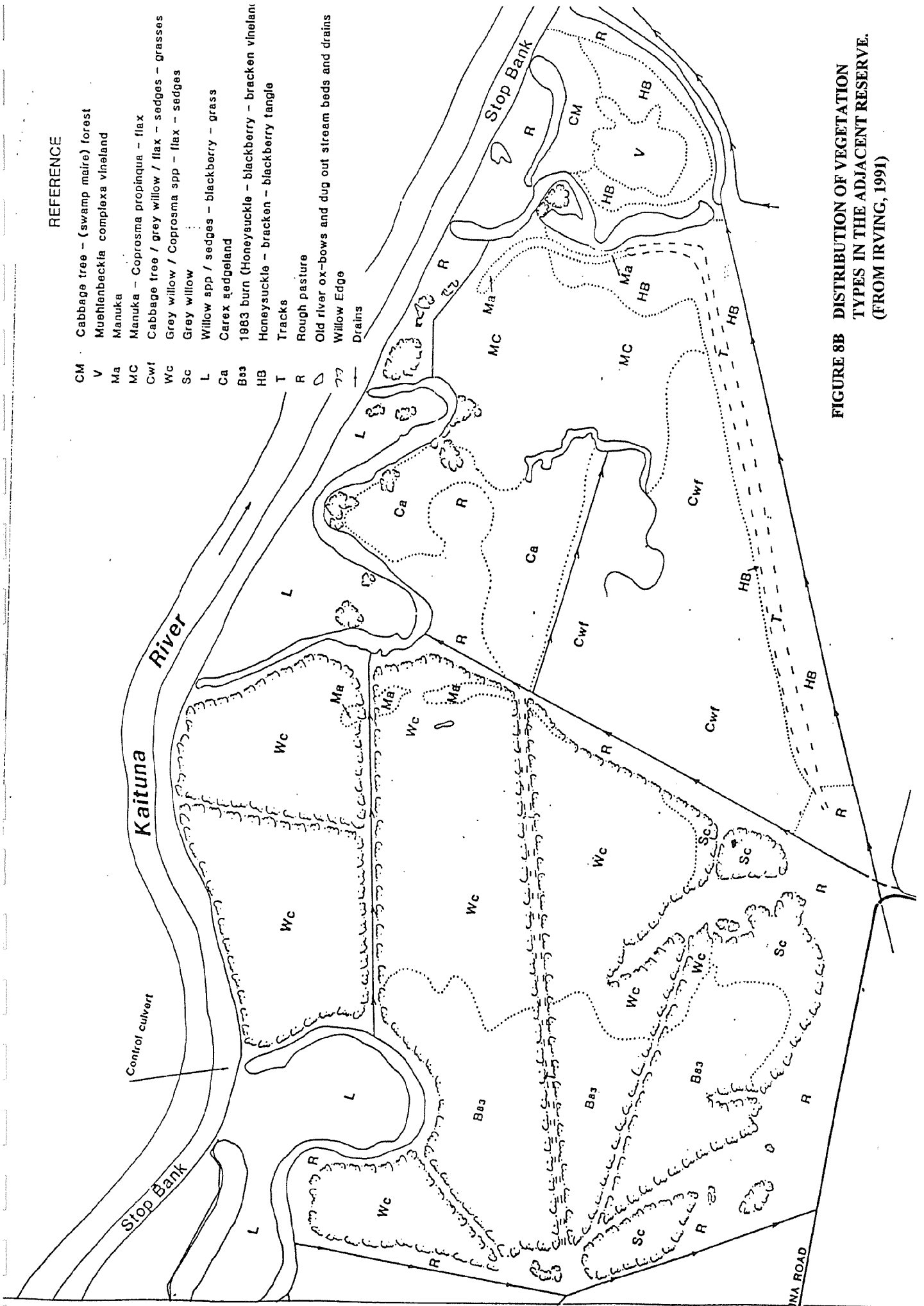


FIGURE 8B DISTRIBUTION OF VEGETATION TYPES IN THE ADJACENT RESERVE. (FROM IRVING, 1991)

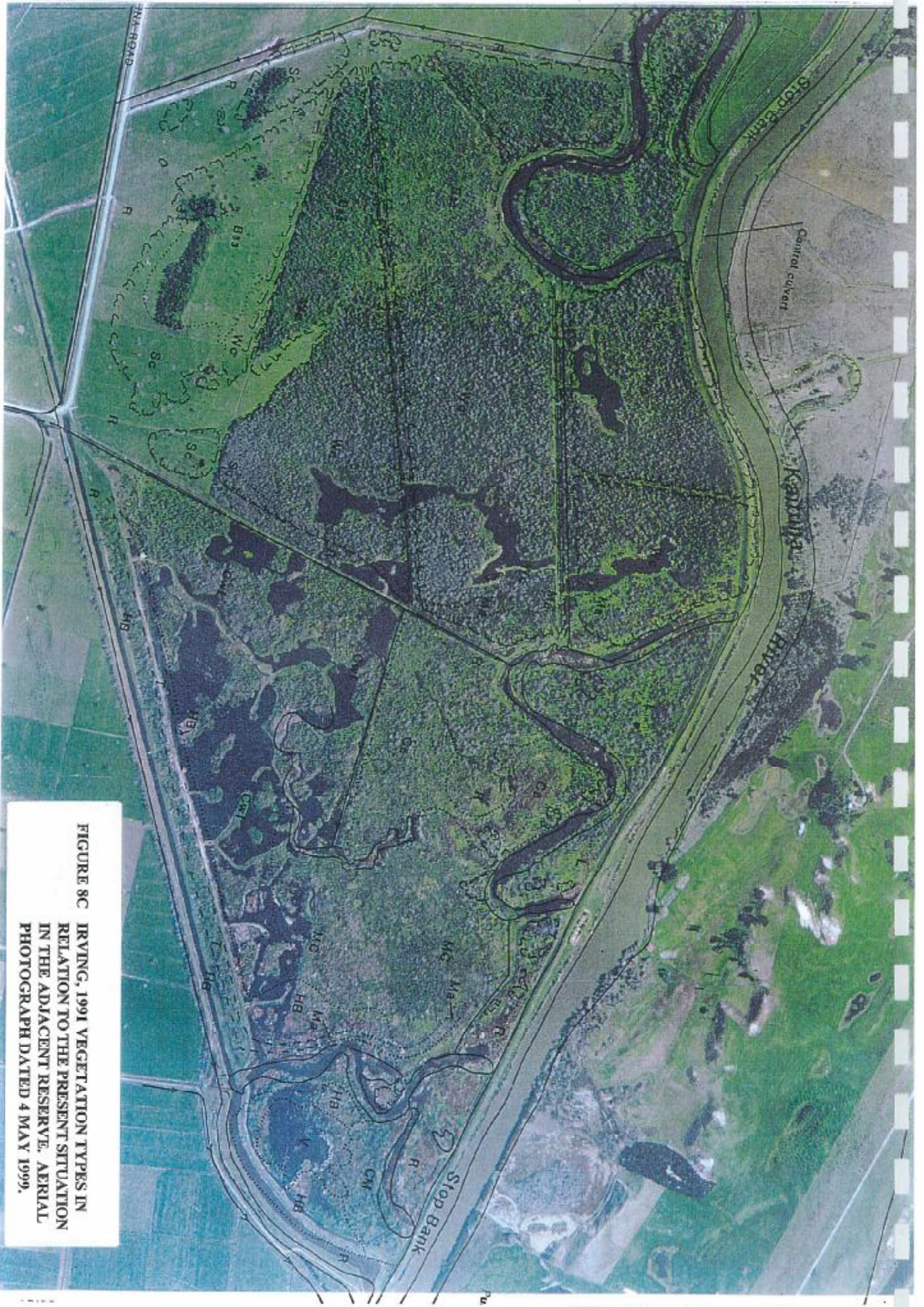


FIGURE 8C IRVING, 1991 VEGETATION TYPES IN RELATION TO THE PRESENT SITUATION IN THE ADJACENT RESERVE. AERIAL PHOTOGRAPH DATED 4 MAY 1999.

Zone L (areas inside the western oxbow).*(Willow spp.)/sedge-blackberry-grass zone*

These areas inside the loops of old oxbows vary depending on the amount of grazing they receive. Both grey and crack willow are present, with crack willow being more common near water courses. Other trees and shrubs include cabbage tree, Coprosma propinqua, C. tenuicaulis (occasional), manuka and kahikatea (occasional).

Kahikatea, rimu, cherry, oak, peach and walnut trees have been planted in the vicinity of some maimais.

Introduced grasses (particularly tall fescue) are common as are blackberry, honeysuckle and thistles. Sedges such as Cyperus ustulatus, Carex geminata and C. lurida are locally common, as is flax.

Zone R (grazed pasture margins beyond the taller vegetated margins)**Rough pasture**

These areas are covered by pasture species interspersed by wet pasture 'weeds' such as Juncus gregiflorus, J. effusus, Polygonum hydropiper, Carex lurida and Ranunculus spp.

Zone WC (taller vegetation beyond the grazed pasture margin)**Grey willow/Coprosma spp. - flax - sedges**

This is the most common vegetation type in the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve. Grey willow over-tops a subcanopy of Coprosma propinqua (very common), C. tenuicaulis, flax and occasional manuka, wheki and mamaku.

The sedges B. rubiginosa, B. teretifolia, Carex virgata, C. lurida and C. fascicularis are common. Patches of ferns occur. Fern species include Depraria petersenii, Pteris tremula, Paesia scaberula, Blechnum minus, Blechnum 'black spot', bracken, and small areas of Gleichenia dicarpa.

Introduced grasses are common in contrast to the native swamp millet (Isachne globosa), Cortaderia fulvida and the large sedge Gahnia xanthocarpa which are more sparsely distributed.

Herbs present include Hydrocotyle spp., Galium spp., Centella uniflora, water forget-me-not and beggars' tick (seedlings of the latter were thick in places at the time of the survey).

Zone B83 (area burnt off in 1983; contains kahikatea stands not noted in this 1990 survey).

Burnt 1983 (Honeysuckle-blackberry-bracken) vineland

A fire was still smoldering here in March 1983 (N. Miller pers. comm.). This is now a patchy vegetation zone with a mix of honeysuckle, blackberry and bracken scrambling around dead willow trunks (some still standing).

Some live pussy willows are present as is Coprosma propinqua and occasionally manuka. Sedges present are Carex lurida, C. virgata and Baumea spp. Flax is scattered about. Introduced grasses, particularly Yorkshire fog and brown top, are common.

Zone SC (also contains a small kahikatea stand but now predominantly grazed pasture)

Grey willows

This vegetation type consists of a dense canopy of tall Salix cinerea with an understorey of Depraria petersenii, ragwort, blackberry and occasional sedges and introduced

grasses. *Honeysuckle* is common on the edge.

The areas in which the constructed ponds are now present consisted of the following:-

Zone Cwf (constructed pond area)

Cabbage tree/grey willow/sedges-flax-grasses association

This vegetation covers a large area in the south-east of the reserve and grades into manuka-Coprosma propinqua-flax.

*There is an open canopy of cabbage tree and grey willow under which a mix of sedges, yellowing flax, and introduced grasses grow. In shady areas mamaku (*Cyathea medularis*), wheki (*Dicksonia squarrosa*) and *Depraria petersenii* are common. In more open areas blackberry, honeysuckle and thistles are locally common.*

*Through this area runs an old stream bed. Only where this has been recently dug out was there any water at the time of survey. The vegetation in these depressions however, (*Baumea articulata*, *B. rubiginosa*, *B. teretifolia*, *Juncus acuminatus*) suggests that the water level is close to the surface, and water is held here at least during the winter months.*

Zone MC (the largest area of this zone is within the high ecological value area but it extends into the constructed pond section)

Manuka - Coprosma propinqua - flax association

*This is a remnant of semi-mineralised peat shrubland in very poor condition. Manuka, Coprosma propinqua and flax form a discontinuous canopy. Cabbage tree and grey willow are also present. The sedges *Baumea teretifolia*, *B. rubiginosa*, *B. tenax* and *Carex virgata*, and also tangle umbrella fern (*Gleichenia dicarpa*), are still retained but*

all are fighting against the lack of water and resultant weed invasion (blackberry, Carex lurida, introduced grasses). The flax is yellow, and cabbage trees are dying. Manuka is falling over as the peat subsides away from its roots. There are large areas of dead fern (Depraria petersenii, Histiopteris incisa). There is no sign of water (even in the drain). This area is grazed and hence stock damaged.

Zone HB (constructed pond area but restricted to the eastern corner of the wetland)

Honeysuckle-blackberry-bracken vineland

The title species of this vegetation type grown together producing a 1½-2 m high dense angle. Cabbage trees are occasionally emergent.

Zone V (as above)

Muehlenbeckia complexa vineland

The vine Muehlenbeckia complexa is dominant in this vegetation type and excludes most other species. Cabbage tree, manuka, Hebe macrocarpa, Coprosma propinqua and grey willow occasionally protrude but the manuka and Hebe seem to be in the process of being smothered.

Other lianes present include Rubus australis and Muehlenbeckia australis. The sedges Carex virgata, Baumea tenax, B. teretifolia and Eleocharis acuta are present.

Irving, 1991 summarised the botanical values as follows:-

“Although the reserve has suffered a high degree of botanical modification it is nevertheless the last sizeable remnant of riverine wetland in the Tauranga Ecological District and Northern Volcanic Plateau Ecological Region, and one of only a few remaining wetlands (of any type) in a district which was once

extensively covered by this ecotype. Kirk (1873) refers to 'hundreds of acres' of swamp around Maketu. (Other remnants are Matakana Island wetlands, [private] (see Beadel 1989a), Tauranga Harbour saltmarshes [private and local authority] (see Beadel 1989a), Arawa wetlands at Maketu [private] (Beadel 1989) and Waihi Estuary [some of which is designated wildlife reserve] (Beadel 1989).

For these reasons, even in its present state, the whole of this wetland reserve (apart from pasture and rough pasture areas) should be ranked (as per Shaw 1988) as being of high botanical value (i.e. it is the "last or one of the few remaining areas of a vegetation type within an Ecological District, in a modified condition but retaining the main elements of composition and structure").

The wetland however is at a critical stage of health, and unless active management is urgently undertaken botanical values will be severely reduced. This is discussed in Section 6.

For the benefit of management the vegetation types can be grouped into categories of botanical importance (within the overall ranking of high botanical value). The categories are 1 - 4, 1 being the most important.

1. - *Cabbage tree - (swamp maire) forest*
 - *Muehlenbeckia complexa vineland*
 - *Manuka*
 - *Carex sedgeland*

2. - *Manuka - Coprosma propinqua - flax association*
 - *Grey willow/Coprosma spp. - flax sedges*
 - *Tracks*
 - *Old oxbow and dug-out stream beds and drains.*

3. - *Cabbage tree/grey willow/sedges - flax - grass association*
- *Grey willows*
- *(Willow spp.)/sedge - blackberry - grass zone*
- *Burnt 1983 (Honeysuckle - blackberry - bracken) vineland*

4. - *Rough pasture*

Note that there is a contradiction in the above; "rough pasture" is specifically excluded from the high botanical value area in Paragraph 2 but included as Category 4 above.

The swamp greenhood orchid (tukukiwi), which is a Category A plant of national conservation priority was not relocated by Irving, 1991. None of the plants listed as being present in the Reserve by Irving, 1991 is considered to be threatened or of local concern in the Bay of Plenty Conservancy (Beadel, 1992). The most significant populations of the wetland ferns (*Cyclosorus interruptus* and *Thelypteris confluens* of national significance occur on Matakana Island (Beadel, 1992); those species are also present in the Te Arawa wetland but have not been recorded in the Reserve.

It is clear that, as with many other now rural areas, there has been substantial clearing of native vegetation in the areas to the north of Te Puke township over the past c. 80 years. Most of the clearance and drainage works had occurred prior to 1943.

2.1.3. Vegetation and Flora

Nearly all the route lies in pasture or orcharding properties. Five sites are noted below, where the natural vegetation has not been completely effaced.

1. Head of unnamed stream at grid ref. NZMS 260 U14 055 793 (Plates 1-3). This deep and meandering channel lies entirely in pasture. Along its banks is an open cover of 12 m tall crack willow (*Salix fragilis*). Among the grasses and other weeds and the notable amount of inorganic farm and household rubbish are

scattered individuals of native shrub-layer and ground-cover species: wheki tree fern (*Dicksonia squarrosa*), *Coprosma propinqua*, young cabbage trees (*Cordyline australis*), juvenile mamaku tree ferns (*Cyathea medullaris*), carices (*Carex secta*), and other sedges (*Eleocharis sphacelata*, *Baumea ?rubiginosa*). The water has a covering of duckweed (*Lemna minor*).

2. Northern of the two sections of oxbow (U14 058 791) on Bell Road (Plates 5-7). the road verge and steep 1-2 m high bank down to the water have a cover of pampas grass (*Cortaderia selloana*), blackberry (*Rubus fruticosus*), tall fescue (*Festuca arundinacea*) and other weeds. In the water, for a metre or two out from the bank, there is an aquatic growth of knotweed (*Polygonum* sp.), *Myriophyllum aquaticum* and hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum*).
3. Crossing of Kaituna River.
The river here is situated in pasture enclosed by stopbanks (U14 061 787). Along the water's edge are a few smallish crack willows, and scattered individuals of a native rush (*Juncus gregiflorus*). In the water here only hornwort was noted. (Plates 8 and 9).
4. Waimarae Stream Crossing
This shallow meandering section of stream (U14 065 781) lies entirely in wet pasture. Formerly it flowed into a large cut-off of the Kaituna River (Plate 13), some hundred or so metres away to the east, but it has now been ditched to flow southwards. The vegetation in the stream channel is of exotic herbaceous weeds and grasses among a taller growth of raupo (*Typha orientalis*), a large sedge (*Baumea articulata* or *Eleocharis sphacelata*) and smaller sedges (*Baumea ? rubiginosa*, *Carex ? fascicularis* or *C. maorica*, *Carex virgata*, *Carex secta*). (Plates 10-12).
5. North of the right-angled bend in Pah Road there is a narrow strip of "islands" of young kahikatea (*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*), within the part of the Reserve that

is now grassed and the subject of the DoC pastoral lease.

The existing kahikatea are composed of individuals c. 8-13 m tall and 10-20 cm dbh. The largest diameter individual seen in the western "island" was 26 cm dbh. Coring this tree with an increment borer yielded an age for it of c. 20 plus x years, where x is the number of years needed for the tree to reach breast height, and can be supposed to be between 2 and 5 years. This is a fairly rapid growth rate and indicates that under the water regime of the last twenty or so years at least, the ground here is very suitable for a restoration of this species.

The individual kahikatea trees tend to be in clusters or short lines, on slightly raised ground, and may be growing on the bases of an older generation of large trees, probably kahikatea. Such old kahikatea stumps, now existing just as root-flanges around a rotten core of up to c. 50 cm diameter, and hardly raised above the existing surface, are found through the DoC pasture (Plate 29) and also immediately north in the willow forest. Axe marks were seen on several of these stump remnants, and also on scattered pieces of kahikatea wood through this paddock and in the debris heaps here. It is suggested then that there was a kahikatea forest here in late pre-European times, that this was destroyed possibly by flooding, and that the stumps have in part been cleared, or taken for firewood etc., in historic times.

The origin of the band of young kahikatea is obscure, but it is not a planting. A. Garrick suggested (pers. comm.) that it is an even-aged stand of c. 25 years and that it came up on the former edge of the willow forest here perhaps through the bringing of seed by birds that favoured this habitat. Northwards towards the heart of the willow forest there are several (young-mature ?) kahikatea emergent over the willows, and possibly a good fruiting year for them may have been the source of these young trees.

The young kahikatea have only a few native plant species associated with them: cabbage trees (as relatively juvenile plants, not as codominants or relics), and mahoe and wheki (both species as young individuals). The only groundcover species is the adventive fern *Deparia petersenii*. Chinese privet (*Ligustrum sinense*) and Japanese honeysuckle (*Lonicera japonica*) are dense around the stand edges.

On the northern side of the young kahikatea, to the edge of the willow forest here, the DoC pasture contains scattered cabbage trees of c. 6-10 m tall and 15-25 cm dbh. These are clearly not very old, but would be survivors of the fire that occurred here. Within this pasture there are a number of low debris heaps containing soil and burnt wood fragments. These are mostly of willow, but there is also large old kahikatea stump material, and on one heap (Plate 30) there is a burnt length a metre or so long of what would appear to be the trunk of a young kahikatea (i.e. of a size similar to those in the "band"). No young kahikatea were noted in the willow forest immediately to the north. One piece of wood in the debris heap was not identified; it may have been brought here by floods.

Between the kahikatea and Pah Road, and then further southwards and west, there are no tall kahikatea and very few cabbage trees, suggesting that at least in historic times this ground carried scrub, probably of manuka as indicated on Figure 5.

The large drain here, which flows southwards contains occasional colonies of hornwort and *Potamogeton ochreatus*. It is noted that although the NZMS 1 topographical sheets of the 1960's (Figure 6) mention for the area in general a vegetation of flax, blackberry and manuka, there seem to be no plants of the latter species in the area now, even along the banks of large drains such as the one noted here.

Restoration of kahikatea forest along this coastal side of the proposed route and on the noise bund would give travellers an opportunity to see what has now become a rather uncommon kind of native vegetation in the region.

2.1.4. **Conclusions**

No notable vegetation, individual trees of any particular botanical value or habitats containing a significant native flora would be traversed by the Option A3 alignment.

The nearest area of notable native vegetation is the remnant grove of kahikatea in the Department of Conservation grazing lease section of the Reserve (refer Plate 18). Restoration of kahikatea forest would be appropriate in this area, particularly if any replanted areas were contiguous with existing stands.

2.2. **Wildlife**

2.2.1. **Introduction**

Wildlife along the proposed Option A3 alignment was documented by field survey, reference to Ornithological Society of NZ bird records, Garrick, 1990 and the Department of Conservation's reptile and amphibian database. In general the wildlife values of the area which would be traversed by the proposed Option A3 alignment are low as a result of habitat modification for farming purposes.

The crossing of the Kaituna River would be in an area which has moderate wildlife values but which is typical of c.22 km (Rasch, 1989) of similar habitat.

The route would be adjacent to the western end of the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve which has high wildlife values in the context of the Tauranga County, and upstream (by c. 5 km) from the Kaituna River mouth which is part of the "Maketu-Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna River Mouth Complex", considered to be a significant habitat in an international context. The

Management Reserve adjacent to the proposed alignment was not included in the above wetland complex in D.O.C, 1996 because it was relatively dry at the time the comparative evaluations were undertaken (D.O.C. pers. comm.).

2.2.2. Avifauna

2.2.2.1 Alignment area

Tables 2, 3 and 3A list species of birds which have been recorded in the general area adjacent to the alignment. As stated in Section 2.2.1., the avifaunal habitat values of the area which the alignment would traverse are low and no notable habitat would be adversely affected. Adjacent and downstream habitats have relatively high avifaunal values and provide habitat for the majority of the species listed.

TABLE 2 Species of “terrestrial, freshwater wetland and inland” birds listed by OSNZ as being present in the 10,000 yard grids for the proposed alignment, plus additional species observed during the field survey. Some species present on an intermittent basis only.

Common Name	Maori Name	Scientific Name
• australasian bittern	matuku	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>
australasian harrier	kahu	<i>Circus approximans</i>
australasian pied stilt	poaka	<i>Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus</i>
australian magpie	-	<i>Gymnorhina tibicen</i>
• banded dotterel	tutur, whatu	<i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i>
blackbird	-	<i>Turdus merula</i>
black-fronted dotterel	-	<i>Charadrius melanops</i>
• black-fronted tern	tarapiroe	<i>Sterna albostrata</i>
black shag	kawau	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaezealandiae</i>
black swan	-	<i>Cygnus atratus</i>
brown quail	-	<i>Synoicus ypsilophorus</i>
california quail	-	<i>Callipepla californica</i>
• caspian tern	taranui	<i>Sterna caspia</i>
chaffinch	-	<i>Fringilla coelebs</i>
common myna	-	<i>Acridotheres tristis</i>
feral pigeon	-	<i>Columba livia</i>
goldfinch	-	<i>Carduelis carduelis</i>
greenfinch	-	<i>Carduelis chloris</i>
grey duck	parera	<i>Anas superciliosa superciliosa</i>
grey teal	tete	<i>Anas gracilis</i>
grey warbler	riroriro	<i>Gerygone igata</i>
hedgesparrow	-	<i>Prunella modularis</i>
housesparrow	-	<i>Passer domesticus</i>
little black shag	-	<i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i>
little shag	kawaupaku	<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i>
mallard	-	<i>Anas platyrhynchos</i>
NZ kingfisher	kotare	<i>Halcyon sancta vagans</i>
NZ pipit	pihoihoi	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>

TABLE 2/Continued

Common name	Maori name	Scientific name
NZ shoveler	kuruwhengi	<i>Anas rhynchotis variegata</i>
North Island fantail	piwakawaka	<i>Rhipidura fuliginosa placabilis</i>
North Island fernbird	matata	<i>Bowdleria punctata vealeae</i>
paradise shelduck	putangitangi	<i>Tadorna variegata</i>
pieb shag	kahuhiruhi	<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>
pukeko	-	<i>Porphyrio porphyrio melanotus</i>
red-billed gull	tarapunga	<i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>
redpoll	-	<i>Carduelis flammea</i>
ring-necked pheasant	-	<i>Phasianus colchicus</i>
• royal spoonbill	kotuku-ngutupapa	<i>Platalea regia</i>
silveryeye	tauhou	<i>Zosterops lateralis lateralis</i>
skylark	-	<i>Alauda arvensis</i>
song thrush	-	<i>Turdus philomelos</i>
South Island pied oystercatcher	torea	<i>Haematopus ostralegus finschi</i>
southern black-backed gull	karoro	<i>Larus dominicanus dominicanus</i>
spur-winged plover	-	<i>Vanellus miles novaehollandiae</i>
starling	-	<i>Sturnus vulgaris</i>
tui	-	<i>Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>
welcome swallow	-	<i>Hirundo tahitica neoxena</i>
white-faced heron		<i>Ardea novaehollandiae novaehollandiae</i>
• white heron	kotuku	<i>Egretta alba modesta</i>
white-winged black tern	-	<i>Chlidonias leucopterus</i>
yellowhammer	-	<i>Emberiza citrinella</i>

- denotes a particular national conservation rating.

black-fronted tern: Category B (second highest)
 banded dotterel: Category C (third highest)

australasian bittern: Category O
 royal spoonbill: Category O
 caspian tern: Category O
 white heron: Category O

Category O: Species threatened in NZ, but which are known to be secure in other parts of their range outside NZ.

TABLE 3 Species of marine and estuarine birds listed by OSNZ or being present in downstream Kaituna River mouth habitats (not assumed to be complete).

Common Name	Maori name	Scientific name
arctic skua	-	<i>Stercorarius parasiticus</i>
australasian gannet	takapu	<i>Morus serrator</i>
eastern bar-tailed godwit	kuaka	<i>Limosa lapponica baueri</i>
lesser knot	huahou	<i>Calidris canutus canutus</i>
• NZ dotterel (northern)	tuturiwhatu	<i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i>
Pacific golden plover	-	<i>Pluvialis fulva</i>
red-necked stint	-	<i>Calidris ruficollis</i>
• reef heron	matuku-moana	<i>Egretta sacra sacra</i>
turnstone	-	<i>Arenaria interpres</i>
• variable oystercatcher	toreapango	<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>
• white-fronted tern	tara	<i>Sterna striata</i>
• wrybill	ngutuparore	<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i>

- denotes a particular national conservation rating.

northern NZ dotterel: Category B (second highest)

wrybill: Category B (second highest)

variable oystercatcher: Category C (third highest)

white-fronted tern: Category C (third highest)

reef heron: Category O

TABLE 3A **ADDITIONAL SPECIES RECORDED**
FROM THE LOWER KAITUNA WILDLIFE
MANAGEMENT RESERVE BY GARRICK, 1990

Common name	Maori name	Scientific name
banded rail	moho-pereru	<i>Rallus philippensis assimilis</i>
little egret	-	<i>Egretta garzetta nigripes</i>
marsh crake	koitareke	<i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i>
spotless crake	puweto	<i>Porzana tabuensis plumbea</i>
bellbird	korimako, makomako	<i>Anthornis melanura melanura</i>
long-tailed cuckoo	koekoea	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i>
● New Zealand pigeon	keruru, kukupa	<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>
shining cuckoo	pipiwharauoa	<i>Chrysococcyx lucidus lucidus</i>
morepork	ruru	<i>Ninox novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>

● denotes a particular national conservation rating

New Zealand pigeon : Category B (second highest)

A species in the general vicinity which is not listed in the Tables is eastern rosella (*Platycercus eximius*).

The avifaunal values of the proposed specific Option A3 alignment are discussed below.

On the western side from the existing S.H.2 to approximately the end of Bell Road, and on the eastern side from the eastern bank of the Kaituna River through to the S.H. 2 south of Te Puke, the habitats consist predominantly of grazed pasture, constructed drainage channels, hedgerows and exotic plantings. Those areas are utilised by a range of common native and introduced birds and are similar to extensive areas throughout the Bay of Plenty.

At the end of Bell Road is an oxbow of the Kaituna River which was created as a result of the Lower Kaituna Catchment Scheme.

The southern arm of the oxbow alongside the Niccol property (Plate 4) has developed into a locally notable standing water and wetland habitat with good marginal vegetation along shallower edge areas. A small stand of raupo has developed at the Bell Road end. The habitat is utilised by a large number of ducks, mainly mallard, white-faced heron, welcome swallow, pukeko and shags.

The remainder of the oxbow, from Bell Road around to the River, contains habitat which is similar to that in 22 km of the lower main River although water velocities are lower. Ducks, white-faced heron, welcome swallow, pukeko and shags are all common. The riparian zones lack any substantial cover except at the major bend where there is a grove of tall willows along a section of the true right (southern) bank (Plates 5, 6 & 7).

On a relative scale the Niccol property section of the oxbow, to the south of Bell Road, is a higher value habitat than the northern section.

The Kaituna River crossing, upstream from the existing boat ramp and carpark, is typical with limited marginal vegetation and grazed pasture to its banks (Plates 8 & 9). Shags, especially black shags, are particularly common, with mallards, little shags, pukekos, spur-winged plovers and australasian harriers. A large group of shags utilises rocks in paddocks, water's edge boulders and horizontal wooden fence tops for roosting in this area.

The Waimarae Stream crossing area (within the Wildlife Management Reserve) is also utilised by similar species as above but is adjacent to a large truncated oxbow which was previously the main River channel (Plates 10, 11 & 12). Its southern side consists of grazed pasture but the northern area is heavily vegetated and contains a reasonable diversity of common native and introduced "terrestrial" species. Calls for spotless crane (*Porzana tabuensis plumbea*; puweto) were played in this area with no response.

A duck shooting maimai is situated on the northern bank of the truncated oxbow (Plate 13) close to (60 m) the alignment's crossing of Waimarae Stream. The alignment would, however, pass to the south of the truncated oxbow and there would be no further modification of that habitat.

From the Waimarae Stream the route would traverse grazed paddocks which were clearly vegetated until 1980 and once contained kahikatea forest at least in parts. All this area contains extensive, and often large, drainage channels (Plates 14 - 17).

The nearest area of native tree habitat to the alignment within the Reserve would be a small area of remnant kahikatea and exotics adjacent to the DC grazing lease access track (Plates 18-20). Typical birds utilising that stand were fantail, goldfinch, silvereye, housesparrow, grey warbler and chaffinch, with pukeko, australasian harrier, mallard and paradise shelduck in surrounding grazed areas. No small land snails were located in leaf litter from within this stand. As an avifaunal habitat this small kahikatea stand is of low value and supports species also found in the nearby exotic-dominated scrub and in many urban situations. A larger, more significant area of kahikatea-dominated vegetation is

present nearby to the east.

The largest area of kahikatea (Plate 21) is the pre-eminent area of native forested habitat remaining. There is clearly an opportunity to increase the area of this forest type by retiring surrounding grazing paddocks and re-vegetating with kahikatea. The QE II covenant area (I'Anson Reserve) at Te Puna is a good example of revegetated pasture within Tauranga County.

To the north of the band of young kahikateas, but separated by grazed pasture, is an area of willow-dominated "sand ridge" habitat (Plate 22). (Refer Section 2.2.2.3).

In summary the avifaunal values of the terrestrial areas which would be traversed by the Option A3 "footprint" are low. The wildlife values of the lower Kaituna River (22 km) have been described by Rasch, 1989, as high, but the proposed crossing area does not have any particularly notable values relative to similar areas both upstream and downstream.

2.2.2.2 Notable species

From Tables 2, 3 and 3A there are twelve species with national conservation priority ratings which have been recorded in the local vicinity, including the Kaituna River mouth. Other species are likely in Maketu Estuary habitats but those areas are even more removed from the general roadway area.

Australasian bittern (Category O) has been recorded on the Wildlife Management Reserve area (also refer Section 2.2.2.4) and may use the truncated oxbow, near the proposed Waimarae Stream crossing, for feeding at times.

Banded dotterel (Category C) is most likely to be found in River mouth habitats but may feed in dry pasture areas during the summer, especially paddocks which contain stubble from harvested crops. Banded dotterels breed in the southern North Island and South

Island.

Black-fronted tern (Category B) breeds in the South Island and may feed in Kaituna River habitats in the summer. This tern also feeds on earthworms and grass-grubs in areas of farmland.

Caspian tern (Category O) would utilise the lower Kaituna River for feeding.

Both royal spoonbill and white heron (both Category O) are occasional visitors to lower Kaituna River riparian habitats and areas of wet pasture; both breed in the South Island.

N.Z. pigeon (Category B) has been recorded by Garrick, 1990. Although the area of tall forested habitat is limited, suitable food trees are kahikatea (if fruiting), coprosma, mahoe, cabbage tree, privet and the young leaves and buds of willows. None of the "preferred fruit" species (Heather and Robertson, 1996), miro, tawa, taraire, puriri and pigeonwood, were recorded in the Reserve area by Irving, 1991.

NZ dotterel (Category B), reef heron (Category O), variable oystercatcher (Category C) and wrybill (Category B) are all more likely to utilise River mouth habitats (c. 5 km downstream) for feeding and breeding (except wrybill).

White-fronted tern (Category C) is likely to utilise lower River habitats for feeding, especially, as with caspian tern, during periods of whitebait migration.

The proposed Option A3 alignment would not result in any significant adverse effect on these species, none of which is likely to utilise that specific area on a regular basis.

2.2.2.3 Sand ridge habitat

Between the Waimarae oxbow and the western grove of kahikatea the tall vegetation area consists of sand ridge rather than wetland habitat. That area was traversed during the

survey and found to provide habitat for common native and introduced birds typical of similar scrub habitats e.g. blackbird, grey warbler, hedgesparrow, yellowhammer, magpie, pukeko (common) and pheasant. Rabbits were present. Additional birds recorded in the vicinity of the kahikatea stands were fantail, goldfinch, silvereeye, house sparrow, chaffinch and harrier with mallard and paradise shelduck in adjoining paddocks.

The sand ridge area provides a buffer between the western grazed paddocks and the wetland area on its eastern side. It is understood that Eastern Fish and Game and the Wildfowlers Association wish to develop the sand ridge habitat into an "upland" game hunting area by enhancing the habitat for birds such as california quail, brown quail and pheasant.

California quail were introduced from the USA in 1865 and are typically found in farmland and scrub, or rough pasture associated with manuka (Ogle and Cheyne, 1981; Heather & Robertson, 1996). This quail commonly nests on dry ground in long grass near a thick cover of blackberry, gorse or bracken. In Whangamarino wetland it occurred in crack willow forest, kahikatea stands, swamp margins and beside the main trunk railway (Ogle and Cheyne, 1981).

Brown quail, which were introduced from Australia before 1870, are mainly seen along the dusty edges of country roads as well as in scrub and open rough grassland well supplied with cover (Heather and Robertson, 1996). They nest under thick vegetation such as roadside verges and bracken. In Whangamarino wetland brown quail occurred on a causeway beneath the Kopuku mine cableway and at swamp margins on farmed "islands". (Ogle & Cheyne, 1981).

Pheasant have been introduced from different sources from 1842 onwards and are found mainly in open farm country, usually where pasture or crops join scrub or scrub-covered gullies, and particularly in maize fields. They also occur in partly opened-up fern and manuka country and lupin-covered sand dunes. In order to travel safely from one area to another pheasants need covered communication lanes, such as hedges, windbreaks, and

scrub along roads and watercourses (Robertson, 1985). Nest sites are hayfields, scrub, roadsides, pasture and rough pasture, garden and crop areas, ditch and river banks, and swamps (Robertson, 1985). In Whangamarino wetland they occurred in the wetland area, amongst pampas grass, on wetland margins and in short vegetation in peat bogs. (Ogle & Cheyne, 1981).

When inspected the sand ridge area appeared to present suitable "upland" game habitat potential; whether that situation will continue with the higher water levels provided by the new culvert is unknown. Secondly the actual management of populations of at least pheasant is difficult. Soulsby, 1997 has cautioned that "*Unfortunately, since Westerskov's work (early 1950's), there have been no other studies on pheasant to help us understand their ecology or productivity.*" He noted the need for more ecological work so that there is a better understanding of whether "*there is any habitat manipulation or management that can be undertaken to improve the abundance of wild birds.*"

Therefore while the sand ridge terrain may be favourable to "upland" game, at least at present, some basic ecological questions remain regarding the management of at least populations of pheasants.

The proximity of the roadway and vegetated earth bund to the western edge of the sand ridge area is unlikely to adversely affect existing "upland" game populations.

California quail and pheasant still persist in urban areas of Auckland City beside significant, but unbunded, arterial roadways (pers. obs).

2.2.2.4 Constructed pond habitats

The Eastern Fish and Game Council has constructed a number of large ponds in the southeastern area of the Reserve between the Pah Road right-angled bend and its eastern boundary. Vehicle accessways have also been developed. A considerable area of vegetation (refer Section 21.2) has been cleared to create a waterfowl shooting area. A

number of permanent maimais is present.

The ponded habitats are generally very shallow with soft muddy margins which are gradually becoming colonised by aquatic plants. Flax and cabbage trees have been planted alongside the vehicle tracks in some places (Plates 23 - 28).

Calls for spotless crake were played at several locations in this area with no response, however, they have been recorded in this area (Wildfowlers pers. comm.). On the day of survey, birds recorded utilising the constructed habitats were welcome swallow, australasian pied stilt (5), black shag, mallard (12), pukeko, NZ kingfisher, white-faced heron and spur-winged plover.

In addition, three australasian bittern (Category O species) were observed in the eastern-most section. Bittern had also been recorded in the Reserve by the survey undertaken in the 1982-84 period (Rasch, 1989), and it is understood at least six are present in this area (Wildfowlers pers. comm.). Typical fernbird, bittern and spotless crake habitat in the Whangamarino wetland is shown in Appendix 6.10. (Ogle and Cheyne, 1981).

Ring-necked pheasant was present in peripheral pampas-cabbage tree habitat.

Fernbirds were recorded, and observed with the use of a lure tape, in an area of undisturbed vegetation containing *Coprosma propinqua*, flax, cabbage trees, *Baumea* and *Carex secta* between two of the more northern excavated ponds. Judging from the contiguous vegetation types, it is probable that a significant population of fernbirds is present. The pair located (Plate 25) was immediately adjacent to a vehicle track around one of the ponds.

At present the ponds collectively represent a large area of shallow open standing water, a habitat type which does not appear to have been present in this area to this extent previously. In this regard they have increased habitat diversity significantly.

In the longer term, because of their shallow nature, the ponds are likely to progress towards heavily vegetated wetlands containing rushes, sedges and possibly raupo, ie: the present areas of open standing water are likely to diminish in extent. It is understood, however, that Eastern Fish and Game and the Wildfowlers Association will undertake periodic clearance of emergent vegetation in this area and throughout the Reserve.

At present the ponds clearly provide a large area of habitat for common introduced and native "waterbirds" including game birds, and are utilised by australasian bittern, although this species was also present in the 1982-84 period. (Rasch, 1989)

It is understood that N.Z. shoveler have recently "returned" to this area as a result of pond development.

In terms of assisting the conservation of native species of birds, the constructed ponds provide feeding habitat for australasian bittern; the developed area will not be suitable for breeding until dense growths of raupo, sedges and rushes (reeds) have developed in perimeter areas. A requirement of the D.O.C. is that waterway maintenance ensures that some areas of emergent vegetation remain throughout the Reserve to provide feeding and breeding habitat for wetland birds. The ponds are also utilised intermittently by some of the less commonly observed native wading birds (eg. white heron) and waterfowl, which utilise the ponds for feeding.

Therefore the constructed ponds provide a significant area of waterfowl, wading bird and wetland bird habitat in this area which consisted previously of mainly cabbage tree/grey willow/sedges-flax-grasses with honeysuckle-blackberry-bracken vineland and *Muehlenbeckia complexa* vineland. (Irving, 1991).

The constructed ponds have probably increased the diversity of species using the Reserve and possibly increased the abundance of some, however, no formal comprehensive wildlife survey of the Reserve has yet been completed despite the recommendation of Garrick, 1990. It is clear, however, that the overall diversity of the avifauna in this part

of the Reserve is high and is likely to remain so.

2.2.3 Reptiles and amphibians

No native reptiles or amphibians were located along the proposed alignment. Ponded areas would support green frogs (*Litoria* sp.), the adults and tadpoles of which are predated by wading birds such as white-faced heron, white heron and australasian bittern.

Department of Conservation records indicate that copper skink (*Cyclodina aenea*), which is widespread in the North Island, has been recorded at Mt. Maunganui. Shore skink (*Oligosoma smithi*) occurs in high tide drift and sand dune habitats at the Kaituna River mouth. Moko skink (*Oligosoma moko*) was recorded at Papamoa Beach in 1950 (U14 28020 63820) and represents one of the few mainland populations known (McEwen, 1987).

The proposed Option A3 alignment would not affect any significant native reptile habitat.

2.2.4. Other wildlife

Introduced mammals such as hedgehog, rodents, mustelids (stoat, ferret, weasel) and feral cats (Garrick, 1990) have been recorded in the area. European rabbit (*Orytolagus cuniculus cuniculus*) was observed in the willow-dominated "sand ridge" habitat to the north of the kahikatea stands, and brush-tailed possum (*Trichosurus vulpecula*) sign was recorded in the constructed pond area. Goats were present in the past but it is understood these have been removed.

2.2.5. Conclusions

The proposed alignment Option A3 "footprint" would traverse terrestrial areas of low wildlife value. Its crossing of the Kaituna River would be at a point which does not have any particularly notable wildlife values relative to the 22 km of similar habitat in the lower River.

The most notable wildlife habitat on the western side of the River adjacent to the alignment is the Niccol property section of the Bell Road oxbow which would be avoided.

On the eastern side of the River the most notable adjacent habitat is the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve. Although the alignment would cross the western grazed area of the Reserve, it would avoid all areas of tall vegetation habitat including the remnant kahikatea stands. There is an opportunity to retire surrounding grazed pasture and reinstate the former kahikatea forest vegetation lost as a result of past disturbances (e.g. floods, fires).

The most significant downstream wildlife habitat so defined at present is the Kaituna River mouth area which is c.5 km from the proposed River crossing.

The Eastern Fish and Game Council constructed ponds within the Reserve provide feeding habitat for australasian bittern, but not breeding habitat (bittern was recorded in the Reserve in the 1982-84 wildlife survey) and have increased the wildlife diversity within the Reserve.

In summary, although the Option A3 alignment footprint would be in close proximity to areas with a relatively high wildlife habitat value, no notable habitat would be traversed.

2.3. **Freshwater Habitats**

2.3.1. **Water, Elutriate and Sediment Quality**

2.3.1.1 Introduction

Alignment Option A3 would traverse four natural waterways and a number of constructed drains, some of which are large. The survey was completed prior to the commissioning of the new culvert connecting the Reserve area with the Kaituna River.

Water, elutriate and sediment samples were collected at five sites - EA 1, EA 2N, EA 3, EA 4 and EA 5 (Figure 9). Only the latter station was not directly on the proposed

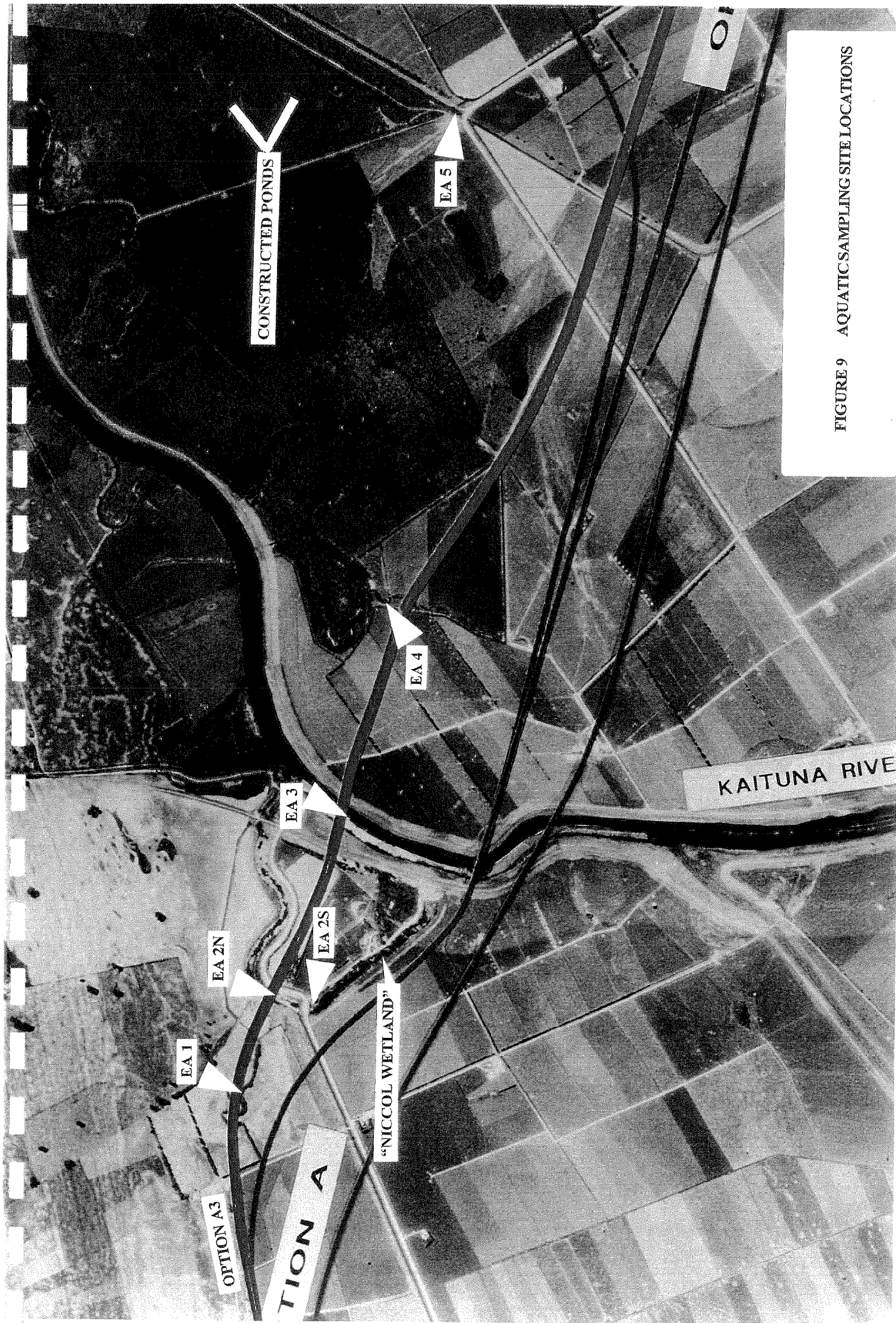


FIGURE 9 AQUATIC SAMPLING SITE LOCATIONS

alignment but was sampled as a representative area of typical drainage habitat and because access could not be gained to the Pamment and Potter properties. Drains within those areas discharge to the Kaituna River via the Site EA 5 channel which forms the southeastern boundary of the Reserve, and which is shown on the 1943 topographic map (refer Figure 5) and as a distinct channel on the 1965 map (Figure 6).

The aim was to determine whether any adverse effects would be likely, or whether there are any areas in which special measures in mitigation would be appropriate during the construction phase, because of a release of potential contaminants from the sediments.

Samples were collected at the following sites shown in Figure 9 :

Site No ^(a)	Plate No.	Location
EA 1	1, 2, 3	By De Lay property northwest of Kaituna River oxbow.
EA 2N	5, 6, 7	Kaituna River oxbow on northern side end Bell Rd straight.
EA 3	9	Kaituna River mainstem upstream from carpark and boat ramp.
EA 4	10, 11, 12	Waimarae Stream in D.O.C. Reserve.
EA 5	16	Main drain at Pah Rd right angled bend.

[(a) aquatic station numbers are constant for all following sections]

The constituents measured included a range of metals, total ammonia, sulphide, total petroleum hydrocarbons and a range of pesticides in recognition of the agricultural and horticultural use of the majority of the area.

Surface sediment samples were collected and analysed for grain size, copper, lead, zinc and total petroleum hydrocarbons. Those results better reflect the longer term influence of sources of contamination, enable the broad "contamination status" of the sediments to be established and can be compared with ten other sites which have been recently sampled in the same manner in the Bay of Plenty area (Bioresearches 1997(a), 1997(b),

1998).

All samples were collected on 3 August 1998.

2.3.1.2 Methods of Analysis

Grain Size

Approximately 100 g of the sediment sample was mixed with water and dispersant (6.6% sodium polymetaphosphate and 1.4% sodium carbonate) and left for twenty four hours.

The mixed sample was then passed through a series of Wentworth sieves using a Rotap sieving machine. Mesh sizes were 3.35 mm, 2.00 mm, 1.18 mm, 0.60 mm, 0.15 mm and 0.063 mm. The less than 0.063 mm fraction was further differentiated using pipette analyses.

Fractions were then dried, cooled and weighed, and are expressed as percentage composition by weight.

Size classes of the sediment fractions are described as follows:

> 3.4 mm	gravel
2.0 - 3.4 mm	granules
1.18 - 2.0 mm	very coarse sand
0.6 - 1.18 mm	coarse sand
0.3 - 0.6 mm	medium sand
0.15 - 0.3 mm	fine sand
0.063 - 0.15 mm	very fine sand
0.004 - 0.063 mm	silt
<0.004 mm	clay

Sediment quality

Metals digestion	Nitric acid/hydrogen peroxide. High pressure microwave. [USEPA method 3051].
Metals	Flame AAS [APHA 3111 B].
Hydrocarbons	Super-critical fluid extraction [USEPA method 3560]. Silica treatment. Measurement by GC-FID [USEPA method 8015 mod].

Water and Elutriate Quality

Metals digestion	Nitric acid (total recoverables). High pressure microwave [USEPA 3015].
Mercury	Cold vapour AAS [APHA 3112 B, modified].
Arsenic	Continuous flow hydride generation AAS [APHA 3114 B, modified].
Other metals	Graphite furnace AAS [APHA 3113 B].
Sulphide	Methylene blue spectrophotometry [APHA 4500-S ²⁻ D].
Ammonia	Phenate spectrophotometry. [APHA 4500-NH ₃].
Hydrocarbons	Methylene chloride extraction. Silica treatment. Measurement by GC-FID [USEPA method 8015 mod].
OC-pesticides	Liquid-liquid extraction; clean-up on florisil; GC-ECD.

Hardness EDTA titration [APHA 2340 C].

Elutriation Method

The elutriate was prepared using water from the site. Sediment and unfiltered water were then combined in a sediment-to-water ratio of 1:4 on a volume basis at room temperature. The mixture was stirred vigorously for thirty minutes with a magnetic stirrer. At ten minute intervals the mixture was also stirred manually to ensure complete mixing. After the thirty minute mixing period the mixture was allowed to settle for one hour. The supernatant was then siphoned off and filtered through a 0.45 µm - mesh filter to remove particulates prior to chemical analysis (USEPA, 1991).

2.3.1.3 Results and Discussion

Water quality results, which indicate background conditions at the time of sampling, are shown in Table 4 and elutriate results in Table 5. Additional water quality data are shown in Table 14. (Section 2.3.2).

Tables 6 and 7 show comparisons between the elutriate results and USEPA criteria for aquatic life protection.

Sediment grain size data and concentrations of copper, lead, zinc and total petroleum hydrocarbons in bulk sediments are shown in Tables 8 and 9.

(A) Ambient Water and Elutriate Quality

Ambient water (Table 4) at all sites was acidic (i.e. pH <7.0) especially in the Waimarae Stream (pH = 4.2). Concentrations of total ammonia were low relative to USEPA chronic criteria but highest in the By De Lay property (EA 1) and Kaituna oxbow (EA 2N). Concentrations of available sulphide were higher than the minimum detection level at all

TABLE 4

AMBIENT WATER QUALITY

Stream/River Water		By De Lay property	Kaituna oxbow	Kaituna River	Waimarae Stream	Pah Rd drain
		EA 1	EA 2N	EA 3	EA 4	EA 5
pH		6.4	6.0	6.4	4.2	5.9
total ammonia	mgN/m ³	790	940	46	72	510
sulphide	mg/m ³	7	4	<1	2	4
arsenic	mg/m ³	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
cadmium	mg/m ³	<0.1	<0.1	<0.1	<0.01	<0.01
chromium	mg/m ³	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
copper	mg/m ³	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
lead	mg/m ³	0.2	2.4	1	<0.1	<0.1
mercury	mg/m ³	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005
nickel	mg/m ³	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
zinc	mg/m ³	10	26	6	180	32
hardness	gCaCO ₃ /m ³	139	133	18	156	166
alpha-BHC	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
beta-BHC	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Lindane	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
delta-BHC	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002

TABLE 4 (continued)

Stream/River Water		By De Lay property	Kaituna oxbow	Kaituna River	Waimarae Stream	Pah Rd drain
		EA 1	EA 2N	EA 3	EA 4	EA 5
Heptachlor	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Aldrin	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Heptachlor epoxide	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endosulfan I	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
4,4'-DDE	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Dieldrin	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endrin	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endosulfan II	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
4,4'-DDD	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endrin aldehyde	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endosulfan sulfate	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
4,4'-DDT	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endrin Ketone	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Methoxychlor	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Chlordane, total	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
total petroleum hydrocarbons	<200	<200	<200	<200	<200	<200

(mg/m³ = ppb; g/m³ = ppm)

TABLE 5

ELUTRIATE WATER QUALITY

		By De Lay property	Kaituna oxbow	Kaituna River	Waimarae Stream	Pah Rd drain
Elutriate		EA 1	EA 2N	EA 3	EA 4	EA 5
pH		7.4	6.6	6.8	6.2	6.4
total ammonia	mgN/m ³	880	1600	2200	1300	410
sulphide	mg/m ³	3	9	5	7	4
arsenic	mg/m ³	13	<1	<1	<1	22
cadmium	mg/m ³	<0.1	<0.1	<0.1	<0.1	<0.1
chromium	mg/m ³	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
copper	mg/m ³	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
lead	mg/m ³	0.2	0.8	0.2	<0.1	<0.1
mercury	mg/m ³	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005
nickel	mg/m ³	<1	2	<1	1	<1
zinc	mg/m ³	15	41	21	130	66
hardness	gCaCO ₃ /m ³	135	149	56	136	117
alpha-BHC	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
beta-BHC	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Lindane	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
delta-BHC	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Heptachlor	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Aldrin	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002

TABLE 5 (continued)

		By De Lay property	Kaituna oxbow	Kaituna River	Waimarae Stream	Pah Rd drain
Elutriate		EA 1	EA 2N	EA 3	EA 4	EA 5
Heptachlor epoxide	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endosulfan I	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
4,4'-DDE	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Dieldrin	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endrin	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endosulfan II	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
4,4'-DDD	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endrin aldehyde	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endosulfan sulfate	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
4,4'-DDT	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Endrin Ketone	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Methoxychlor	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
Chlordane, total	mg/m ³	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002
total petroleum hydrocarbons	<200	<200	<200	<200	<200	<200

(mg/m³ = ppb; g/m³ = ppm)

**TABLE 6 COMPARISON OF ELUTRIATE TOTAL AMMONIA
CONCENTRATIONS WITH USEPA CRITERIA FOR THE
PROTECTION OF AQUATIC LIFE (mgN/m³)**
[Criteria as revised October 1996; converted to mg/m³N]

ACUTE CRITERIA mg/m³ as Nitrogen				
	10°C	15°C	20°C	25°C
pH				
6.50	25482	24660	23838	23838
6.75	23016	22194	22194	21372
7.00	20550	19728	18906	18906
CHRONIC CRITERIA mg/m³ as Nitrogen				
	10°C	15°C	20°C	25°C
pH				
6.50	2219	2055	2055	2055
6.75	2219	2137	2055	2055
7.00	2219	2137	2055	2055
Elutriate Total Ammonia Levels as Nitrogen (mg/m³)				
EA 1	By De Lay property			880
EA 2N	Kaituna oxbow			1600
EA 3	Kaituna River			2200 •
EA 4	Waimarae Stream			1300
EA 5	Pah Rd drain			410

- chronic criteria exceeded; below acute criteria

TABLE 7

**COMPARISON OF ELUTRIATE CONCENTRATIONS
WITH USEPA CRITERIA FOR THE PROTECTION OF AQUATIC LIFE**
(mg/m³ = ppb)

	By De Lay property		Kaituna oxbow		Kaituna River		Waimarae Stream		Pah Rd drain	
	EA 1	USEPA	EA 2N	USEPA	EA 3	USEPA	EA 4	USEPA	EA 5	USEPA
total ammonia	880	RT	1600	RT	2200	RT	1300	RT	410	RT
sulphide	3	RT	9	RT	5	RT	7	RT	4	RT
arsenic	13	190	<1	190	<1	190	<1	190	22	190
cadmium	<0.1	1.47	<0.1	1.42	<0.1	0.29	<0.1	1.61	<0.1	1.69
chromium	<1	11	<1	11	<1	11	<1	11	<1	11
copper	<1	15.7	<1	15.1	<1	2.7	<1	17.3	<1	18.2
lead	0.2	4.8	0.8	4.6	0.2	0.4	<0.1	5.6	<0.1	6.1
mercury	<0.005	0.012	<0.005	0.012	<0.005	0.012	<0.005	0.012	<0.005	0.012
nickel	<1	208.3	2	200.7	<1	36.9	1	229.7	<1	242.1
zinc	15	140.1	41	134.9	21	24.8	130	154.5	66	162.8

NOTES

- (i) RT = refer text
- (ii) hardness values used are ambient stream/river levels
- (iii) chromium as hexavalent Cr; trivalent less toxic

TABLE 8 SEDIMENT GRAIN SIZE RESULTS (PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION)

Grain Size (mm)	Description	By De Lay property	Bell Rd oxbow	Kaituna River	Waimarae Stream	Pah Rd drain
		EA 1	EA 2	EA 3	EA 4	EA 5
>3.35	gravel	19.36	1.77	0.65	16.41	5.17
2.0 - 3.35	granules	13.64	2.98	0.50	7.75	4.70
1.18 - 2.0	very coarse sand	12.89	4.00	0.65	8.43	5.43
0.6 - 1.18	coarse sand	10.81	8.33	1.35	7.64	13.46
0.3 - 0.6	medium sand	13.77	13.31	3.31	5.47	16.85
0.15 - 0.3	fine sand	13.52	9.59	15.63	3.87	24.52
0.063 - 0.15	very fine sand	5.85	18.76	37.45	5.81	6.63
0.0039 - 0.063	silt	9.30	30.44	32.96	25.77	15.05
<0.0039	clay	0.86	10.82	7.50	18.85	8.19

TABLE 9

**COMPARATIVE PERCENTAGES OF
SILT AND CLAY (%)**
(coordinates listed in Table 11)

	% silt & clay
Minden Rd Stream	15.8
Wairoa River - S.H. 2 bridge	52.2
Wairoa River - upper	67.8
Kopurererua Stream - lower	31.7
Cambridge Rd tip - willow wetland	91.6
Omokoroa adjacent S.H. 2 - Bruning property	24.8
"Mangawhai Stream" - Omokoroa	8.1
Te Puna Stream - S.H. 2 bridge	35.9
QE II Reserve - Te Puna	16.1
Te Puna adjacent S.H. 2 - Fitchl property	47.1
Mean	39.1
SD	26.1

sites except the Kaituna River (EA 3). Waters were also “hard” at all sites except the River.

Ambient levels of arsenic, cadmium, chromium, copper, mercury, nickel, pesticides and total petroleum hydrocarbons were low throughout.

Concentrations of lead were low except at the Kaituna oxbow (EA 2N) where a relatively high level was recorded. The USEPA chronic aquatic life protection criterion was not exceeded, however, as a result of the high water hardness which buffers potentially toxic effects.

Zinc concentrations were low at all stations except the Waimarae Stream. There the recorded level was high and exceeded both the chronic and acute (170.6 mg/m^3) criteria. The stream appeared to be “flowing” from the nearby truncated oxbow (Plate 13) but the reason for the high level was not obvious.

The elutriate concentrations (Table 5) which reflect the potential for the release of dissolved constituents following sediment disturbance, and hence the potential for direct adverse downstream effects, are shown in Table 5. At all sites there was an increase in pH, including the Waimarae Stream site where an increase from 4.2 to 6.2 was recorded.

A significant increase in total ammonia concentrations occurred at all sites except the Pah Rd Drain (EA 5). The resulting concentration at EA 3 (Kaituna River) would exceed the chronic aquatic life protection level, prior to mixing, at water temperatures of 15°C and above (Table 6). Sulphide levels increased at EA 2N, EA 3 and EA 4 only, with the highest occurring at the Kaituna oxbow (EA 2N) and Waimarae Stream (EA 4). The toxicity of sulphides derives mainly from H_2S rather than from the hydrosulphide (HS^-) or sulphide (S^{2-}) ions. At pH 9 about 99% of the sulphide is in the form of HS^- , at pH 7 it is equally divided between HS^- and H_2S , but at pH 5 about 99 percent is present as H_2S which is the more toxic.

A guideline of 2 mg/m³ of undissociated H₂S is considered protective as H₂S is rapidly oxidised in well-aerated water to sulphates and elemental sulphur. At all sites the concentration would be higher than 2 mg/m³ prior to any mixing with the receiving waters occurring (i.e. reasonable mixing). At Sites EA 2N and EA 4, especially the latter (Waimarae Stream), the ambient pH is low suggesting that most of the sulphide could be present in the more toxic form in the immediate area of any sediment disturbance. Isolation of the crossing areas would prevent adverse downstream effects.

Elutriate levels of cadmium, chromium and copper were low and unchanged from background concentrations. Significant increases in the levels of arsenic occurred at EA 1 (By De Lay property) and EA 5 (Pah Rd Drain) but the resulting concentrations remained well below the aquatic life protection criterion (Table 7).

No change or a decrease in the levels of lead, mercury, pesticides and total petroleum hydrocarbons occurred throughout, while a minor increase in nickel occurred at Sites EA 2N and EA 4; both were inconsequential relative to the aquatic life protection criteria.

Zinc elutriate concentrations showed increases above ambient at all sites except EA 4. All resulting levels remained below the aquatic life protection criteria but that at EA 4 (Waimarae Stream) was relatively close and the highest of all five sites, while that at EA 3 (Kaituna River) was also just below the criterion.

In summary, only total ammonia at the Kaituna River Site (EA 3) exceeded the chronic criterion for aquatic life protection in the elutriate. Concentrations of zinc in elutriate at both EA 3 and EA 4 (Waimarae Stream) were close to, but below, the chronic criteria, but the ambient concentration of zinc in Waimarae Stream was higher than the acute criterion. The relatively high elutriate levels (total ammonia, zinc) would require only minimal dilution to reduce their levels to those significantly below aquatic life protection criteria.

The presence of large quantities of organic matter in the Waimarae Stream may have buffered the potentially significant effect of the high zinc concentration as a reasonably diverse biota was present.

(B) Sediment Grain Size

Grain size results are shown in Table 8.

Sediments at EA 1 (By De Lay property) were reasonably well sorted but silts were dominant at EA 2N (Bell Rd oxbow) and the Waimarae Stream (EA 4).

The Kaituna River Site (EA 3) consisted of very fine sand and silt, while fine and medium sands dominated the Pah Rd Drain (EA 5) sediments.

The proportions of silts and clays at the five sites were as follows:-

		% silt & clay
EA 1	By De Lay property	10.2
EA 2N	Kaituna oxbow	41.3
EA 3	Kaituna River	40.5
EA 4	Waimarae Stream	44.6
EA 5	Pah Rd Drain	23.2

Based on results from other Bay of Plenty habitats (Table 9) the proportions of silt and clay at EA 1 and EA 5 are relatively low while those at the remaining stations are about average.

(C) Sediment Quality

Sediment quality results are shown in Table 10; comparative results are presented in Table 11.

TABLE 10 RESULTS OF SEDIMENT QUALITY ANALYSES (mg/kg dry wt)

	By De Lay property	Kaituna oxbow	Kaituna River	Waimarae Stream	Pah Rd drain	Guideline Levels	
	EA 1	EA 2N	EA 3	EA 4	EA 5	TEL	PEL
copper	5.6	16	5.7	20	2.3	35.7	197
lead	3.4	7.9	8.6	15	6.6	35	91.3
zinc	● 167	97	45	89	50	123	315
TPH	<15	<15	<15	<15	44	NS	NS

TPH = total petroleum hydrocarbons

NS = not stated

● = above TEL but below PEL

TABLE 11

COMPARATIVE SEDIMENT QUALITY

(mg/kg dry wt)

	copper	lead	zinc	TPH
Minden Rd Stream (U14 814 845)	3.9	7.4	27	51
Wairoa River - S.H. 2 bridge	5.9	15	40	<15
Wairoa River - upper (U14 836 829)	7.1	13	55	423
Kopurererua Stream - lower (U14 869 839)	3.8	11	54	<15
Cambridge Rd tip - willow wetland (U14 865 837)	25	38 ●	178 ●	20
Omokoroa adjacent S.H. 2 - Bruning property (U14 764 884)	14	19	124 ●	<15
“Mangawhai Stream” - Omokoroa (U14 768 878)	5.8	7.2	29	<15
Te Puna Stream - S.H. 2 bridge	11	45 ●	38	83
QE II Reserve - Te Puna (U14 804 850)	7.2	12	45	<15
Te Puna adjacent S.H. 2 - Fitchl property (U14 795 848)	7.5	15	52	<15
TEL Guideline	35.7	35	123	-
PEL Guideline	197	91.3	315	-

The results in Table 10 are compared with the draft interim Canadian freshwater sediment quality guidelines (Smith *et al*, 1996).

The TEL (threshold effect level) represents a concentration below which adverse effects are expected to occur rarely; this value has been recommended as the interim Canadian sediment quality guideline. The PEL (probable effect level) defines the level above which adverse effects are expected to occur frequently. Concentrations between the TEL and PEL are expected to be associated with adverse biological effects occasionally.

Only zinc at EA 1 (By De Lay property) exceeded the TEL guideline but was well below the PEL level. That concentration is likely to have been a result of quantities of inorganic refuse in the stream above the sampling location (Plate 1).

The zinc concentration at EA 2N (Kaituna oxbow) was also close to the criterion but the reason for this level was not obvious.

Copper, lead and zinc were all relatively high in the Waimarae Stream (EA 4) and the zinc concentrations in ambient water and elutriate were also relatively high at that site. The highest copper-lead-zinc "load" (i.e. sum of concentrations) was at EA 1 (By De Lay property) followed by EA 4 (Waimarae Stream). The lowest "loads" were at EA 3 (Kaituna River) and EA 5 (Pah Rd Drain).

In comparison with other results from Bay of Plenty habitats (Table 11), the zinc concentration at EA 1 (By De Lay property) is similar to that at the Cambridge Rd tip. The copper level in Waimarae Stream sediment is also similar to that recorded in the tip wetland area, and that at EA 2N (Kaituna oxbow) is also relatively high.

Similarly the lead concentration in Waimarae Stream sediments is relatively high and similar to sites adjacent to State Highway 2 (eg. Wairoa bridge, Bruning property, Fitchl property and QE II Reserve).

TABLE 12 **COMPARATIVE SEDIMENT QUALITY DATA**
 (mg/kg dry wt)

(a) Auckland Streams (Bioresearches, 1996) (n = 7)	copper	lead	zinc
mean	15.53	12.24	51.14
SD	5.09	5.34	16.77
SE	1.93	2.02	6.34
95% range	10.81 - 20.25	7.30 - 17.18	35.63 - 66.65

(b) Table 11 Streams Bioresearches, 1997 (a), 1997(b), 1998) (n = 9)	copper	lead	zinc
mean	7.36	16.07	51.56
SD	3.29	11.47	29.02
SE	1.09	3.82	9.67
95% range	4.85 - 9.87	7.26 - 24.88	29.27 - 73.85

(c) This survey (n = 5)	copper	lead	zinc
mean	9.92	8.30	89.60
SD	7.63	4.24	48.99
SE	3.41	1.89	21.91
95% range	0.45 - 19.39	3.05 - 13.55	28.78 - 150.42

Both copper and zinc levels in Waimarae Stream are well above the averages for the stations in Table 11 (Refer Table 12) while the lead concentration is similar. Clearly there is an unexplained source of contamination in the Waimarae Stream area (which appears to drain from the truncated oxbow). Note that both copper and zinc levels were higher in the Waimarae Stream than at the Te Puna Stream bridge, but lead and petroleum hydrocarbons were higher at the latter.

Although total petroleum hydrocarbons were recorded at the Pah Rd Drain site the level is relatively low.

Table 12 summarises sediment quality data from (a) stream sites beside well-used sealed roadways just north of Auckland City, (b) the Table 11 sites, and (c) the habitats sampled in this survey.

Acknowledging the difference in sample number, it is unexpected that the only marked difference between the average concentrations is the clearly higher copper level in the "Auckland streams". The average levels of copper, lead and zinc recorded in this survey (c), are not markedly different, statistically, from those recorded in the Table 11 streams, or from the levels recorded in (a).

In summary the sediments in the proposed crossing areas have unexpectedly moderate levels of contaminants, with the exception of the Kaituna River mainstem as a possible result of a better flushing regime. Zinc levels are moderate-high at the By De Lay property site, Kaituna oxbow and Waimarae Stream, copper concentrations are moderate in the Kaituna oxbow and Waimarae Stream, and the lead level is also moderate in the Waimarae Stream. Petroleum hydrocarbons were recorded in the Pah Rd Drain.

2.3.1.4 Conclusions

Ambient waters at most of the proposed crossing sites are slightly acidic but Waimarae Stream has a very low pH. Concentrations of potential contaminants in ambient waters

are generally low and within the chronic aquatic life protection criteria. An exception is zinc in the Waimarae Stream which is high and exceeds the acute criterion. Adverse effects may be buffered by the quantities of organic material present.

Elutriate concentrations of total ammonia increased at all stations but only exceeded the chronic aquatic life protection criterion at the Kaituna River site. Sulphide levels would present a potential threat to habitats, prior to any dilution occurring, at the Kaituna oxbow and Waimarae Stream sites. Dissolved oxygen levels were also low at both these sites (Refer Table 14; Section 2.3.2).

Although some constituent concentrations increased in the elutriate, as compared with background levels, no metal, pesticide or petroleum hydrocarbon would be expected to present a threat to adjacent habitats on disturbance of the sediments. Zinc concentrations at the Kaituna River and Waimarae Stream sites were close to the chronic criteria.

Sediments contained relatively low proportions of silts and clays at the By De Lay property and Pah Rd Drain sites, and average proportions at the remaining sites.

Sediment quality analyses for copper, lead, zinc and petroleum hydrocarbons, indicated that only zinc at the By De Lay property site exceeded the aquatic life protection guideline, but that zinc at the Kaituna oxbow site was also close to that guideline level. The highest copper-lead-zinc load was in the By De Lay property followed by the Waimarae Stream.

In comparison with other results from Bay of Plenty sites, zinc at the By De Lay property site, and copper at the Waimarae Stream and Kaituna oxbow sites are relatively high. Lead at the Waimarae Stream site is at a similar concentration to sites near State Highway 2. In general sediments at the proposed crossing sites contain unexpectedly moderate levels of copper, lead and zinc in particular, with the exception of the Kaituna River mainstem where relatively low levels were recorded.

2.3.2. Aquatic Biota

2.3.2.1. Introduction

Aquatic macroinvertebrates were sampled at six locations, between Bell Road and Pah Road (Figure 9).

2.3.2.2. Methods

Macroinvertebrate samples were collected using a hand net (aperture 400 mm, mesh 1.0 mm), taking at least six one metre sweeps of marginal vegetation at each site.

Macroinvertebrate samples were returned to the laboratory, sorted, preserved in 70% alcohol, counted and identified to the lowest taxa practicable.

The water quality at each site was assessed visually (for clarity) using a black disc tube and readings were taken for temperature, dissolved oxygen and conductivity.

Fish were surveyed using a backpack electric fishing machine (EFM 300). This machine temporarily stuns the fish so they can be caught without damage. Fish were identified and their length estimated before being returned to their habitat. Freshwater fish database forms were completed at each site and are included in Appendix 6.7.

The New Zealand Freshwater Fish database (serviced by NIWA, Hamilton) was searched for fish records from the Kaituna River catchment. These data and those of Young, 1997 were used to supplement data obtained in this survey.

2.3.2.3. Results

The overall characteristics of the six sites sampled in this area are shown in Table 13. Water quality readings are given in Table 14. Benthic macroinvertebrate results are shown in Appendix 6.8.

TABLE 13 Freshwater Habitat and Community Characteristics.

Site and Description	Riparian Vegetation	Water Flow	Gradient	Predominant Substrate	Macroinvertebrates	Fishes
EA 1 stream	grass/scrub	permanent ?	low	mud	10 taxa; ostracods and mosquito larvae common; pond-skater, beetle larvae and diptera larvae present	eels
EA2N oxbow	grass/scrub	permanent	low	mud	3 taxa; snail, leech and diptera present	eels, mosquito fish
EA2S oxbow	grass/ scrub	permanent	low	mud	1 taxa; caddisfly larvae	eels, mosquito fish
EA 3 river mainstem	grass	permanent	low	mud	10 taxa; shrimp and snails abundant; amphipod, damselfly, mayflies, stonefly, caddisfly and diptera present	giant bully, shortfinned eel
EA 4 isolated stream	grass	permanent	low	mud	9 taxa; diptera abundant; worms, damselflies, beetles present	no fish recorded (eel in adjacent drain)
EA 5 drain	grass	permanent	low	mud	4 taxa; damselflies abundant; snail and dipteran present	mosquito fish

TABLE 14 Water Quality.

Site	Temperature (°C)	Clarity (cm)	Dissolved Oxygen		Conductivity (µS/cm)
			g/m ³	% saturation	
EA 1	7.3	37	5.3	44	447
EA2N	10.2	27	1.6	15	274
EA2S	12.0	27	1.1	10	283
EA 3	11.1	73.5	9.4	86	117
EA 4	12.3	11	3.2	30	452
EA 5	13.9	31	8.3	80	333

(A) Site EA1 (Plates 1, 2 & 3)Habitat Conditions

Site EA1 was situated on an isolated section of an old stream in open farmland. The stream was still with a low gradient channel, was muddy bottomed and on average 3.5 metres wide. It had a fairly uniform average depth of 0.4 m. Cattle had access to the whole length of the stream. A large amount of instream organic debris (willow twigs) was present. Water clarity was poor- moderate with a black disc reading of 37 cm and very high conductivity (447 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$). Dissolved oxygen concentration and saturation were poor (5.3 g/m^3 ; 44%). Water temperature was low (7.3 $^{\circ}\text{C}$), and the stream may have been spring fed. Riparian vegetation consisted of a line of willow trees undergrown by pastoral grasses, providing light shade to the stream bed. In the upper section of stream a large amount of rubbish (including wood, car parts and dead cows) had been dumped.

Macrophytes present within the stream included duckweed (*Lemna minor*), starwort (*Callitriche stagnalis*), and watercress (*Rorippa* sp). These macrophytes provided good cover for fish. The green filamentous alga *Vaucheria* sp was abundant.

Macroinvertebrate Communities

Ten taxa were found at this site, although overall abundance was low. The community was dominated by ostracods. Other taxa present included dipteran larvae (mosquito larvae (*Culex* sp), chironomid midge larvae, and Stratiomyidae larvae), beetle larvae (Coleoptera) and the pond-skater *Microvelia* sp. The pond-skater, mosquito larvae, and the dipteran larvae (Stratiomyidae) are commonly found in slow flowing or still waters.

Fish

The only fish species found at this site were several eels (*Anguilla* sp) ranging from 250-400 mm.

(B) Site EA2N (Plates 5, 6 & 7)Habitat Conditions

This site was situated on an isolated oxbow of the Kaituna River, on the northern side of Bell Road. The oxbow was approximately thirty metres wide, surrounded by open farmland, although was bordered in patches by willows and scrub. The visible substrate was entirely mud and water clarity was poor with a black disc reading of 27 cm. Dissolved oxygen levels were very low (1.6 g/m³; 15% saturation). Water conductivity was measured at 274 µS/cm. Cattle had no access to the oxbow.

Because of the lack of shade, macrophytes were dense at the shallow margins of the oxbow, providing good cover for fish. The aquatic plants present consisted of duckweed (*Lemna minor*), hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum*), *Myriophyllum aquaticum*, pondweed (*Potamogeton ochreatus*), starwort (*Callitriche stagnalis*) and oxygen weed (*Egeria densa*). Algae found within the oxbow were the red filamentous alga *Compsopogon hookeri*, and the green filamentous algae *Spirogyra* sp and *Microspora* sp.

Macroinvertebrate Communities

Three taxa were collected from this site, although the sample comprised only four individuals. Two snails (*Lymnaea columella*), a leech (Hirudinea), and a chironomid midge larva were found.

Fish

Fish species found at this site were eels (*Anguilla* sp) and mosquito fish (*Gambusia affinis*).

(C) Site EA2S (Plate 4)Habitat Conditions

This site was situated on an isolated oxbow of the Kaituna River, on the southern side of Bell Road. The oxbow was approximately thirty metres wide, surrounded by open farmland, although was bordered in patches by willows and scrub. The visible substrate was entirely mud and water clarity was poor with a black disc reading of 27 cm. Dissolved oxygen levels were very low (1.1 g/m³; 10 % saturation). Conductivity readings were 283 µS/cm. Cattle had no access to the oxbow.

Because of the lack of shade, macrophytes were dense at the shallow margins of the oxbow, providing good cover for fish. The aquatic plants consisted of duckweed (*Lemna minor*), hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum*), *Myriophyllum aquaticum*, pondweed (*Potamogeton ochreatus*), water purslane (*Ludwigia palustris*), starwort (*Callitriche stagnalis*) and oxygen weed (*Egeria densa*). Algae found within the oxbow were the red filamentous alga *Compsopogon hookeri*, and the green filamentous algae *Spirogyra* sp and *Microspora* sp.

Macroinvertebrate Communities

Only one taxa, the caddisfly *Paroxyethira hendersoni* was found at this site.

Fish

Fish species found at this site were eels (*Anguilla* sp) and mosquito fish (*Gambusia affinis*).

(D) Site EA3 (Plate 9)

Habitat Conditions

Site EA3 was on the mainstem of the Kaituna River, approximately 100 m upstream of Bell Road. The river at this site was approximately sixty metres wide, being bounded by pasture on both sides, with a predominantly muddy substrate. The river water was well oxygenated (9.4 g/m³; 86% saturation) with good water clarity (74 cm). Water temperature was 11.1°C and conductivity was measured at 117 µS/cm.

Macrophytes found at the rivers edge were hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum*), the oxygen weeds *Elodea canadensis*, *Lagarosiphon major*, *Egeria densa* and the curly leaved pondweed (*Potamogeton crispus*).

Macroinvertebrate Communities

Ten taxa were found at this site on the Kaituna River mainstem associated with the marginal aquatic plants. The freshwater shrimp (*Paratya curvirostris*) was the most abundant taxon, followed by the snail *Potamopyrgus antipodarum*. Other taxa found in small numbers at this site were the amphipod (*Paracalliope* sp), the mayflies *Mauiulus luma* and *Zephlebia* sp, the stonefly *Zelandobius* sp, the caddis *Pycnocentria evecta*, the lepidopteran *Hygraula nitens* and Chironomidae larvae.

Fish

Fish found at the river margins were shortfinned eels (*Anguilla australis*) and giant bullies (*Gobiomorphus gobioides*).

(E) Site EA4 (Plates 10, 11 & 12)

Habitat Conditions

This stream was an isolated section of farm stream/ wetland (Waimarae Stream), situated

near an oxbow wetland. The stream at this site was still, and was blocked from the oxbow by a farm crossing without a culvert. The stream was wide (2.5 metres), fairly shallow (average 0.4 m), muddy bottomed, with very poor water clarity (11 cm black disc visibility) and low oxygen levels (3.2 g/m³; 30% saturation). Water conductivity was very high (452 µS/cm).

Raupo (*Typha orientalis*) and reeds were the predominant aquatic plants. Other macrophytes included water purslane (*Ludwigia palustris*) and starwort (*Callitriche stagnalis*). The green filamentous alga *Microspora* sp was common at this site.

Macroinvertebrate Communities

Nine taxa were found at Site EA4, dominated by dipteran larvae (Chironomidae midge larvae and *Culex* sp, the mosquito larvae). Other taxa present were beetle larvae (*Rhantus pulverosus*, Dytiscidae and Scirtidae larvae), worms (Oligochaeta), the red damselfly (*Xanthocnemis zealandica*), the blue damselfly (*Austrolestes colenisonis*) and the pond-skater (*Microvelia* sp).

Fish

No fish were recorded at this site, although one eel (*Anguilla* sp.) was found in an adjacent drain.

(F) Site EA5 (Plate 16)

Habitat Conditions

This site was located on a large drain that flowed adjacent to Pah Road. The drain flows entirely through farmland, before discharging into the Kaituna River. The drain was approximately six metres wide and very uniform in width, and estimated to be between 1.5 to 2 metres deep, slow flowing, with a muddy substrate. Water clarity was poor

(31 cm visibility) although oxygen levels were good (8.3 g/m³; 80% saturation). The water temperature was 13.9°C and conductivity was 333 µS/cm.

The aquatic plants present at the canal margins were duckweed (*Lemna minor*) and hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum*). The green filamentous algae *Oedogonium* sp and *Microspora* sp were present at this site.

Macroinvertebrate Communities

Four taxa were collected from this site, the dominant taxon being the red damselfly larvae (*Xanthocnemis zealandica*). The other taxa found were the snail *Physa fontinalis*, the blue damselfly (*Austrolestes colenisonis*) and a Stratiomyidae (Diptera) larva.

Fish

Due to vertical banks approximately two metres high, electric fishing was impractical at this site. One mosquito fish (*Gambusia affinis*) was caught in a net sweep of aquatic plants.

2.3.2.4. Previous Fish Surveys

Fish previously found within the Kaituna River catchment (NIWA Freshwater Fish Database, searched 2/7/98; Young, 1997) are listed in Table 15. These fish were recorded during the period from 1909 to 1998. The 'lower river' includes the river and associated streams below State Highway 2 (S.H. 2) and the 'upper river' includes the area above S.H. 2.

TABLE 15 Fish from the Kaituna River Catchment.

Fish Species	Common Name	Lower Kaituna River	Upper Kaituna River
<i>Anguilla australis</i>	Shortfinned eel	✓	✓
<i>A. dieffenbachii</i>	Longfinned eel	✓	✓
<i>Aldrichetta forsteri</i>	Yellow eyed mullet	✓	-
<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>	Torrentfish	✓	-
<i>Carassius auratus</i>	Goldfish	✓	✓
<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>	Giant kokopu	✓	-
<i>G. brevipinnis</i>	Koaro	✓	✓
<i>G. fasciatus</i>	Banded kokopu	✓	✓
<i>G. maculatus</i>	Inanga	✓	✓
<i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Mosquitofish	✓	✓
<i>Geotria australis</i>	Lamprey	-	✓
<i>Gobiomorphus cotidianus</i>	Common bully	✓	✓
<i>G. huttoni</i>	Redfinned bully	✓	✓
<i>G. gobioides</i>	Giant bully	✓	-
<i>Mugil cephalus</i>	Grey mullet	✓	-
<i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>	Rainbow trout	✓	✓
<i>Retropinna retropinna</i>	Common smelt	✓	✓
<i>Rhombosolea retiaria</i>	Black flounder	✓	-
<i>Salmo trutta</i>	Brown trout	-	✓
<i>Salvelinus fontinalis</i>	Brook char	-	✓

A specific survey was completed within the Reserve in December 1997 (Young, 1997) when the water level in the area had been drawn down to enable works during the summer. Most of the Reserve was dry and little open water fish habitat remained; species recorded at the Waimarae Bend were long-finned eels, common bullies and unidentified carp. Although no galaxiids were recorded the new culvert should increase the entry of native fish to the Reserve.

2.3.2.5. Conclusions

The aquatic habitats at the sites surveyed were characterised by their low gradient flow, muddy substrate and lack of shading riparian vegetation. All sites were present in open, grazed paddocks. Sites EA1, EA2N, EA2S, EA4 and EA5 all had little or no visible flow, poor water clarity and very low oxygen levels (with the exception of Site EA5 with 8.3 g/m³; 80% saturation). Site EA3 on the Kaituna River mainstem had moderate clarity, and good dissolved oxygen levels (9.4 g/m³; 86% saturation).

Macroinvertebrate communities at most sites generally had low richness and moderate overall abundance. The two sites on the Kaituna River oxbow (Sites EA2S and EA2N) had the lowest taxa and overall abundance of the sites, with one and three taxa found respectively. Site EA3 on the Kaituna River mainstem had the highest overall abundance, due to a high abundance of freshwater shrimps (*Paratya curvirostris*) and high numbers of the snail *Potamopyrgus antipodarum*. The dominant taxon varied between the other sites; ostracods were abundant at Site EA1, chironomid larvae at Site EA4 and the red damselfly (*Xanthocnemis* sp) at Site EA5. Few sensitive EPT taxa were present; one caddisfly (Trichoptera) at Site EA2S (the only macroinvertebrate present at that site) and two mayflies (Ephemeroptera), one stonefly (Plecoptera), and one caddisfly at Site EA3 (Kaituna River mainstem). EPT taxa comprised only 1.8% of sample abundance at Site EA3. The poor habitat quality, slow flowing or still waters and muddy substrates at most sites are considered to be the limiting habitat characteristics for these macroinvertebrates.

Eels were recorded at four of the five sites surveyed, with no fish being recorded at Site EA4. The introduced mosquito fish (*Gambusia affinis*) was found at three sites and the giant bully (*Gobiomorphus gobioides*) was found in the Kaituna River mainstem only (Site EA3). In general, all sites had a low diversity of fish species present.

This survey found that apart from the Kaituna River mainstem (Site EA3) the aquatic ecological values of the sites assessed were low. Degradation of the sites through farming practices and river diversion has resulted in conditions only suitable for a small range of fish and macroinvertebrates considered to be tolerant of conditions typical of low quality habitats, eg. poor water clarity, low dissolved oxygen and a mud substrate. However, the list of fish species in the river catchment (Table 15) highlights the importance of the lower Kaituna River as a pathway for the many diadromous native fish (that move between marine and freshwaters) found in this catchment and the better access of fish to the Reserve via the new culvert is likely to enhance the fisheries values of that area significantly.

3. IMPACTS OF PROPOSED DEVELOPMENTS

- 3.1. No notable vegetation, special vegetation site or community of rare or endangered plants would be traversed by the alignment Option A3 footprint.
- 3.2. The alignment has been altered to avoid the small western stand of remnant kahikatea which is presently surrounded by grazed pasture. The traverse would be well to the west of the pre-eminent remnant stand of kahikatea in the local area.
- 3.3. No notable wildlife habitats would be destroyed by the traverse of the alignment Option A3 footprint. On the western side of the Kaituna River, the Niccol property oxbow wetland would be avoided. The crossing of the Kaituna mainstem would be in an area of typical River habitat which is grazed to its edges, and has no particularly notable features relative to large similar areas both upstream and downstream.
- 3.4. Within the grazed area of the DoC Reserve the route would avoid the truncated oxbow near Waimarae Stream and all taller vegetation habitat around the oxbow's margins. The bund toe would be 60 metres from the water's edge.
- 3.5. The traverse of alignment Option A3 would not impact on any notable wildlife habitat within the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve. The areas within the Reserve which have high ecological values are in the northeastern section well away (c.1200m) from the alignment. The area of the Reserve closest to the alignment is that managed by the Eastern Fish and Game Council. That area has lower relative ecological values overall; ongoing modifications to those habitats are clearly permitted under the present Reserve management strategy, and it is understood that that section is a popular shooting area for both waterfowl and "upland" gamebirds.
- 3.6. The presence of alignment Option A3 would not diminish the wildlife values of the adjacent area or the resource values of the higher ecological value habitats in the northeastern section of the Reserve. Clearly the presence of the road would increase the

potential for road kill of wildlife especially in the open section to the east of the 4.5 metre high bund. The presence of the bund along the western side of the Reserve may decrease the potential in that area as birds would gain altitude to clear both the bund and vegetation along the bund crest.

- 3.7. The areas of tall vegetation habitat immediately adjacent to the alignment are utilised by mainly common species of birds, including gamebirds. Some would be displaced from the area during the construction phase but, provided the habitat is retained, can be expected to utilise the area once construction activities have ceased. Most of the potentially affected species are also found in urban and urban fringe habitats, including gamebirds such as california quail, ring-necked pheasant and waterfowl. It is noted that both fernbird and australasian bittern have persisted in the southeastern section of the Reserve despite the relatively recent construction activities and the understood significant use of firearms in that area in particular.
- 3.8. As the final alignment for Option A3 avoids intrusion into any tall vegetation (i.e. willow-dominated or kahikatea), any "edge effects" would be much reduced. It is likely that the major "edge effects" on the previously modified perimeters of the Reserve have already occurred as a result of land clearance which began in about the 1940's.
- 3.9. The alignment would not result in any habitat fragmentation as all the remaining habitat would be retained. The only possible barrier created would be to introduced mammals, some of which are significant predators of native wildlife; the presence of the road would not necessarily be negative in terms of the dispersal of those species, rather the opposite may apply. As no management plan has been finalised the intended level of predator control in the Reserve is not known. It is understood, however, that the Wildfowlers Association wishes to have good road access, suitable for machinery, to all parts of the Reserve.

- 3.10. The presence of the roadway would increase the quantity of vehicle-derived litter in this area. The public commonly uses bridges in particular as refuse disposal points. There are means of reducing the quantities of litter entering the Reserve area (refer Section 4.2).
- 3.11. No notable aquatic habitat would be destroyed by Option A3. The By De Lay property, Kaituna oxbow, Waimarae Stream and eastern drain habitats are all poor quality habitats with low dissolved oxygen levels, muddy substrates, low macroinvertebrate diversity and only moderate abundance, and with a low diversity of fishes. Construction works in those areas would not destroy any significant aquatic habitat.

The Kaituna River habitat is a higher quality area at the proposed crossing point and part of an important migration pathway for fish. A bridge with set back abutments (stopbank to stopbank) would reduce adverse effects to the minimum practicable and there would be no disruption to migratory pathways. At present the riparian edge areas at the proposed crossing point consist essentially of grazed pasture and have no significant habitat value; riparian planting would enhance the ecological values of this section of the River significantly.

- 3.12. The range of chemical analyses indicated that unexpectedly moderate levels of at least copper, lead and zinc contamination are present. Sediments generally contain low to moderate proportions of silts and clays but sediment disturbance would release concentrations of total ammonia (Kaituna River site) and sulphide (Kaituna oxbow, Waimarae Stream in particular), which have the potential to result in adverse downstream effects prior to reasonable mixing.

Rapid dilution is likely at the River site. Zinc concentrations at the By De Lay property, copper and lead in Waimarae Stream and copper at the Kaituna oxbow site are relatively high, and works areas would need to be isolated from the Kaituna River mainstem to mitigate against adverse downstream effects. Most of the areas crossed by Option A3, with the exception of the River mainstem, could be physically isolated (i.e. By De Lay property, Waimarae Stream, eastern drains), while a control gate is present downstream

from the Kaituna oxbow crossing. While any instream works in the latter are likely to result in adverse water quality effects, that area is a poor quality habitat relative to habitats in the River mainstem.

In general, and providing the contaminated areas can be isolated during the construction phase, any adverse effects would be minor and no worse than the effects of natural river flood flows.

- 3.13. The completed roadway would be a source of contaminated runoff. To the west of the Kaituna River there is sufficient terrain in which to develop wetland buffer areas for stormwater runoff. Those areas could also be developed to reflect the previous vegetation and habitat types of the former Te Parapara Swamp (Figure 4A).

Similar areas of wetland could be developed on the eastern side of the River with the aim of providing buffers prior to stormwater being directed to the existing large drains (e.g. aquatic Site EA5). In this manner most of the stormwater from the eastern section of the roadway could be directed to the large drain forming the southeastern boundary of the Reserve, thus avoiding any direct impingement of roadway-derived stormwater on the Reserve habitats. Attenuation of roadway-derived particulates could also be achieved by utilising the existing constructed drains as retention areas. It is understood that these large drains are separated from the hydraulic regime of the Reserve wetland habitats, which required the pumped addition of River water during the summer to maintain their wetland characteristics, but now have direct contact with the River via the new culvert.

It would not be appropriate to use roadway-derived stormwater for additional maintenance of the Reserve wetland areas or to use those areas for stormwater treatment. There is an opportunity, however, to isolate this operational effect of the roadway from the adjacent Reserve area which would further reduce the overall impact of the roadway on adjacent habitats.

If roadway-derived stormwater is able to be directed away from and/or around the present

Reserve area, and existing drainage channels can be modified to provide retention of particulates, the adverse effect of roadway-derived stormwater runoff on the Reserve area would be negligible. Dilution of *treated* stormwater in the inland drains and in the Kaituna River mainstem is unlikely to result in a significant adverse effect on the wetland near the River mouth, or River mouth habitats themselves.

At present all runoff from Te Puke, Te Matai and State Highway 2 drains to the Kaituna River in an uncontrolled and untreated manner; that area includes c.6 road and c.8 rail crossings of tributary streams, drains, and the main River.

3.14. Although no tall vegetation habitat would be destroyed by the alignment, its "footprint" within the western section of the Reserve property, presently consisting of grazed and drained pasture, would remove an area which would otherwise be suitable for rehabilitation to kahikatea, flax and manuka habitat as occurred previously. The land is clearly suitable for kahikatea revegetation; remnant stands remain nearby and grazed paddocks, at least on the eastern side of the proposed alignment, contain stumps of old kahikatea trees. There is an opportunity to restore the previous vegetation types in some of the adjoining areas earlier than would probably have occurred under the existing land use situation in that part of the Reserve property. Therefore, development of the Option A3 alignment may also enable the timetable for Reserve rehabilitation to be contracted significantly. The reduction in the total potential area which could be ultimately rehabilitated is likely to be compensated by revegetation of other areas adjacent to the alignment but beyond the existing Reserve boundaries. In addition a significant area of new vegetation would be created as a result of planting the 4.5 metre high noise bund alongside the western vegetated area of the Reserve.

3.15. In summary, although the Option A3 alignment would be in close proximity to habitats of moderate to high value, it is well separated from the highest value ecological areas in the Lower Kaituna Management Reserve. The areas traversed are dominated by grazed pasture to the east and west of Kaituna River and, except for the River itself, the aquatic habitats are of low ecological value. The area of tall vegetated habitat in the Reserve

closest to the alignment is managed by the Eastern Fish and Game Council for the waterfowl and "upland" game shooting. The Council's constructed pond development would also be well separated from the alignment.

There is an opportunity to isolate any potential roadway-derived stormwater effects from the Reserve, to provide wetland buffer areas on other parts of the alignment and to progress the revegetation of the grazed portion of the Reserve more rapidly than would have occurred otherwise.

- 3.16. The bunded roadway would create additional noise in this rural area. The predicted noise level 70 m from a 4.5 high bund vegetated with tall growing trees would be 50dBA and diminish with increasing distance. At the Waimarae oxbow the bund toe would be 60 m from the nearest standing water of the oxbow. Where the route is closest to the sand ridge habitat there would be a separation of c.150 m. From the bund toe to the constructed pond section in the eastern part of the Reserve the separate distance would range from 750 m near the existing Pah Rd bend to 2150 m at the former pumping station end.

While there would be a short term effect immediately adjacent to the bund construction zone, following its completion birds will continue to utilise the marginal areas of the wetland and sand ridge habitat.

Commissioning of the roadway would not result in an acute effect i.e. displacement of birds from immediately adjacent areas. Any chronic effects are likely to be minor and would not represent significant adverse effects or diminish the existing or future ecological values of the Reserve. The vegetated bund and revegetated margins of the wetland and sand ridge would be utilised by species presently in these marginal habitats, particularly "upland" game species.

Although no data exist on the relationship of certain decibel levels and the behaviour of birds, there are examples of birds tolerating or acclimating to environments where noise levels are higher than "ambient background".

Although the Reserve as a whole contains a high diversity of bird species some of which, such as crakes and fernbird, have specific habitat requirements, only three species have been recorded which have a national conservation priority rating. Those species are australasian bittern and white heron (Category O), both of which also occur outside New Zealand, and N.Z. pigeon (Category B).

"Upland" game species are clearly tolerant of both land clearance and traffic noise. *"Mallard take readily to city ponds and streams, often feeding from the hand. Probably no other waterfowl species is as tolerant of people, though as a game bird it is extremely wary....."* (Robertson, 1985).

"The grey duck now persists most abundantly in wild wetland areas away from human interference" (Robertson, 1985) in contrast, but has interbred extensively with mallard (Heather & Robertson, 1996).

N.Z. shoveler prefers fertile shallow wetlands, farm dams and sewage ponds, particularly areas fringed with raupo (Heather & Robertson, 1996) but shys away from city ponds.

On an areal basis most of the waterfowl habitat at present would be 750 m to 2150 m from the alignment. The closest "standing water" habitat is the Waimarae oxbow 60 m away. Whether further areas in the western section of the wetland would be excavated is unknown but dependent upon resource consents being granted by the Department of Conservation (D.O.C. pers. comm).

A good example of significant, yet intermittent and irregular, increases in noise levels above ambient occurs at and near airports. The fact that wading birds and some "terrestrial species" acclimate to aircraft noise levels is well documented (e.g. Saul, 1967; Creswell, 1988). At Auckland International a roosting area (Wiroa Island) was constructed to attract birds away from the runways and approach corridors, and a fulltime bird control officer is employed. In the 1960's the then Department of Civil Aviation included a National Bird Hazard Committee to address the problem of birds utilising

airport habitats and the consequent risk of bird strike to aircraft. Statistics regarding bird strike incidents are maintained; these list the particular species concerned where possible.

Therefore throughout New Zealand, there is conclusive information to show that seabirds and wading species are not displaced from areas by aircraft noise, some of which is at a far higher decibel level than which would emanate from the bunded roadway.

Birds recorded at the "Airport" roost are shown in Table 16 and include five species with national conservation priority ratings including N.Z. dotterel and wrybill (Category B).

A second example is the commonly used roosting area at Sulphur Point, Tauranga Harbour which is on an area of reclaimed land used for industrial and port purposes. It is also beneath the northern approach to Tauranga Airport. Examples of its use by wading birds and terns are shown in Table 17.

Sulphur Point has been used for nesting by N.Z. dotterel for several years including during the construction phase. A total of 94 white-fronted tern nests was present in December 1996 and banded dotterel, wrybill, caspian tern and reef heron also utilise the area despite the presence of the adjacent industrial area and being overflowed by aircraft approaching Tauranga Airport.

In addition, 340 banded dotterel and 6 wrybill have been reported from Tauranga Airport itself (Notornis, 1998).

Other incidental records for waders include N.Z. dotterel nesting alongside Auckland's Northern Motorway (OSNZ News, 1998), banded dotterel nesting and with juveniles at the N.Z. Railways freight yard at Smart Road, Fitzroy, New Plymouth (NZOS News 1987), and in the Mount Maunganui industrial area (2 pairs; 1.12.97; Notornis 1998). Note that a major wading bird roost, and nesting area for pied stilt, black-backed gull, variable oystercatcher and caspian tern, is present 120 m from Auckland's Northern Motorway (OSNZ News 1998). Both waders and terns also roost on a small beach

TABLE 16 Manukau Harbour Shorebird Census "Airport" Area
(Ornithological Society of N.Z., South Auckland Region)

	16.06.96	24.11.96	21.06.97	15.11.97	27.06.98	21.11.98
S.I. pied oystercatcher	4960	480	2800	140	10500	650
• variable oystercatcher	1	-	1	-	1	-
• N.Z. dotterel	6	6	11	5	12	7
• banded dotterel	500	2	15	1	337	2
• wrybill	600	-	100	-	78	1
bar-tailed godwit	800	2850	120	-	200	300
lesser knot	90	1300	150	-	-	50
pied stilt	260	-	110	10	200	14
black shag	1	-	-	-	-	-
pied shag	1	-	2	35	-	37
white-faced heron	1	6	-	11	12	19
spur-winged plover	1	-	8	-	30	7
black-backed gull	2	4	-	-	3	2
red-billed gull	1	-	-	-	-	-
• caspian tern	66	10	29	1	20	4
mallard duck	120	24	-	-	-	-
harrier	2	1	-	2	1	2
turnstone	-	12	-	-	19	-
black-billed gull	-	2	-	-	-	-
little black shag	-	-	-	1	-	-
TOTAL	7412	4697	3346	206	11414	1095
TIDAL HEIGHT (m)	3.8	4.2	4.0	4.5	4.2	4.0

• species with national conservation priority ratings

TABLE 17 **Sulphur Point Birds**

S.I. pied oystercatcher	52	01.12.96	(a)
	200	08.02.97	(a)
	131	08.06.97	(a)
• N.Z. dotterel	7 (3 pairs + 1 juv)	01.12.96	(a)
	12	14.03.97	(a)
• banded dotterel	18	17.02.97	(a)
	200	08.02.97	(a)
• wrybill	60	08.02.97	(a)
bar-tailed godwit	1200	01.12.96	(a)
• caspian tern	31	08.06.97	(a)
• white-fronted tern	c.200 (+ 94 nests)	01.12.96	(a)
variable oystercatcher	33	01.12.96	(a)
	6	08.06.97	(a)
• reef heron	3	02.07.96	(b)

(a) Notornis, 1998

(b) Notornis, 1997

- species with a national conservation priority rating

immediately beside the old toll plaza area on the Northern Motorway and have double-brooded at that site (Dowding *et al*, 1999). N.Z. dotterel nest in Shoal Bay c.100 m from the Northern Motorway and also nested on a golf course when under construction at Gulf Harbour, Whangaparaoa.

N.Z. dotterel have nested in the Waihi Gold Mining Company's waste rock and tailings pond area at Waihi (refer Appendix 8.5) and "*small numbers of N.Z. dotterel breed at highly modified sites, notably on grass at several airports and at Marsden Point oil refinery*" (Dowding, 1993).

Birds such as S.I. pied oystercatcher, banded dotterel, white-faced heron and spur-winged plover can be seen quite frequently feeding alongside runways at New Zealand airports undeterred by aircraft taxiing only metres away, while pukeko is a common sight in road and motorway verge areas.

Although many of the species involved in the above examples do not occur in the Reserve, a number of them have higher national conservation priority ratings than the Reserve species and also utilise some of the habitats above on a regular and long term basis.

Even extreme noise as low incident events is unlikely to deter birds from an area provided the habitat conditions otherwise remain suitable. Papakanui Spit, South Head, Kaipara Harbour is at the northern end of the Papakanui Spit Stewardship Area, administered by the Department of Conservation, and is a "key area" within the Auckland Conservancy (geomorphic site of national importance; wildlife habitat of national significance; significant defence use). It is also a significant breeding site for N.Z. dotterel (Dowding, 1993), and is utilised by fairy tern, a Category A species (i.e. highest priority).

"Papakanui Stewardship Area is used by the New Zealand military and co-ordinated by the RNZAF for a number of military activities, including air and ground weapons training, driver training, demolition and general exercises. This disfigures the area,

creates hazards, and conflicts with habitat values. It also creates a misleading public impression of the area and makes control of undesirable recreational activities more difficult." Department of Conservation, 1993.

From the recent census c.10% of the total Kaipara Harbour wading and seabird count was recorded from the Spit. The Stewardship Area and Wildlife Refuge are utilised for breeding by caspian tern, white-fronted tern, N.Z. dotterel and variable oystercatcher while the adjacent Waionui Inlet supports fernbird, crake and bittern (Department of Conservation, 1993). Despite debris from the military being an *"incongruous element in this wild, largely unmodified area"* no statement appears in the Conservation Management Strategy regarding noise or other effects on the Spit's use by birds. Papakanui Spit is a key area within the Kaipara Harbour which is a wetland of international importance (D.O.C. 1996).

Pollen Island Marine Reserve is bisected by Auckland's Northwest Motorway yet supports about 15 - 20 pairs of fernbirds, nesting N.Z. dotterel, spotless crake, banded rail, seabirds, waterfowl and wading birds.

A 6.2 ha area of estuarine vegetation abutting Tauranga Airport supports banded rail throughout with banded dotterel on adjacent grassland (Owen, Department of Conservation, 1993).

Estuarine vegetation (8.1 ha) along the Te Maunga Causeway (between Tauranga and Mount Maunganui) supports a small population of fernbirds in clearly high traffic noise conditions (Owen, Department of Conservation, 1993). Matua Estuary (36.8 ha), which has residential housing on its northern and southern boundaries, and also a railway line and road along the latter, supports both banded rail (6+) and fernbird (14) despite the "existing threats and impacts" listed.

The 7100 ha Whangamarino wetland, also of international significance, supports populations of fernbird, bittern, spotless crake, mallard, grey duck, grey teal, black swan,

N.Z. shoveler, Canada goose and paradise shelduck, and contains pheasant, California quail and brown quail in marginal habitats. The main trunk railway embankment runs along its western side, roadways (rural) are present around its southern and eastern perimeter and the northern end contains, a road, a cableway and coal mines. The western railway embankment section is intensively used for waterfowl hunting (Ogle & Cheyne, 1981). *"Bittern are sometime (sic) seen alongside Highway 1 just north of Mercer township in wet areas alongside the road near the sand heaps. This is a busy road and parking may be a problem."* (Chambers, 1989).

Matata Lagoon Wildlife Refuge (65 ha) is situated between State Highway 2 and the sea. Its wildlife value is high (Rasch, 1989).

"Progression of estuarine rush wetland to freshwater raupo-flax wetland, bordered by scrub and dunes. Willow invasive. Relatively unmodified. Large number of species includes banded rail, dabchick, spotless crake, bittern, white heron, reef heron and fernbird." (Rasch, 1989).

The freshwater wetland area of Matata has nationally significant botanical values (Beadel, 1994) and contains the fern *Cyclosorus interruptus*.

Chambers, 1989 regards Matata as an ideal place to observe a high diversity of birds the key species being shoveler, scaup, banded rail, spotless crake, marsh crake and fernbird. Bittern are also present.

"This is a reliable place to observe grey duck. A flock of up to 50 birds can always be seen here." (Chambers, 1989). A large population of N.Z. shoveler can be found here at any time of year. *"This is a reliable place to see them."* (Chambers, 1989).

The full species list for Matata freshwater wetland and its adjoining coastal strip is as follows:-

Bird List for Matata :

Dabchick	California Quail	Fernbird
Black Shag	Pheasant	Grey Warbler
Pied Shag	Banded Rail	Thrush
Little Shag	Spotless Crake	Blackbird
Little Black Shag	Marsh Crake	Hedge Sparrow
White-faced Heron	Pukeko	Pipit
White Heron	S.I. Pied Oystercatcher	Bellbird
Little Egret	Variable Oystercatcher	Tui
Cattle Egret	Spur-winged Plover	Silvereeye
Bittern	Pied Stilt	Greenfinch
Black Swan	Red-billed Gull	Goldfinch
Paradise Shelduck	Black-backed Gull	Redpoll
Mallard	White-fronted Tern	Chaffinch
Grey Duck	Caspian Tern	Yellowhammer
Shoveler	Eastern Rosella	Sparrow
Grey Teal	Skylark	Starling
Scaup	Welcome Swallow	Myna
Harrier	Fantail	Magpie

(Chambers, 1989)

In the Wellington Conservancy, Taupo Swamp (c.25 ha) is rated as an internationally significant wetland (D.O.C, 1996). On its eastern boundary is S.H. 1 while the main trunk railway is on its western boundary. The wetland contains a wide diversity of fish (brown mudfish, giant kokopu, banded kokopu, inanga, long-finned eel, short-finned eel, red-finned bully, common bully, giant bully and common smelt). Birds include little shag, bittern, mallard, pukeko and N.Z. kingfisher.

Therefore based on the above examples of (a) species of national conservation priority tolerating higher than ambient noise levels and (b) high value habitats in close proximity to unbunded roadways and railway tracks, the probability of the proposed banded roadway resulting in a significant adverse effect as a result of noise is very low. Provided the structural integrity of the habitat is retained, which will be the case, the present and future ecological values are unlikely to be diminished as a result of noise generated by the banded roadway.

- 3.17. There would also be an increase in lights in this area as a result of the road, however, the road itself would not be lit. Vehicle lights would not penetrate the Reserve in the western section as a result of the 4.5 metre high vegetated bund. Although vehicle lights may be visible from within the Reserve (e.g. from Kaituna Bridge, eastern unbanded section) the probability of their resulting in a significant adverse effect on wildlife is remote. In the Section 3.16. examples, vehicles and trains move through and alongside significant wildlife habitats at Pollen Island, Whangamarino wetland, Matata wetland and Taupo Swamp.
- 3.18. Similarly any adverse effect as a result of vibration is likely to be negligible as suggested by both the above examples and that of Papakanui Spit which would be subject to significant intermittent vibration at times.
- 3.19. Although the state of the Reserve is likely to change between the present and the time at which road construction commences, its nature in ten years hence is essentially unknown. The condition of the Reserve will depend on the final Management Plan, the effect of

raising water levels, whether or not further consent is given for additional development of standing water bodies and the effect of additional planting both within the Reserve and associated with the 4.5 metre high noise mitigation bund which is likely to precede the roadway.

- 3.20. The proposed mitigation would, however, protect a Reserve with increased ecological values on the assumption that that trend will occur as a result of changes unassociated with this proposal. The mitigation would conserve and protect both the existing and future potential biodiversity values of the Reserve area.

4. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

4.1. Conclusions

- 4.1.1. The alignment Option A3 as proposed would not destroy any existing vegetation, wildlife habitat or aquatic habitat which is significant even on a local basis.
- 4.1.2. There are areas of aquatic sediments on the western and eastern sides of the Kaituna River which contain moderate levels of contamination, and which would require isolation to prevent adverse effects on downstream habitats. No significant adverse effect on Kaituna River mainstem habitats would result.
- 4.1.3. Operation of the roadway is unlikely to diminish the existing ecological values of the western vegetated area of the Reserve administered by the Eastern Fish and Game Council. The alignment is well separated from the high value ecological areas of the Reserve administered by the Department of Conservation.
- 4.1.4. There is an opportunity to establish wetland areas on the western side of the River to control stormwater which reflect the previous vegetation types of the area.
- 4.1.5. On the eastern side of the River, roadway-derived stormwater could be managed so that it was isolated from the Reserve area and no adverse effects resulted.
- 4.1.6. The time scale for rehabilitation of kahikatea-dominated habitat, both contiguous with and adjacent to the Reserve, could be contracted significantly.
- 4.1.7. There is unlikely to be any significant adverse effect on the Reserve as a result of noise, light or vibration from the roadway based on existing wetland examples and because of the 4.5 metre vegetated bund proposed where the alignment is closest to the Reserve.

4.1.8. Mitigation measures which would reduce any adverse ecological effects significantly appear practicable, and would conserve and protect both the existing and future potential biodiversity values of the adjacent Reserve area.

4.2. Recommendations

- 4.2.1. At the Options evaluation stage of this appraisal, two recommendations were offered; that the final alignment avoid the Niccol property oxbow habitat, and that it also avoid the remnant kahikatea stands within the Lower Kaituna Management Reserve property. Both those recommendations were accommodated and are reflected in the final alignment.
- 4.2.2. The Kaituna River crossing should be constructed with set back abutments, to avoid disruption to River edge habitats.
- 4.2.3. The Kaituna oxbow crossing should be designed to minimise instream works (e.g. single bank to bank span).
- 4.2.4. If practicable the control gate below the proposed Kaituna oxbow crossing should remain closed throughout the construction period of that crossing if instream works are required.
- 4.2.5. The By De Lay property stream channel and the Waimarae Stream should be isolated (i.e. blocked off) from the Kaituna River oxbow and mainstem respectively throughout the construction period.
- 4.2.6. Wetland areas should be developed in the western section between State Highway 2 and the River to receive roadway-derived stormwater runoff. Those areas should reflect the former vegetation of Te Parapara Swamp as far as practicable.
- 4.2.7. Roadway-derived stormwater from the alignment section within the Reserve property should be isolated from the Reserve and directed to the constructed drains, adjacent to Pah Road, which flow into the large drain forming the southeastern boundary of the Reserve.

- 4.2.8. Sections of the "Pah Road drains" should be modified to retain particulate matter in roadway derived stormwater runoff.
- 4.2.9. Wetland areas should also be developed in the eastern area between the Reserve and State Highway 2 to receive stormwater runoff from the roadway.
- 4.2.10. Revegetation and wetland development proposals should involve locally-sourced plant material. A dominant vegetation type in the Kawa and Te Parapara Swamps was clearly flax; local iwi should also be consulted regarding the appropriate types of flax. Areas could be developed with a view to harvesting for cultural purposes.
- 4.2.11. Kahikatea-dominated vegetation should be established in presently grazed sections of the Lower Kaituna Management Reserve and nearby areas, especially the 4.5 metre noise bund.
- 4.2.12. A litter-retaining fence should be constructed between the alignment and the presently vegetated area of the Reserve to minimise the intrusion of litter into Reserve habitats.
- 4.2.13. Comprehensive wetland development, sediment control and stormwater management plans should be finalised prior to the consent application stage.
- 4.2.14. A sediment/soil quality survey should be undertaken prior to construction along the western perimeter of the vegetated area of the Reserve to provide benchmark data for any subsequent surveys in the longer term.
- 4.2.15. A five-minute bird count and habitat use survey should also be undertaken prior to construction in the above area in the February-March period to establish the species, relative numbers present and use of that habitat.

5. REFERENCES

Beadel S M 1989

Botanical Values of the Arawa Wetlands, Maketu.
Dept of Conservation. 11pp + Appendices.

Beadel S M 1992

Threatened and Local Plants of Bay of Plenty Conservancy.
Tech. Rpt. Series No. 13. Dept of Conservation.

Beadel S M 1994

Significant indigenous vegetation of the Bay of Plenty coastal zone
(For Bay of Plenty Regional Council) 412pp.

Bioresearches 1981

Nutrient Control Pipeline - Environmental Assessment.
A1: Biological Assessment. 234pp (For Rotorua District Council)

Bioresearches 1996

Proposed Huapai - Taupaki to Albany Pipeline - Biological Features of the Final Route
and an Appraisal of Effects. 56pp + Appendices. (For Burton Consultants/Enerco Gas
Auckland).

Bioresearches 1997 (a)

Tauranga northern Arterial - Biological features of the Alternative Routes and an
Appraisal of Effects. 47pp + Appendices/Plates. (For Beca Carter Hollings &
Ferner/Transit NZ)

Bioresearches 1997 (b)

Route K Ecological Characteristics. 36pp + Appendices/Plates. (For Beca Carter
Hollings & Ferner/Transit NZ).

Bioresearches 1998

Omokoroa to Te Puna Corridor Improvements - Biological Characteristics and Appraisal of Effects. 46 pp + Appendices/Plates. (For Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner/Transit NZ)

Chambers S 1989

Birds of New Zealand Locality Guide.
Arun Books. 511pp.

Cresswell P D 1988

Bird Species, Populations and Activities at Christchurch International Airport, New Zealand, between 1986 and 1988 : Implications for a Preventative Bird Strike Programme
N.Z. Nat. Sciences 15 : 61 - 70.

Cumming A; Jenkins P & Hay J 1992

Disturbing Dotterels - Problems in the North Island.
Forest & Bird No. 266 : 12 - 13.

Davis S F 1987

Wetlands of national importance to fisheries
NZ Freshwater Fisheries Rpt No. 90.
MAF Fish, Christchurch. 48pp

Department of Conservation 1993

Draft Conservation Management Strategy for Auckland 1993 - 2003.
Vols I, II, & III.
Auckland Conservancy Cons. Mgmt Plan. Series No. 1.

Department of Conservation (DoC) 1996

A directory of wetlands in New Zealand
D A Scott (ed). 395pp.

Dowding J E; Wills D E & Booth A M 1999

Double-brooding and Brood Overlap by Northern New Zealand
Dotterels. (*Charadrius obscurus aquilonius*).
Notornis 46 (1) : 181 - 185.

Garrick A S 1990

Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve : its Past, Present
and Future. Dept of Conservation. 36 pp.

Heather B D and Robertson H A 1996

Field Guide to the Birds of New Zealand.
Viking. 432 pp.

Irving R M 1991

Botanical Survey of the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management
Reserve. Dept of Conservation. 24 pp + Appendices.

McDowall R M (1990)

New Zealand Freshwater Fishes - A Natural History and Guide.
Heinemann Reed/MAF Publishing Group. 553 p.

McEwen W M (ed) 1987

Ecological Regional and Districts of New Zealand.
Department of Conservation Publication No. 5.

Miller N C 1983

Proposed Wildlife Reserve at the Lower Kaituna River -
Preliminary Botanical Report. Unpubl. Rpt to N.Z. Wildlife Service. 5 pp.

Mitchell C P 1990

Whitebait spawning grounds in the Bay of Plenty
N Z Freshwater Fisheries Miscell. Rpt. No. 40.

National Resources Survey, 1962 Part II

Bay of Plenty Region.
Govt. Printer. 348 pp.

Notornis 1997

Classified Summarised Notes. Notornis 44 (2) : 79 - 109.

Notornis 1998

Classified Summarised Notes. Notornis 45 (4) : 279 - 309.

NZOS News 1987

Banded Dotterel Breeding in Railway Yard.
NZOS News No. 43, p 7.

NZOS News 1995

N.Z. Dotterel Nesting Inland. NZOS News No. 76, p 2.

NZOS News 1998

Motorway Waders. NZOS News No. 86, p.1.

Ogle C C and Cheyne J 1981

The Wildlife and Wildlife Values of the Whangamarino Wetlands.
Fauna Survey Unit Report No. 28. N.Z. Wildlife Service. 94 pp.

OSNZ 1985

The atlas of bird distribution in New Zealand
Ornithological Society of New Zealand Inc.

Owen K L 1993

Protection and Restoration of Marshland Habitat in Tauranga Harbours.
Vols 1 & 2.
Department of Conservation. Tech. Rpt Series No. 17.

Rasch G 1989

Wildlife and wildlife habitat in the Bay of Plenty Region
Regional Report Series No. 11
Department of Conservation. 136pp.

Robertson C J R (ed) 1985

Readers' Digest Complete Book of New Zealand Birds.
Readers' Digest. 319pp.

Saul E K 1967

Birds and Aircraft : A Problem at Auckland's New International Airport.
N.Z. Dept Int. Affairs. Wildlife Public. No. 81.
(J Roy Aero Soc. 71 [677] May 1967).

Saxton, B A; Rowe, D K and Stancliff, A G 1987

Species Composition and relative importance of whitebait fisheries in 13 Bay of Plenty
Rivers. Fisheries Environmental Report No. 79. 63pp

Shaw W B 1994

Botanical Ranking for Nature Conservation.
Sci. & Res. Series No. 72. Dept of Conservation.

Smith, S L; MacDonald D D; Keenleyside, K A; Gaudet, C L 1996

The Development and Implementation of Canadian Sediment Quality Guidelines.
Development and Progress in Sediment Quality Assessment; Rationale, Challenges,
Techniques and Strategies. Pp 233 - 249

Soulsby R 1997

A Prized Bird in Two Hemispheres.
Fish & Game N.Z. 17 : 48 - 51.

Spellenberg I F & Morrison T 1998

The Ecological Effects of New Roads - A Literature Review.
Department of Conservation. Science for Conservation. 84 - 55 pp.

Stokes E 1980

A History of Tauranga County.
Dunmore Press, Palmerston North.

Taylor S G 1969

The History of Te Puke.
The Te Puke Times Ltd. 252pp.

Tisdall C 1994

Setting Priorities for the Conservation of New Zealand's Threatened
Plants and Animals.
2nd Ed. Dept of Conservation. 64 pp.

USEPA 1991

Evaluation of dredged material proposed for ocean disposal
Testing Manual.
USEPA 503/8 - 91/001.

Young K 1997

Fisheries Survey of Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve.

Dept of Conservation. 3 pp.

Appendix 6.4

**Kaituna River Wetland Summary
(Beadel, 1994)**

KAITUNA RIVER

Area	Approx 34 ha
Altitude	0m
Grid reference	NZMS 260 V14 108774
Bioclimatic zone	Coastal
Ranking	District

Vegetation type	Physical area
Manuka scrub	Freshwater wetland
<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> - pampas/harakeke shrubland	Freshwater wetland
<i>Baumea</i> sedgeland	Freshwater wetland
<i>Bolboschoenus</i> sp. (<i>B. fluviatilis?</i>)- raupo sedgeland	Freshwater wetland
Harakeke/raupo reedland	Freshwater wetland
Raupo reedland	Freshwater wetland

(S. M. Beadel pers. obs. 1992)

Justification

This site contains one of the last small remnants of the Kawa swamp, a once large wetland covering much of the Maketu Plains. Some of the vegetation types present here are not well-represented at other sites in the ecological district. Only a brief field inspection has been made of this site and other vegetation types and rare or interesting plant species may occur here. A higher ranking for this site may be appropriate and the site should be re-evaluated when further information is available.

This site is contiguous to a larger area, outside of the coastal zone.

SS KAITUNA RIVER

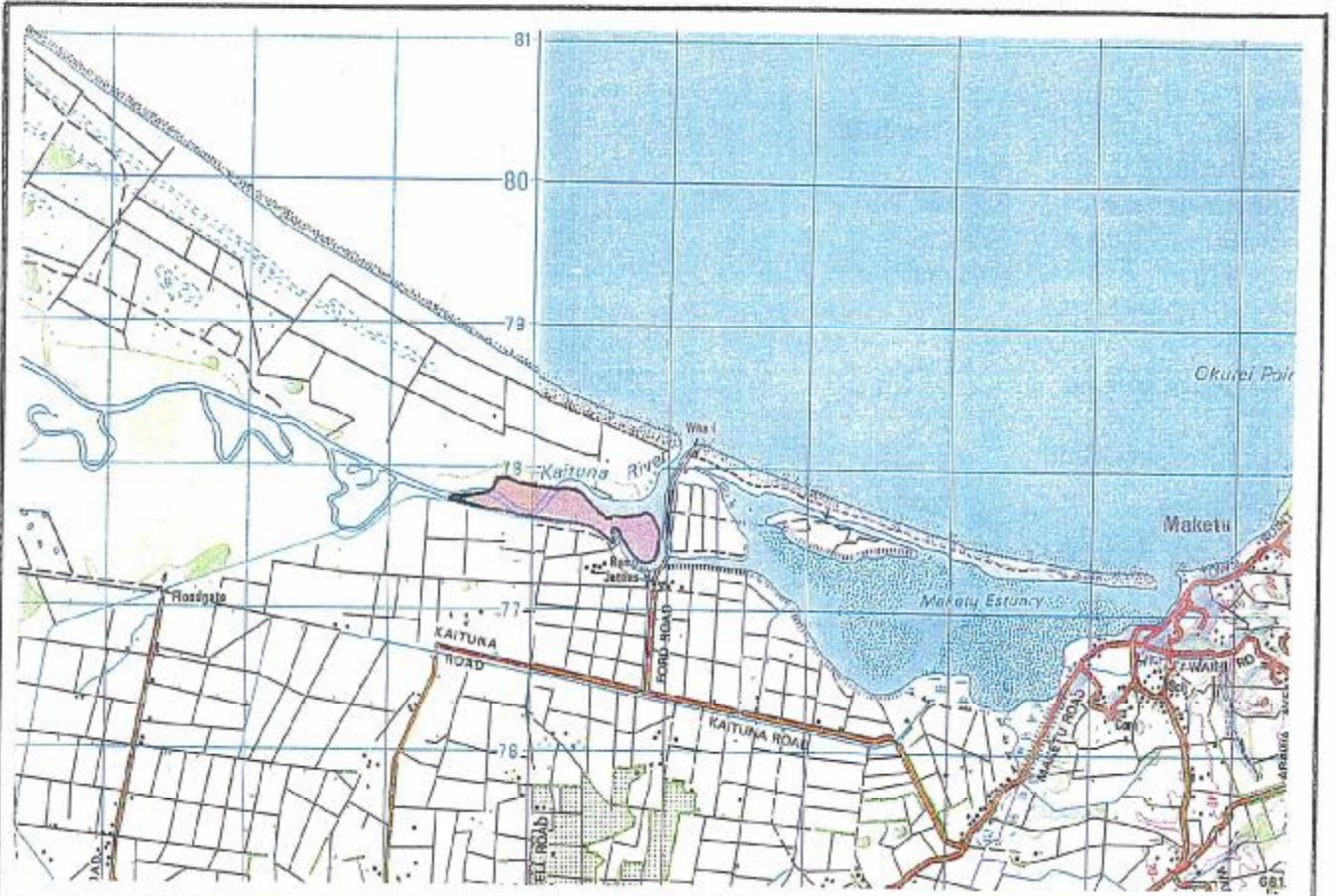


TABLE 3 LIST OF SIGNIFICANT SITES

COROMANDEL ECOLOGICAL REGION (PART)	
Waihi Ecological District (Part)	
National Significance:	Orokawa (Scenic Reserve)
Mayor Island Ecological District	
National Significance:	Tuhua (Mayor Island Wildlife Refuge)

NORTHERN VOLCANIC PLATEAU ECOLOGICAL REGION	
Tauranga Ecological District	
National Significance:	Matakana Island 1. Athenree 1. Blue Gum Bay 1. Tirohanga Te Hopai Island Aongatete Estuary Hunters Creek Waimapu Estuary 1. Kaituna sand dunes
Regional Significance:	Bowentown sand dunes Katikati 1. Wainui Estuary 1. Waipapa Estuary 1. Wairoa Estuary 1. Motuotau Island Arawa
District Significance:	Athenree 2. Bowentown Heads Taupiro Estuary Matakana Island 2. Matakana Island 3. Katikati 2. Blue Gum Bay 2. Wainui Estuary 2. Apata Estuary Waipapa Estuary 2. Tahunamanu Island Motungaio Island Opureora

Table 3 Continued	
	Rangiwaia Island Mt Maunganui 1. Te Puna Estuary Wairoa Estuary 2. Wairoa Estuary 3. Matua Estuary Waikareao Estuary Waimapu Estuary 2. Papamoia sand dunes Kaituna River Maketu Spit Waihi Estuary Part Waewaetutuki Pukehina 1
Motiti Ecological District	
Regional Significance:	Karewa Island Motunau Taumaihi Island
District Significance:	Motuputa Island Motiti Motiti Islets
Otanewainuku Ecological District	
National Significance:	Matata 1.
Regional Significance:	Herepuru 1.
District Significance:	Otamarakau Hauone Herepuru 2. Matata 4.
White Island Ecological District	
International Significance:	Whakaari
Regional Significance:	Moutoki and Rurima Moutohora
District Significance:	Volkner Rocks

Appendix 6.5

Wildlife Habitat Summary

(Rasch, 1989)

(note that for the "Middle Kaituna" the "Area (ha)" figure should be 10.5 k).

6. APPENDICES

Appendix 6.1

**Tauranga Ecological District Summary
(McEwen, 1987)**

TAURANGA ECOLOGICAL DISTRICT 13.02

Criteria: topography, geology, original vegetation.

TOPOGRAPHY: low coastal plains, sand dunes and swamplands, long straight beaches, large shallow harbour with extensive estuary, smaller estuaries near Maketu, low hills, locally dissected and broken, with rounded interfluves.

GEOLOGY: Pleistocene siltstone, sandstone, conglomerates and pumiceous ignimbrites flank eastern Coromandel and Kaimai Range foothills, west of Tauranga Harbour; domes and lava flows of Pliocene rhyolite form numerous hills (e.g. Mt Maunganui, Kopukairoa, Kairua, Mt Minden and Bowentown); Miocene andesite-dacite lavas and breccias form the fault bounded Papamoa Hills; fluvial terrace deposits of the last Glaciation W and S of Te Puke; Holocene alluvium, peat and fixed dunes along the coast, including Matakana Island; old volcanic ash beds are more significant than young beds.

CLIMATE: sunny, rather sheltered with strong maritime influence, receiving rains of very high intensity at times from NE and N; very warm summers, mild winters; rainfall 1400-1800mm p.a.

SOILS: volcanic ash soils on terrace, rolling and hilly lands; mainly deep silty soils from weathered brown ashes; composite soils with thin cover of more recent rhyolitic sandy and gravelly ashes (Taupo and Kaharoa), occur in the SE. Alluvial and organic soils on river flats form a complex pattern, many soils showing banding of peat, recent ashes (Kakaroa) and rhyolitic alluvium. Water-tables generally high, river flooding common. Sandy soils on coastal dunes show increasing profile development inland from bare sands near the coast to sand podzols further inland.

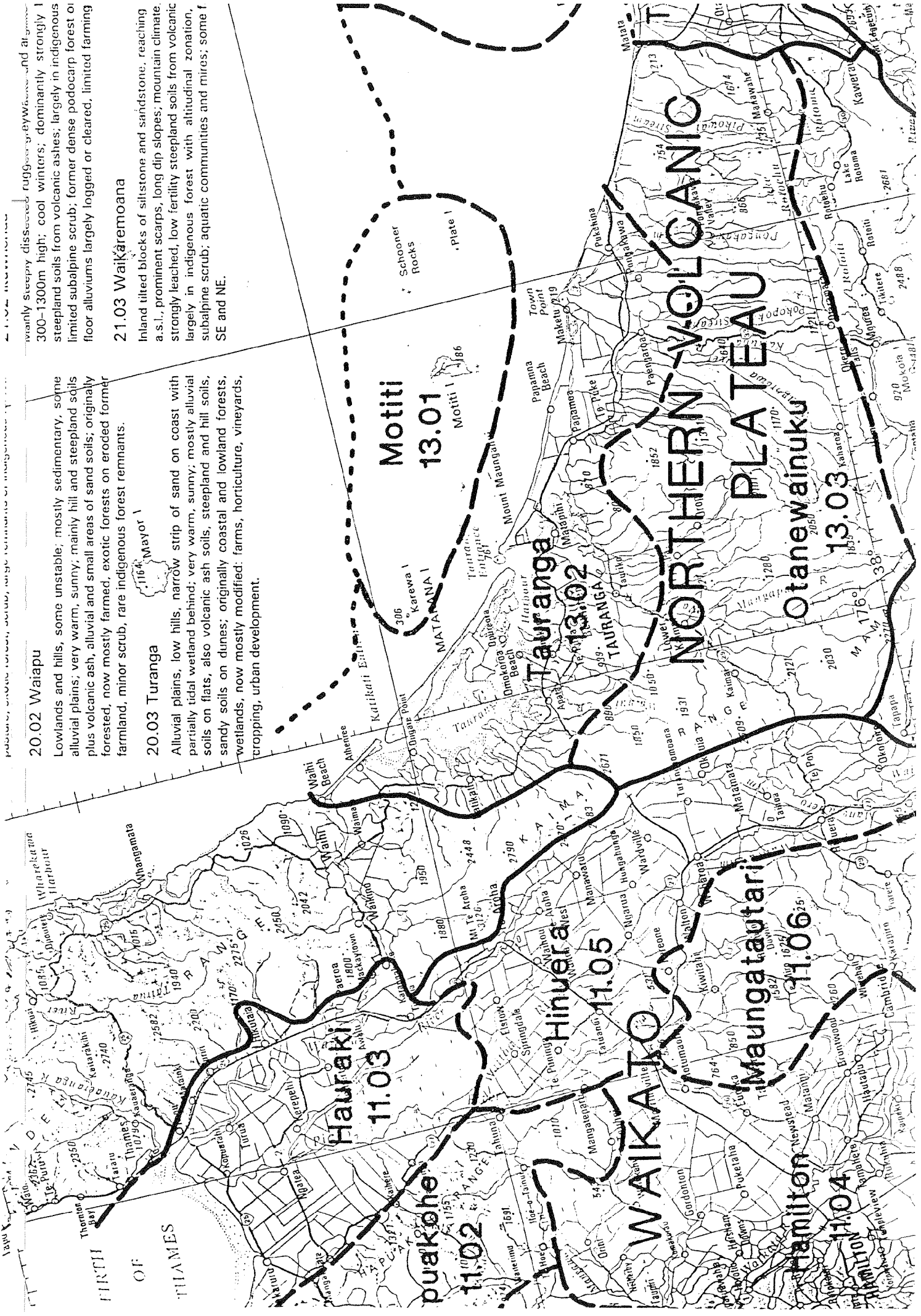
VEGETATION: much Polynesian forest clearance: formerly extensive flax swamps, fern, scrub with forest remnants on high country along southern boundary; dwarf mangroves occur in tidal inlets (total area of mangroves in Tauranga Harbour 543 ha).

BIRDS: include Fernbirds in swampy areas N and S of harbour. Grey-faced Petrel breed on Mt Maunganui and the nearby Motuotau I., Diving Petrel breed on Motuotau I. Brown Teal (introduced) occur in large numbers on Matakana I. and Tauranga Harbour. Tauranga Harbour provides a large and important habitat for Arctic breeding migrant and internal migrant shore birds although not comparable with the northern harbours (5-10,000 waders); Wrybill, Banded Rail and N.Z. Dotterel occur, also occasional rare waders; small estuaries at Maketu and Little Waihi support N.Z. Dotterel and migrant waders.

REPTILES: one of the few mainland populations of moko skink (Leiopisma moco) is at Papamoa.

FISH: include giant kokopu (Galaxias argenteus).

MODIFICATIONS: much of district farmed (intensive dairying, some with sheep or cattle); horticulture (especially kiwi fruit) increasing; exotic forest on Matakana Island and elsewhere.



20.02 Waiahu

Lowlands and hills, some unstable; mostly sedimentary, some alluvial plains; very warm, sunny; mainly hill and steeppland soils plus volcanic ash, alluvial and small areas of sand soils; originally forested, now mostly farmed, exotic forests on eroded former farmland, minor scrub, rare indigenous forest remnants.

20.03 Turanga

Alluvial plains, low hills, narrow strip of sand on coast with partially tidal wetland behind; very warm, sunny; mostly alluvial soils on flats, also volcanic ash soils, steeppland and hill soils, sandy soils on dunes; originally coastal and lowland forests, wetlands, now mostly modified: farms, horticulture, vineyards, cropping, urban development.

21.03 Waikāremoana

Inland tilted blocks of siltstone and sandstone, reaching a.s.l., prominent scarps, long dip slopes; mountain climate, strongly leached, low fertility steeppland soils from volcanic largely in indigenous forest with altitudinal zonation, subalpine scrub; aquatic communities and mires; some f SE and NE.

mainly steeply dissected rugged greywacke and granite 300-1300m high; cool winters; dominantly strongly I steeppland soils from volcanic ashes; largely in indigenous limited subalpine scrub; former dense podocarp forest or floor alluviums largely logged or cleared, limited farming

Appendix 6.2

**Wetland Habitat Summary
(D.O.C. 1996)**

City Council (1988, 1989); Tauranga County Council (1986); Western Bay of Plenty District Council (1989); Wilson & Given (1989).

Reasons for inclusion:

- 1a Tauranga Harbour is a particularly good representative example of a very large ecosystem containing terrestrial, saltmarsh and mangrove vegetation communities which are considered to be representative of the Bay of Plenty Region.
- 1c The harbour plays a substantial hydrological, biological and ecological role in the functioning of a coastal system, *i.e.* Bay of Plenty coastal and marine environment.
- 2a The harbour supports substantial populations of four globally threatened species of birds, *Botaurus poiciloptilus*, *Himantopus novaezelandiae*, *Charadrius obscurus* and *Anarhynchus frontalis*.
- 2c The harbour is of special importance as breeding habitat for a number of waterfowl species, and as wintering habitat for several international migratory shorebirds. The harbour is important for its fisheries, and has been ranked as being of outstanding value for fish at critical stages of their biological cycles.
- 3c The harbour regularly supports 1% or more of the regional populations of *Haematopus unicolor* (up to 1.5%), *Charadrius obscurus* (up to 3%), *C. bicaudatus* (up to 2.5%) and *Limosa lapponica* (up to 2%).

Source: Keith Owen.

Maketu-Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna River Mouth Complex (19)

Location: 37°46'S, 176°29'E. 35 km southeast of Tauranga City, Bay of Plenty Region, North Island.

Area: c.863 ha.

Altitude: Sea level.

Overview: The wetland comprises the Waihi Estuary, Maketu Estuary and the adjacent Kaituna River mouth. Maketu township on Okurei Point headland bisects the two estuaries. Sandspits with native and adventive duneland vegetation protect both estuaries from the open sea. There are inter-tidal mudflats and sandflats associated with the estuaries. Both estuaries contain a number of low-lying islands of relatively small size, and there is a large island, Papahikahawai, in Maketu Estuary. The Kaituna River Mouth has areas of saltmarsh and freshwater wetlands.

Physical features: The two estuaries are both saline in nature with relatively low freshwater inputs. In the case of Maketu Estuary, the major freshwater input, the Kaituna River, was diverted away from the estuary in 1958 (Richmond & Forbes, 1990). The tidal section of the Kaituna River mouth has predominantly freshwater flows at low tide. The depth of the three wetland areas ranges from 0.5 to 5 metres depending on the tides. The catchment areas of the two estuaries are relatively small in comparison to the Kaituna River, which has a very extensive catchment including Lakes Rotorua and Rotoiti at its source some 45 km inland. The inland sides of both estuaries have major flood control embankments which protect adjacent reclaimed farmland. In the case of Waihi Estuary, four major drainage canals servicing the surrounding low-lying drained farmland enter the estuary.

The Te Arawa freshwater wetland of about 24 ha, owned by the Maori, was in the past an integral part of Maketu Estuary, with the lower portion of the wetland being regularly inundated by saltwater. This area is now separated from the estuary by the Maketu Road causeway, although still of botanical and wildlife significance.

The area has a temperate climate with an average annual rainfall of 1,350 mm. The mean annual temperature range is 12.5°C to 15°C, and the average number of hours of sunshine is 2,300.

Ecological features: The inter-tidal mudflats and sandflats have local areas of seagrass *Zostera novazelandica* and the nuisance sea lettuce *Ulva* spp. The upper tidal flats of both estuaries have local areas of mangroves *Avicennia marina* var. *resinifera* (which is rare in both estuaries), mixed saltmarshes dominated by *Juncus maritimus* var. *australiensis* and *Leptocarpus similis*, and prostrate saltmeadows (especially in the case of Waihi Estuary) dominated by *Sarcocornia quinqueflora*, *Samolus repens*, *Selliera radicans* and *Cotula coronopifolia*. Freshwater wetlands of Raupo *Typha orientalis*, New Zealand Flax *Phormium tenax*, sedges and Grey Willow *Salix cinerea* can be found on the eastern side of Maketu Estuary off Maketu Road on Te Arawa land (Beadel, 1989a) and at Waihi Estuary between Wharere Road and Waewaetutuki Road (Beadel, 1989b).

Land tenure: The bed of large parts of the two estuaries and the Kaituna River mouth are Crown land. Many of the islands in both estuaries, including Papahikahawai Island and an area of inter-tidal flats within Waihi Estuary, are Maori land.

Conservation measures taken: The Maketu sandspit is Crown land set apart as a Recreation Reserve and administered by the Western Bay of Plenty District Council. This is an important site for coastal breeding shorebirds and gulls. There are a number of Esplanade and Recreation Reserves scattered around the shores of the two estuaries. These are all Crown land, reserved and administered by the Western Bay of Plenty District Council. There are two wetland reserves on Crown land within Waihi Estuary, administered by the Department of Conservation. These total approximately 47 ha and are reserved for wildlife management purposes. The Eastern Region Fish and Game Council owns and administers a 7 ha Wildlife Refuge on the southern side of the estuary.

Conservation measures proposed: A proposed Wildlife Management Reserve covering approximately 17 ha of an enclosed brackish arm (Ford Road Lagoon) at the western end of the Maketu Estuary is currently being processed. This is notable habitat for Anatidae and migrating shorebirds. The Maketu Estuary suffered large-scale environmental degradation when the full flow of the Kaituna River was diverted away from the estuary into the sea at nearby Te Tumu, to allow for flood control works associated with land drainage in the lower catchment. A major restoration programme is under way for the estuary, involving the return of part of the river flow back into the estuary under a controlled situation (Richmond & Forbes, 1990). This was proposed to take place in 1992, and should allow for some long-term recovery of the environmental quality of the estuary.

Land use: Outdoor recreation, mainly involving shellfish gathering, bird-watching, boating and waterfowl hunting.

Possible changes in land use: None known, except for the proposed re-diversion of some of the Kaituna River flow back into Maketu Estuary.

Disturbances and threats: Reclamation and drainage of adjacent saltmarsh and freshwater wetlands on private land surrounding the wetland has caused major losses of wetland habitat, and still poses a threat to the wetland today.

Septic tank discharges from coastal settlements ultimately carry waste water into the two estuaries, especially Waihi Estuary. Recreational activities cause disturbance to nesting shorebirds on the Maketu and Waihi Spits and the islands within the estuaries.

Hydrological and biophysical values: The two estuaries and the Kaituna River mouth have a number of important hydrological and biophysical values including sediment trapping from the surrounding catchment, prevention of coastal erosion, maintenance of water quality and support of estuarine and marine food chains.

Social and cultural values: Maketu Estuary is of immense cultural and historical importance to Te Arawa as the traditionally recognised landing site for the Te Arawa canoe about 600

years ago. "Kaimoana" (seafood) gathering from the two estuaries and the river are important to local Maori.

Noteworthy fauna: Waihi Estuary, Maketu Estuary and Ford Road Lagoon (within Maketu Estuary) are all "Sites of Special Wildlife Interest" of "high", "moderate-high" and "moderate-high" value respectively (Rasch, 1989). This is a nationwide wildlife habitat ranking system officially recognised by the Department of Conservation. The wetland supports a wide diversity of waterfowl species (47 species recorded) including 20 species of shorebirds (Ornithological Society of New Zealand, unpublished data 1986-1991). Notable species found at the wetland include Pacific Reef Egret *Egretta sacra*, Variable Oystercatcher *Haematopus unicolor* (maximum 112), New Zealand Dotterel *Charadrius obscurus* (maximum 42), Banded Dotterel *C. bicinctus*, Wrybill *Anarhynchus frontalis*, Caspian Tern *Sterna caspia* and Black-fronted Tern *Chlidonias albobristatus*. The Te Arawa freshwater wetland supports small populations of Banded Rail *Rallus philippensis assimilis* and North Island Fernbird *Bowdleria punctata vealeae* (K. Owen, pers. obs.). The Australasian Bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus* has also been recorded in the area. The mudflats and sandflats are important "wintering" areas for migratory shorebirds from the northern hemisphere, including up to 1,400 Bar-tailed Godwit *Limosa lapponica*, 200 Red Knot *Calidris canutus* and 100 Pacific Golden Plover *Pluvialis fulva*. A further seven species which are scarce migrants to New Zealand have been recorded at the wetland: Far Eastern Curlew *Numenius madagascariensis*, Whimbrel *N. phaeopus*, Sharp-tailed Sandpiper *Calidris acuminata*, Curlew Sandpiper *C. ferruginea*, Red-necked Stint *C. ruficollis*, Sanderling *C. alba* and Little Tern *Sterna albifrons*. A small breeding colony of Pied Shag *Phalacrocorax varius* and Black Shag *P. carbo* nest in *Pinus radiata* trees on the western bank of the Kaituna River mouth.

Noteworthy flora: Areas of relatively intact indigenous vegetation in the Te Arawa freshwater wetland are one of the few remaining examples of the freshwater wetland vegetation which once covered large areas west of Maketu. These are of high botanical conservation value (ranked as "high" and "very high" by Beadel, 1989a). The wetland has two threatened ferns, *Cyclosorus interruptus* (nationally rare) and *C. confluens* (nationally vulnerable), and one species of regional significance, *Mimulus repens* (Beadel, 1989a). The 60 ha privately owned freshwater wetland adjoining the southwestern margin of Waihi Estuary is dominated by native wetland vegetation, although a detailed botanical or wildlife survey has not been carried out. The area may contain rare fern species (Beadel, 1989a). Both Maketu and Waihi estuary sandspits have a mixed native and adventive duneland vegetation with the native sand-binding plant Pingao *Desmoschoenus spiralis* present.

Scientific research and facilities: Maketu Estuary has been extensively studied as a result of the Kaituna River diversion and the possible environmental impacts of the diversion on the estuary. These studies continue. The Ornithological Society of New Zealand undertakes twice-yearly censuses of waterfowl populations in the estuaries.

Conservation education: Both estuaries are used by schools, colleges and conservation organisations from the Bay of Plenty Region for education purposes. There are no facilities for conservation education and training, but accommodation is available locally.

Recreation and tourism: Water-based recreation is generally confined to boating, swimming, fishing, bird-watching, shellfish gathering (pipis, cockles) and game-bird hunting. Tourism is low key and usually caters for the domestic market, with an influx of visitors during the summer.

Management authority: The Bay of Plenty Regional Council has statutory responsibilities under the Resource Management Act 1991 for water resources and the preparation of coastal plans. It also undertakes management of the harbour bed and waters. The Department of Conservation (Bay of Plenty Conservancy) is responsible for the management of wildlife, and

the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries for administration of fisheries and shellfisheries. The Eastern Region Fish and Game Council manages sport fishing and game-bird hunting.

Jurisdiction: Territorial: Bay of Plenty Regional Council and Western Bay of Plenty District Council (except for a very small area of the Kaituna River Mouth which lies in the Tauranga District). Functional jurisdiction for conservation: Department of Conservation, Bay of Plenty Conservancy.

References: Beadel (1989a, 1989b); Given (1990); Rasch (1989); Richmond & Forbes (1990).

Reasons for inclusion:

- 1a The Maketu-Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna River Mouth are a particularly good representative example of an estuarine wetland complex.
- 2a The wetlands support substantial populations of three globally threatened birds species, *Charadrius obscurus*, *Anarhynchus frontalis* and *Chlidonias albostrigatus*.
- 2b The wetlands support several rare and local plant species, such as *Thelypteris confluens* and *Cyclosorus interruptus*.
- 2c The wetlands are of special importance as breeding habitat for a number of waterfowl species, and as wintering habitat for several international migratory shorebirds.
- 3c The wetlands regularly support 1% or more of the regional populations of *Haematopus unicolor* (up to 1.5%) and *Charadrius obscurus* (up to 3%).

Source: Keith Owen.

Appendix 6.3

**Regional Coastal Environment Plant Summary
(E.B.O.P., 1995)**

AREA OF SIGNIFICANT CONSERVATION VALUE

Site Name: MAKETU/WAIHI ESTUARIES AND OKUREI POINT

Site Number: 04 010

Map Reference: NZMS 260 - V14 : 150 790

The ASCV includes that part of the coastal marine area of Maketu and Waihi Estuaries and inshore coastal waters bounded by a line running from the west bank of the Kaituna River at longitude 176°25' East, northwards one nautical mile to latitude 37°44' South, thence a straight line running east to intersect with a line running south along longitude 176°30' East to meet Pukehina Beach, then following the natural line of MHWS westward around the margins of Waihi estuary, Okurei (Town) Point and Maketu estuary to the west bank of the mouth of the Kaituna River.

Brief Locality Description and Summary

Located between Whakatane and Tauranga are two bar built estuaries separated by a headland.


Maketu Estuary is located on the Western side of Okurei (Town Point). In the past Maketu had been the outlet of the Kaituna River. Flood control works diverted most of the river flow from the estuary in 1958. As a result of these works large areas of marsh died off and influxes of sand from the sea destroyed pipi and cockle beds. Offshore there has been a build up of sand. Because of public concern about the degradation of Maketu estuary, the Department of Conservation was instructed by Cabinet to prepare a restoration strategy. Part of the works which has now been approved by the Planning Tribunal is to redivert part of the Kaituna River flow back into the estuary. Presently, there are large beds of cockles and pipis which are intensively harvested for food.

Okurei Point is a headland composed of lahatic pumiceous flows. Strata have been reworked by river flow and contain rhyolitic, andesitic and ignimbritic boulders. Numerous pa and 67 midden sites are concentrated in this area. On the shore are a raised bed of preexisting boulders and offshore extensive rock reefs with large mussel, kina and puaa populations.

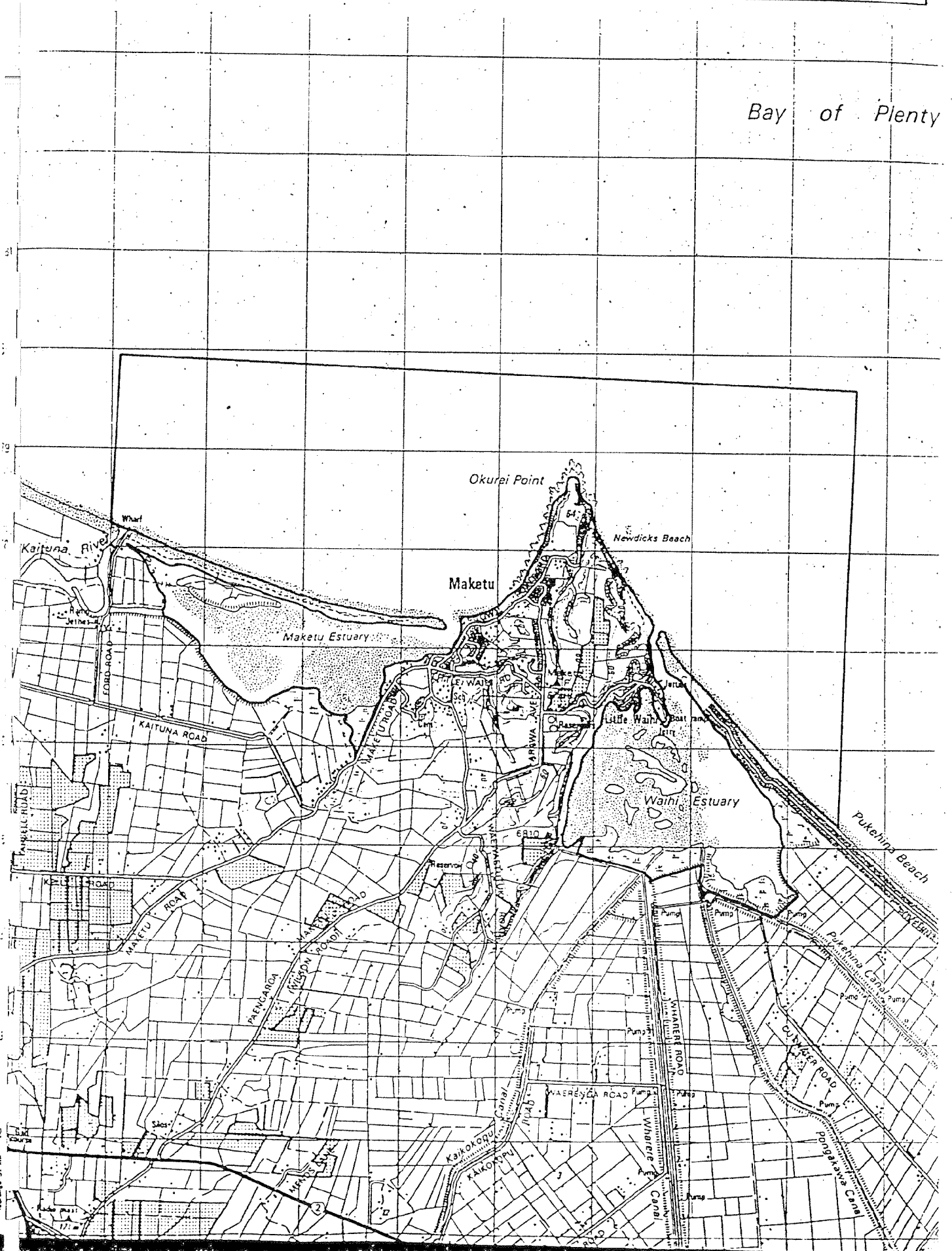
Little Waihi Estuary receives inflow from the Pukehina and Kaikokopu rivers. These rivers have all been channelised, stopbanked and regularly dredged. This has resulted in less sand than expected entering the estuary. It has extensive wetlands on its landward side. Mangroves, merge into saltmarsh then a freshwater wetland. Several sandy cays also exist.

AREA OF SIGNIFICANT CONSERVATION VALUES ASCV 04-010 MAKETU/WAIHI ESTUARIES/OKUREI POINT

MAP REF: N.Z.M.S. 260 V14
SCALE 1:50,000

 Department of Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai

Bay of Plenty



10.0 Conservation Values (as per Schedule 2, draft NZCPS)

10.1 Maori Cultural Values

Consultation with tangata whenua to identify values is not yet complete. However, earlier consultation for the restoration planning of Maketu estuary clearly identified that estuary as being regionally important as a Tauranga waka (Arawa canoe first landing) and for mahinga kai (Richmond & Forbes, 1990).

10.2 Protected Areas

(i) Maketu Spit

Maketu Spit is a recreation reserve administered by the Western Bay of Plenty District Council. This spit contains a small population (five plants) of *Austrofestuca littoralis*, a species classed as rare. This species was once relatively common in sand dune communities in New Zealand; however only 13 locations are now known to occur in the North Island (Beadel, 1994). A small population of pingao sedge also survives on the spit. At the tip of the spit on average five pairs of the endangered New Zealand dotterel nest (Owen 1991). These birds favour lightly vegetated areas, where predators can be sighted, to nest. They feed in the estuary and along the coast.

(ii) Little Waihi Spit

Parts of Pukehina Spit are also a recreation reserve. At the spit tip is a roost where up to 88 nationally rare variable oyster catchers have been recorded, about 4.4% of the total population (Owen 1991).

(iii) Wildlife Management Reserve

In the upper reaches of Little Waihi Estuary below MHWS is a wildlife management reserve. This site contains relatively intact saltmarsh vegetation. The salt marsh in the Waewaetutuki wetland is representative of the remaining saltmarsh in Waihi Estuary. There are two regionally uncommon species at this site, *Mimulus repens* and *Bolboschoenus caldwellii*. While *Mimulus repens* occurs locally throughout New Zealand it is known from only one other site in the Tauranga Ecological District and not currently known from elsewhere in the Coromandel-Bay of Plenty-East Cape region. *Bolboschoenus caldwellii* is known from only a few locations between East Cape and Cape Colville (Beadel, 1994). These wetlands also hold high numbers of North island fernbird and a few Australasian bittern (K Owen, pers. comm.).

(iv) Other Protection

On the north east and south margins of the Waihi estuary there is either an esplanade or a marginal strip protection.

10.3 Wetlands, Estuaries, Coastal Lagoons

The Kaituna River Mouth, Maketu/Little Waihi complex meet the following Ramsar criteria for an internationally significant wetland (Owen 1991, pers. comm).

- 1(c) It is a particularly good representative example of a common type of wetland.
- 2(a) It supports an appreciable assemblage of rare, vulnerable or endangered species or subspecies of plant or waterfowl and an appreciable number of individuals of any one or more of these species.

The waterfowl include nine nationally vulnerable species, the New Zealand dotterel, banded dotterel, wrybill, Caspian tern, black fronted tern, reef heron, royal spoonbill, Australasian bittern and banded rail. Nationally rare species found in this area include the variable oystercatcher, Pacific golden plover, far eastern curlew, Asiatic whimbrel, sharp-tailed sand piper, curlew sandpiper, red necked stint, sanderling and eastern little tern and the regionally vulnerable North Island fernbird. The plants include the nationally vulnerable *Thelypteris confluens* and the nationally rare *Cyclosorus interruptus*.

- 2(c) It is of special value as a habitat of plants or waterfowl at a critical stage of their biological cycle. In the case of international migrants - it is summering over. For other species it is during breeding.
- 3(c) % of individuals of a population.
 - (a) 5.6% of the variable oystercatcher national population reside at the wetland, i.e. 112 birds.
 - (b) 1.4% of the New Zealand dotterel national population reside at the wetland, i.e. 42 birds.

In the south-west part of Little Waihi Estuary is an excellent example of transitional wetland sequence of mangroves, estuarine rushes (*Leptocarpus similis* and *Juncus spp.*) and freshwater raupo (*Typha orientalis*), sedges (*Scirpus spp.*) and flax (*Phormium tenax*). This Waewaetutuki wetland is one of the largest remaining in the Bay of Plenty. It has not yet been thoroughly examined by botanists but it could be of higher ranking than its present district ranking. This wetland is relict of the once extensive Pongakawa wetlands. This still acts as a buffer zone between the estuary and surrounding farmland. Within this estuary are large areas of minimally modified tidal flats used by a wide variety of waders including migrants. About 1300 eastern bar tailed godwits are recorded in summer on these two estuaries. Some 50 - 100 knots are recorded. Rarer migrants include ruddy turnstone, red necked stint, whimbrel sp., golden plover, Mongolian dotterel, pectoral sandpiper and sharp tailed sand piper (OSNZ 1986 - 1994). These birds arrive in September and depart in February - March. Of interest is the departure to Siberia and other northern latitudes when large numbers of birds arrive from further south to

feed before continuing their migration north, and thus Maketu and Little Waihi are important staging posts for migration (Ken Murray, pers. comm.).

Of national importance are the populations of New Zealand coastal birds such as variable oystercatcher. About 5.4% of the total population is found at Little Waihi and Maketu estuaries (Owen 1991). These birds prefer to feed on the extensive cockle beds found there.

In Maketu Estuary there are remnant marshes in the south eastern corner. This wetland has been given a regional significance ranking by Beadel, 1994. In the mid part of the estuary are extensive intertidal flats and channels which contain large cockle and pipi beds. Cockles and worms are extensively harvested by variable oyster catcher.

In both estuaries significant numbers of juvenile flounder, kahawai (*Arripis trutta*), yellow eye mullet (*Aldrichetta forsteri*), grey mullet and eels are found. Juvenile flounder are eaten by reef herons while yellow eye mullet are preyed upon by Caspian terns.

10.4 Marine Mammals and Birds

Maketu and Little Waihi Estuary are important feeding and roosting areas for migratory birds and for waders. Forty-eight species of waders, wetland and shorebirds as well as migrant visitors are found in Maketu and Little Waihi Estuaries and Kaituna wetlands (Owen 1991). Eight of these are nationally threatened or endangered species including the New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus*) which breeds on Maketu Spit, caspian tern (*Hydroprogne caspia*), banded rail (*Rallus philippensis*) which breeds in the area, wrybill (*Anarhynchus frontalis*), Australasian bittern (*Botaurus stellaris*), banded dotterel (*Charadrius bicinctus*), reef heron (*Egretta sacra*), white heron (*E. alba modesta*), royal spoonbill (*Platalea leucorodia*) which there are some dozen birds and variable oystercatcher (*Haematopus unicolor*).

Maketu and Little Waihi Estuaries are important feeding areas for waders such as eastern bar-tailed godwit, pied stilt and variable oyster catcher.

10.5 Ecosystems, Flora and Fauna Habitats

The Maketu and Little Waihi Estuaries coupled with Okurei Point are excellent examples of three regionally significant coastal ecosystems. Maketu Estuary after the removal of the Kaituna River waters in 1958 has developed a strong marine component including starfish (*Patriella regularis*), sand dollar (*Arachniodes novae zelandiae*) and large cockle population (Richmond & Forbes 1990). It would be more accurately referred to as Maketu Inlet. On the other hand, Little Waihi Estuary is clearly estuarine including a strong freshwater component on its margins. An excellent example is the Waewaetutuki wetland with its cabbage tree/grey willow -

(*Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua*)/*Lemna minor* - sedges - *Blechnum minus* forest and (Cabbage tree)/*Muehlenbeckia complexa*/harakeke - *Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua* - *Baumea articulata* - *B. sp.* (*B. rubiginosa*) - raupo scrubland (Beadel 1994).

The reefs off Okurei Point have the largest mussel beds in the Bay of Plenty and are under intense harvesting pressure.

10.6 Scenic Sites

Not applicable.

10.7 Historic Sites

Numerous pa and 67 middens have been located on the land adjacent to the ASCV.

10.8 Coastal Landforms and Associated Processes

The entrances of Maketu and Little Waihi Estuaries are located on either side of the Okurei Point Headland. This geomorphological phenomenon of converging littoral drift is the only example found in New Zealand. In addition only one example is known from Australia making the New Zealand example of more than national significance (Professor T R Healy, pers. comm.). Converging spits with mouths adjacent to a headland are caused by longshore drifts converging from both east and west. Okurei Point shelters the coast from swells from the east at Maketu and from the north at Little Waihi. Motiti Island also contributes through its refraction of swells.

Okurei Point is a raised river bed with pre-existing boulders. Erosion of this headland has resulted in the formation of reefs offshore. These can be boulders, grouped or individuals surrounded by sand. On top of these boulders are extensive mussel beds.

References

Beadel, S M 1994. Significant indigenous vegetation of the Bay of Plenty Coastal Zone. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty by Wildlands Consultants Ltd.

Healy, T R (pers. comm.). Professor of Coastal Science at University of Waikato.




Murray, K N 1978. Ecology and Geomorphology of Maketu Estuary. Unpublished MSc Thesis University of Waikato.

Murray, K N (pers. comm.). Coastal Planner, Department of Conservation.

Owen K L 1991. A Preliminary Directory of Bay of Plenty Wetlands of International Importance. Unpublished Report, Department of Conservation, Rotorua.

Richmond, C J and Thorpe, S A 1989. Maketu Estuary Restoration Strategy. Technical Report Series No. 3, Department of Conservation, Rotorua. 99pp.

LEGEND

-  Coastal Habitat Preservation Zone
-  Sites of district or local significance (CMA)
-  Sites of significance (Land)



INSET

Motiti Island

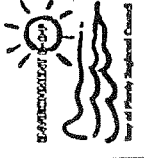
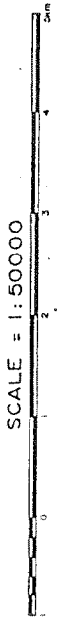
Labels on inset map: Te Manahi Point, Waikare Bay, Maunakawahi Point, Pongauti Point, Oranga Bay, Te Rotohoro Point, Waikare Point, Te Huru Point, Te Huru Bay, Mokuwhakaheke Island, Mokuwhakaheke Island, Pukewere Point, Waikare Bay, Taumatika Point, Teumahi Island.



REGIONAL COASTAL ENVIRONMENT PLAN

ZONES AND SIGNIFICANT SITES

MAP 1 - SHEET 7



Topographic information derived from: D05L1 mapping Database number CD/0538047/CROWN COPYRIGHT RESERVED

TAURANGA COUNTY - FRESHWATER WETLANDS AND LAKES

OUTSTANDING

NAME	NUMBER	MAP REFERENCE	AREA (HA)	DESCRIPTION
Matakana Island Wildlife Refuge	2	N53/3474-5843	50	Flax-sedge wetland surrounding 10 ha open water. Cabbage tree, willow and some raupo present and surrounded by pines. Fernbird, spotless crane and banded rail present, brown teal released. Common waterfowl, shags, and field birds. DOC.

HIGH

NAME	NUMBER	MAP REFERENCE	AREA (HA)	DESCRIPTION
Middle Kaituna River	42	N67/3856-5404 to 3825-5468	1.5 k	Moderately sized river travelling through developed land. Riparian vegetation includes willows, other exotics, and small amounts of rushes and sedges. High numbers of common waterfowl and field birds. Private.
Kaituna River and Wetland/Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve	43	N58, 67/3857-5404 to 3882-5514	22 k of river and 50 ha wetland	Varying vegetation on riparian strip: willow, scrub, pines, wattles, cabbage tree. Some pockets of rush-sedge wetland. Bittern and Caspian tern present. High numbers of waders, waterfowl and field birds. Crown/Private.

Appendix 6.6

**Kaituna River Whitebait Spawning Sites
(Mitchell, 1990)**

4.2 Kaituna River

Date of observations: 23/02/88, 20/03/88, 18/04/88. Spawning was observed at the same sites in autumn 1989 and 1990.

Spawning observed: +.

Eggs found: +.

Locality: Spawning occurred on both banks of the mainstem, 2 km upstream from the cut (Fig. 2). The true left bank was the favoured site and spawning occurred along an 120 m stretch extending back 8-10 m from the river's edge. Some spawning also occurred on the true right bank opposite the main site. The banks appear to have been artificially raised during stopbanking, and channels connected to old borrow pits have cut through the banks to the river. Spawning was observed, and eggs were found, on the margins of the borrow pits close to the channels.

Vegetation: *Paspalum*, *Festuca*, and *Juncus gregiflorus* on patches of slightly higher ground were used amid a swampy area covered with *Glyceria maxima*, *Juncus bufonus*, *Typha orientalis*, and *Paspalum*.

Land use: Grazing dry stock on the true left bank (cattle, goats, sheep). Grazing dairy cattle on the true right bank.

Threats to survival of eggs: Part of the left bank was fenced in autumn 1989, but grazing is a threat in dry autumns. The right bank is grazed regularly. Possible salt intrusion since opening of the Kaituna Cut has killed bankside willows and they are now collapsing onto the site. Remnant native vegetation (*Phormium*, *Coprosma*, *Cordyline*) attracts stock. A surveyed public access road goes through the middle of the spawning site on the right bank.

Land tenure: The true left bank is the property of E.J. Ford, Moehau Street, Te Puke. The right bank is part of the lower Kaituna Flood Protection Scheme and is administered by the Bay of Plenty Regional Council.

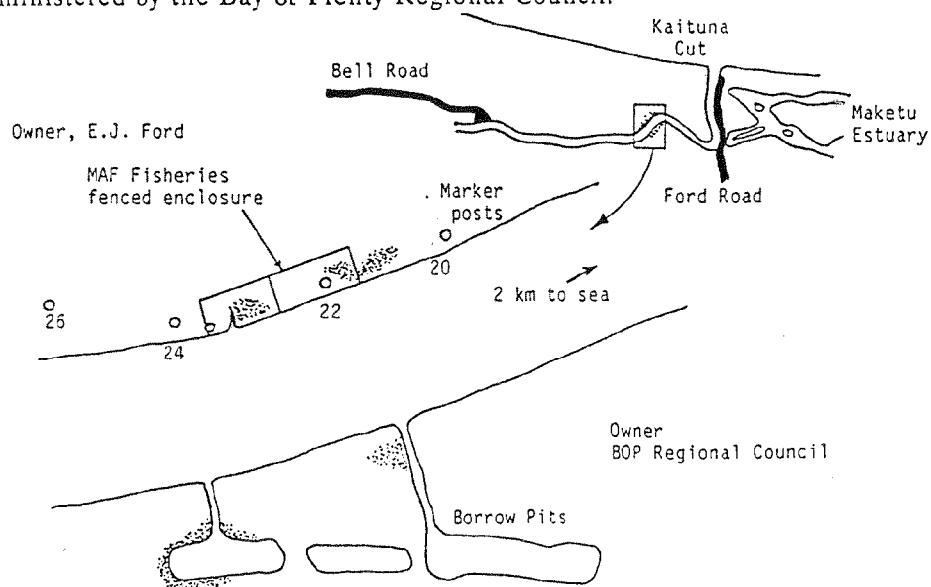


FIGURE 2. Whitebait spawning sites on the Kaituna River.

Appendix 6.7

Fisheries Record Forms

FRESHWATER FISH DATABASE FORM

98112FISH.WPD

Date 05.08.98	River/Lake system KAITUNA RIVER	SITE 1	
Time 1100 HRS NZST	Sampling locality BELL ROAD, LAST FARM ON NORTHSIDE OF ROAD		
Observer K BENNETT	Access DOWN RACE TOWARD BELL ROAD AND ACROSS PADDOCK	Altitude (m)	5
Organisation BIORESEARCHES	NZMS 260	Map U14	Co-ords: 057 793
Fishing method EFM 300	Length fished (m) 25	Permanent water YES?	Tidal water NO?

HABITAT DATA

Water	Colour	-		Clarity	MOD. 37 CM		Temp. °C	7.3	Cond µS	447	
	Average width (m)	3.5		Average depth (m)	0.4		Dissolved Oxygen				
					Maximum depth (m)	0.6		Saturation (%)	44	gm ⁻³	5.3
Habitat type (%)	Still	Backwater	Pool	Run	Riffle	Rapid	Cascade				
Substrate type (%)	Mud	Sand	Fine gravel	Coarse gravel	Cobble	Boulder	Bedrock				
Fish cover (%)	Substrate	Weed algae	50	Instream debris	90	Bank veg.	Undercut banks	Over head shade	20	Other	
Catchment vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Horticulture	Urban zone	Scrub	Pastoral	100	Other			
Riparian vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Grass tussock	50	Exposed bed	Scrub willow	50	Raupo flax	Other		
Type of river/ stream / lake	ISOLATED SECTION OF OLD STREAM CHANNEL								Photo no.		
Water level	MODERATE - HIGH		Downstream blockage	SOIL PLUG		Pollution	*				
Bottom fauna abundance	LOW		Predominant species group	OSTRACODS							
Purpose of work	AEE ROAD CONSTRUCTION										

FISH DATA

Species and life stage	Abundance	Length data	Comments / capture location
1 EELS (<i>Anguilla</i> spp)	6	250 - 400 MM	
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			

General comments about site or fish

* RUBBISH DUMPED AT TOP OF STREAM FOR ~ 100 M ALONG LENGTH INCLUDING WOOD, OLD CARS, DEAD COWS ETC.

FRESHWATER FISH DATABASE FORM							98112FISH	
Date 05.08.98		River/Lake system KAITUNA RIVER OXBOW					SITE 2S	
Time 0945 HRS NZST		Sampling locality SOUTH SIDE OF BELL ROAD (ADJACENT TO NICCOL'S PROPERTY)						
Observer K BENNETT		Access FROM BELL ROAD				Altitude (m) 5		
Organisation BIORESEARCHES		NZMS 260		Map U14		Co-ords: 058 791		Inland dist. (km) 6
Fishing method EFM 300		Length fished (m) 15 M		Permanent water YES		Tidal water YES		
HABITAT DATA								
Water	Colour BROWN			Clarity 27 CM		Temp. °C 12.0	Cond µ/S 283	
	Average width (m) 30		Average depth (m) C.1-2	Maximum depth (m) C.2-3		Dissolved Oxygen		
	Saturation (%) 10	gm ³ 1.1						
Habitat type (%)	Still 95	Backwater	Pool	Run 5	Riffle	Rapid	Cascade	
Substrate type (%)	Mud 100	Sand	Fine gravel	Coarse gravel	Cobble	Boulder	Bedrock	
Fish cover (%)	Substrate	Weed algae 30	Instream debris	Bank veg. 10	Undercut banks	Over head shade	Other	
Catchment vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Horticulture	Urban zone	Scrub	Pastoral 100	Other	
Riparian vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Grass tussock 90	Exposed bed	Scrub willow 10	Raupo flax	Other	
Type of river/ stream / lake OXBOW							Photo no.	
Water level NORMAL		Downstream blockage LAND WITH OUTFLOW				Pollution		
Bottom fauna abundance VERY LOW		Predominant species group PAROXYETHIRA SP						
Purpose of work AEE ROAD CONSTRUCTION								
FISH DATA								
Species and life stage			Abundance	Length data		Comments / capture location		
1 MOSQUITO FISH (<i>Gambusia affinis</i>)			1 X	20 mm				
2 EEL (<i>Anguilla</i> spp)			1	200 mm				
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9								
10								
11								
12								
General comments about site or fish								
OXBOW FISHED BY COMMERCIAL EEL FISHERMEN.								

FRESHWATER FISH DATABASE FORM							98112FISH						
Date	05.08.98		River/Lake system KAITUNA RIVER OXBOW				SITE 2N						
Time	1000 HRS NZST		Sampling locality NORTH SIDE OF OXBOW - BELL ROAD										
Observer	K BENNETT		Access BELL ROAD			Altitude (m)		5					
Organisation	BIORESEARCHES		NZMS 260	Map U14	Co-ords: 058 792		Inland dist. (km)		6				
Fishing method	EFM 300		Length fished (m)		Permanent water		Tidal water						
			20		YES		YES						
HABITAT DATA													
Water	Colour			BROWN		Clarity		POOR	Temp. °C	10.2	Cond µS	274	
	Average width (m)		Average depth (m)		Maximum depth (m)		Dissolved Oxygen						
	30		C.1-2		C.2-3		Saturation (%)		gm ³				
	15		1.6										
Habitat type (%)	Still	95	Backwater	Pool	Run	5	Riffle	Rapid	Cascade				
Substrate type (%)	Mud	100	Sand	Fine gravel	Coarse gravel		Cobble	Boulder	Bedrock				
Fish cover (%)	Substrate		Weed algae	40	Instream debris	5	Bank veg.	10	Undercut banks	Over head shade	Other		
Catchment vegetation (%)	Native forest		Exotic forest		Horticulture		Urban zone		Scrub	Pastoral	100	Other	
Riparian vegetation (%)	Native forest		Exotic forest		Grass tussock	80	Exposed bed		Scrub willow	20	Raupo flax	Other	
Type of river/ stream / lake											OXBOW	Photo no.	
Water level		NORMAL		Downstream blockage			SMALL OUTLET TO RIVER		Pollution			-	
Bottom fauna abundance		VERY LOW		Predominant species group								SNAIL (LYMNAEA SP) AND CHIRONOMIDS	
Purpose of work		AEE ROAD CONSTRUCTION											
FISH DATA													
Species and life stage			Abundance		Length data			Comments / capture location					
1 EEL (<i>Anguilla</i> spp)			1		200 MM								
2 ELVERS (<i>Anguilla</i> spp)			3		60 - 80 MM								
3 MOSQUITO FISH (<i>Gambusia affinis</i>)			10+		15 - 30 MM								
4													
5													
6													
7													
8													
9													
10													
11													
12													
General comments about site or fish													

FRESHWATER FISH DATABASE FORM	98112FISH
--------------------------------------	-----------

Date 05.08.98	River/Lake system KAITUNA RIVER	SITE 3
Time 0845 HRS NZST	Sampling locality C.100 M UPSTREAM OF BELL ROAD BOAT RAMP	
Observer K BENNETT	Access END OF BELL ROAD	Altitude (m) 5
Organisation BIORESEARCHES	NZMS 260 Map U14 Co-ords: 062 787	Inland dist. (km) 6
Fishing method EFM 300	Length fished (m) 30	Permanent water YES Tidal water YES

HABITAT DATA

Water	Colour -			Clarity 73.5 CM		Temp. °C 11.1 μ s 117		
	Average width (m) 60		Average depth (m) C.2-3		Maximum depth (m)		Dissolved Oxygen	
							Saturation (%) 86 gm ⁻³ 9.4	
Habitat type (%)	Still	Backwater	Pool	Run 100	Riffle	Rapid	Cascade	
Substrate type (%)	Mud 95	Sand	Fine gravel	Coarse gravel	Cobble	Boulder 5	Bedrock	
Fish cover (%)	Substrate	Weed algae 10	Instream debris	Bank veg. 5	Undercut banks	Over head shade	Other	
Catchment vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Horticulture	Urban zone	Scrub	Pastoral 100	Other	
Riparian vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Grass tussock 98	Exposed bed	Scrub willow 2	Raupo flax	Other	
Type of river/ stream / lake LARGE LOWLAND RIVER							Photo no.	
Water level NORMAL		Downstream blockage -			Pollution -			
Bottom fauna abundance MODERATE		Predominant species group FRESHWATER SHRIMP (<i>Paratya</i> sp)						
Purpose of work AEE ROAD REALIGNMENT								

FISH DATA

Species and life stage	Abundance	Length data	Comments / capture location
1 GIANT BULLIES (<i>Gobiomorphus gobioides</i>)	4 X	70 - 130 MM	WEED MATS
2 SHORTFINNED EELS (<i>Anguilla australis</i>)	4 X	200 - 400 MM	BOULDERS
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			

General comments about site or fish
 SHRIMPS - EXTREMELY ABUNDANT.
 FISHED RIVER MARGIN.

FRESHWATER FISH DATABASE FORM							98112FISH	
Date 04.08.98		River/Lake system KAITUNA RIVER					SITE 5	
Time 1700 HRS NZST		Sampling locality CANAL ADJACENT TO PAH ROAD, TE PUKE						
Observer K BENNETT		Access FROM ROAD			Altitude (m) 5			
Organisation BIORESEARCHES		NZMS 260		Map U14		Co-ords: 074 770		Inland dist. (km) 5
Fishing method NOT FISHED		Length fished (m) NIL		Permanent water YES			Tidal water YES?	
HABITAT DATA								
Water	Colour BROWN			Clarity 31 CM		Temp. °C 13.9	Cond µ/S 333	
	Average width (m) 6		Average depth (m)		Maximum depth (m) ~1.5 - 2.0		Dissolved Oxygen Saturation (%) 80	
						gm ⁻³ 8.3		
Habitat type (%)	Still 100	Backwater	Pool	Run	Riffle	Rapid	Cascade	
Substrate type (%)	Mud 100	Sand	Fine gravel	Coarse gravel	Cobble	Boulder	Bedrock	
Fish cover (%)	Substrate	Weed algae 50	Instream debris	Bank veg.	Undercut banks	Over head shade	Other	
Catchment vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Horticulture	Urban zone	Scrub	Pastoral 100	Other	
Riparian vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Grass tussock 100	Exposed bed	Scrub willow	Raupo flax	Other	
Type of river/ stream / lake MAIN DRAINAGE CANAL							Photo no.	
Water level NORMAL		Downstream blockage -			Pollution			
Bottom fauna abundance LOW		Predominant species group RED DAMSELFLY LARVAE						
Purpose of work AEE HIGHWAY REALIGNMENT								
FISH DATA								
Species and life stage			Abundance	Length data		Comments / capture location		
1 MOSQUITO FISH (<i>Gambusia affinis</i>)			1	30 MM		CAUGHT IN NET SWEEP		
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9								
10								
11								
12								
General comments about site or fish								
VERTICAL CANAL BANKS 2 M - ELECTRIC FISHING IMPRACTICAL.								

FRESHWATER FISH DATABASE FORM

98112FISH

Date 04.08.98	River/Lake system KAITUNA RIVER		
Time 1530 HRS NZST	Sampling locality PAH ROAD SITE 4		
Observer E SIDES	Access FARM TRACK	Altitude (m) 5	
Organisation BIORESEARCHES	NZMS 260	Map U14	Co-ords: 064 781 Inland dist. (km) 5
Fishing method EFM 300	Length fished (m) 25	Permanent water YES	Tidal water NO

HABITAT DATA

Water	Colour	BROWN			Clarity	POOR - 11 CM	Temp. °C	12.3	Cond µ/S	452
	Average width (m)	2.5		Average depth (m)	0.4		Maximum depth (m)	0.7		
						Dissolved Oxygen		Saturation (%)	30 gm ³ 3.2	
Habitat type (%)	Still	100	Backwater	Pool	Run	Riffle	Rapid	Cascade		
Substrate type (%)	Mud	100	Sand	Fine gravel	Coarse gravel	Cobble	Boulder	Bedrock		
Fish cover (%)	Substrate	Weed	algae	Instream debris	Bank veg.	50	Undercut banks	Over head shade	Other	
Catchment vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Horticulture	Urban zone	Scrub	Pastoral	100	Other		
Riparian vegetation (%)	Native forest	Exotic forest	Grass tussock	100	Exposed bed	Scrub willow	Raupo flax	Other		
Type of river/ stream / lake	FARM DRAIN/WETLAND								Photo no.	
Water level	AVERAGE		Downstream blockage FARM CROSSING WITHOUT CULVERT				Pollution -			
Bottom fauna abundance	LOW		Predominant species group							
Purpose of work	AEE ROAD CONSTRUCTION									

FISH DATA

Species and life stage	Abundance	Length data	Comments / capture location
1 NO FISH RECORDED *			
2 EEL IN ADJACENT DRAIN (<i>Anguilla</i> sp)	LOW	1 X	DEPTH 1 M.
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			

General comments about site or fish

* FISHING MACHINE PROBABLY NOT VERY EFFECTIVE DUE TO HIGH CONDUCTIVITY.

RAUPO AND RUSHES MAIN AQUATIC PLANTS.

Appendix 6.8

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Results

PHYLUM	CLASS: Order	Family	Taxa	FFG MCI	Site					Site EA5	
					EA1	EA2N	EA2S	EA3	EA4		
ANNELIDA	OLIGOCHAETA		Oligochaeta indet	CB 1						10	
MOLLUSCA	HIRUDINEA		Hirudinea	P 3	1						
		Hydrobiidae	<i>Potamopyrgus antipodarum</i>	CB 4			59				
		Physidae	<i>Physa fontinalis</i>	CB 3							1
ARTHROPODA	CRUSTACEA: Ostracoda	Lymnaeidae	<i>Lymnaea columella</i>	CB 3	2						
		Ostracoda indet type A		F 3	3						
		Ostracoda indet type B		F 3	13						
		Paracalliope sp		CB 5			1				
		<i>Paratya curvirostris</i>		CB 5			152				
		Zygoptera	<i>Xanthocnemis zealandica</i>	P 5			1		11		26
			<i>Austrolestes colenisonis</i>	P 5					6		1
		Ephemeroptera	<i>Mauitulus luma</i>	CB 5			1				
			<i>Zephlebia sp</i>	CB 7			1				
			<i>Zelandobius sp</i>	CB 5			1				
Plecoptera	Gripopterygidae		Pi 2		1						
Trichoptera	Hydroptiliidae		CB 7								
	Conoesucidae		CB 7			1					
Hemiptera	Veliidae		Pi 5			1				1	
Coleoptera	Scirtidae		*	1						2	
	Dytiscidae		*	2						5	
		<i>Rhantus pulverosus</i>	*	*	4					15	
	Lepidoptera	<i>Hygraula nitens</i>	S 4			1					
Diptera	Culicidae		*	8						17	
	Chironomidae		CB 1	5	1		1			31	
	Stratiomyidae		*	5	1					1	
Collembola	Collembola indet.		CB 6	1							
TOTALS:					10	3	1	10	9	4	
					0	0	1	4	0	0	
					39	4	1	219	98	29	

* = unknown

Appendix 6.9

**Botanical Report - 1983
(Miller, 1983)**

PROPOSED WILDLIFE RESERVE AT THE LOWER KAITUNA RIVER
PRELIMINARY BOTANICAL REPORT

Introduction:

The area under consideration consists of a flat, low-lying area adjacent to the lower reaches of the Kaituna River, just above the point where this river enters the Maketu Estuary. (Grid Reference N58 84-51-). The proposed reserve has an area of approximately 250 hectares. On the northern side it is bounded by the Kaituna River, on the other three sides by farmland, formerly wetlands, now drained. Access is via Pah Road, which runs off S.H. 2 between the Rangiuuru Freezing Works and Te Matai.

The Kaituna River is stopbanked along the length of the reserve, as well as further upstream and downstream. In addition the river has been straightened out considerably in this vicinity. Three old bends of the river lie within the reserve. They contain water, but there is no flow. This stopbanking of the river, carried out by the Bay of Plenty Catchment Commission, has had a serious effect on the reserve. The area supports a number of stands for the shooting of waterfowl. The area was visited on several occasions during February and March 1983.

Vegetation:

Around the southern and western perimeter of the reserve is an area of pasture, frequently grazed by cattle. A number of other open areas through the reserve support weedy pasture. Most of the reserve is covered by a canopy, consisting in the main of willows (Salix spp.) or Kanuka (Leptospermum ericoides). This vegetation tends to be very dense, with a large number of drawn-up trees growing closely together.

This canopy generally has a dense understory of Coprosmas (mostly C. propinqua, C. robusta and C. tenuicaulis and their hybrids) and blackberry (Rubus fruticosus agg.) with a ground cover of ferns, niggerheads (Carex secta) and various herbaceous plants. Many of the more open areas of the reserve are badly overgrown with blackberry and thistles (Cirsium vulgare) which together with dense thickets of flax (Phormium tenax) make progress through some parts of the reserve a laborious and uncomfortable experience. A feature of the reserve is the rampant growth of certain weed species (e.g. thistles growing to 8 feet, 2.4m, in height). This is a result of the recent

drying out of the reserve in response to the construction of stop-banks along the Kaituna River. The numerous fallen willows and Cabbage trees (Cordyline australis) seen are probably also due to drying out, with the resultant soil shrinkage and cracking weakening the roots of the trees allowing them to be blown over by strong winds.

Other undesirable influences at work are the intrusion of cattle into the canopy zones, and the browsing by goats throughout the reserve. The cattle are, of course, necessary to graze the pasture areas around the perimeter of the reserve, but further fencing is desirable to keep them away from the remainder of the reserve. Goats have no place in such a reserve and their removal or eradication is desirable. About 40 - 50 goats were seen on one visit to the reserve.

Plant Communities:

The pasture around the southern and western perimeter of the reserve is typical rather poor lowland pasture, consisting of grasses such as ryegrass (Lolium perenne), Yorkshire Fog (Holcus lanatus), various rushes (Juncus spp.) and sedges (Carex spp.), together with weedy perennials such as pennyroyal (Mentha pulegium), ragwort (Senecio jacobaea) and Lotus pedunculatus. This pasture is heavily grazed, which tends to keep the number of species rather small.

Much of the remaining open areas, both around the perimeter and through old clearings throughout the reserve, consists of weedy pasture. Apart from the grasses etc., already mentioned, other species found included marsh bedstraw (Galium palustre), beggars' ticks (Bidens frondosa), Fireweeds (Erechtites spp.), willow herb (Epilobium ciliatum), buttercup (Ranunculus flammula), spearmint (Mentha spicata), Tarweed (Parentucellia viscosa), Epilobium pallidiflorum and scattered plants of Phormium tenax. A widespread ground cover plant is the native lobelia (Lobelia anceps) with small but attractive white or pale blue flowers. Thistles (Cirsium vulgare) and blackberry (Rubus fruticosus agg.) are widespread and vigorous. Towards the north-eastern corner of the reserve these two weeds combine with flax (Phormium tenax) to form almost impenetrable thickets.

The canopy zone is dominated by either willows, mostly crack (Salix fragilis) and pussy (S. cinerea) willows; or by kanuka (Leptospermum

ericoides). The understory consists largely of Coprosmas (C. propinqua, C. tenuicaulis, C. robusta and their hybrids) and blackberry (Rubus fruticosus agg.) with occasional plants of Hangehange (Geniostoma ligustrifolium). Scattered cabbage trees (Cordyline australis) may form part of the canopy or the understory. Flax (Phormium tenax) also forms part of the understory, as does manuka (Leptospermum scoparium).

The groundcover is made up of sedges such as the niggerhead (Carex secta) and Baumea sp.; various ferns such as Kio-kio (Blechnum capense), swamp kiokio (B. minus), Doodia media, Pteris tremula, Athyrium australe, A. japonicum, Pneumatopteris pennigera and Phymatosorus scandens growing on tree bases; beggars' ticks (Bidens frondosa) and ragwort (Senecio jacobaea) both spreading and growing vigorously to the detriment of other species; other herbs including the small grass Oplismenus imbecillus, Polygonum hydropiper and P. persicaria, Erigeron floribundus and Centella uniflora.

To the north of the central loop of the old course of the Kaituna River the willow canopy consists of large, widely spaced willows. Under these are found a more open type of understory and groundcover with additional species including a velvety nightshade (Solanum sublobatum) and spearmint (Mentha spicata). In addition, a small colony of a woolley leaved mint was found. This is still awaiting positive identification but is believed to be Mentha longifolia, a European species not previously recorded in New Zealand.

Another interesting species found was the orchid Pterostylis micromege, an uncommon species. A small colony was found on the fringe of manuka scrub along an old cut fenceline near the centre of the reserve. The first visit to the reserve was not made until late February, which is rather late for orchids, so further interesting species might be found on subsequent visits.

Towards the centre of the reserve, on the eastern side of the recently dug central drain, an area of Cordyline australis forms an open canopy, with an understory of Phormium tenax and Coprosma tenuicaulis. A few crack and pussy willows also form part of the canopy. Beggars' ticks (Bidens frondosa) and blackberry are particularly bad weeds in this area.

There are also small scattered areas of open swamp dominated by the sedge Scirpus lacustris with bindweed (Calystegia sepium), Centella uniflora, the willow weeds Polygonum hydropiper and P. decipiens, buttercup (Ranunculus flammula) and Galium palustre. These small swamps are very dry at present, and are rapidly being invaded by thistles and Bidens frondosa.

The old loops of the Kaituna River, now closed off by stopbanks, still contain open water but are rapidly being converted into swamps by the invasion of plants, particularly Raupo (Typha orientalis) and P. decipiens). The open water is often partly covered by the floating fern, Azolla filiculoides. These old river areas provide a major habitat for ducks, and their preservation is desirable.

Botanical Value of Proposed Reserve:

No species on the endangered species list were found in the reserve, but further investigation of the area is desirable. The reserve forms a large potential wetland in a district where wetlands have largely been eliminated. It contains areas of kanuka/manuka swamp and cabbage tree swamp, both being wetland types that are increasingly uncommon. The presence of the orchid Pterostylis micromega is a valuable feature, and a very interesting mint was also found.

Provided the water table can be restored to its previous level, which hopefully will remove much of the present severe weed problem, the reserve could regain much of its value as a varied and interesting wetlands area, which has suffered much from recent work on the Kaituna River.

Recommendations:

1. It is vital that the water table should be raised substantially. It is understood that this is to be done, and that much of the reserve will be under several centimetres of water. This should eliminate many of the worst weeds such as thistles, blackberry and Bidens frondosa, and should encourage a return to the original state of the reserve before the stopbanks were constructed.
2. Cattle should be fenced off from the canopy areas of the reserve.
3. Goats should be removed or eradicated from the reserve.
4. The spread of raupo into the old loops of the Kaituna River should be controlled.

5. A number of "corridors" through the reserve are being cleared at present for drainage, fencing and access purposes. Care should be taken not to reduce the canopy into small pockets by the indiscriminate forming of further such "corridors" in the future.
6. Where such corridors have been cleared, the felled canopy should be piled and burnt, rather than left lying to form a habitat for weeds such as blackberry. In general this is being done, but the fallen trees tend to be piled against the edge of the untouched canopy areas and then burnt. This poses a serious fire hazard to the remaining canopy area. Such fires should be set in open ground.
7. Further botanical investigation of the reserve, earlier in the summer, is desirable.

N.C. MILLER

April 1983

Appendix 6.9

**Botanical Report - 1983
(Miller, 1983)**

PROPOSED WILDLIFE RESERVE AT THE LOWER KAITUNA RIVER

PRELIMINARY BOTANICAL REPORT

Introduction:

The area under consideration consists of a flat, low-lying area adjacent to the lower reaches of the Kaituna River, just above the point where this river enters the Maketu Estuary. (Grid Reference N58 84- 51-). The proposed reserve has an area of approximately 250 hectares. On the northern side it is bounded by the Kaituna River, on the other three sides by farmland, formerly wetlands, now drained. Access is via Pah Road, which runs off S.H. 2 between the Rangioru Freezing Works and Te Matai.

The Kaituna River is stopbanked along the length of the reserve, as well as further upstream and downstream. In addition the river has been straightened out considerably in this vicinity. Three old bends of the river lie within the reserve. They contain water, but there is no flow. This stopbanking of the river, carried out by the Bay of Plenty Catchment Commission, has had a serious effect on the reserve. The area supports a number of stands for the shooting of waterfowl. The area was visited on several occasions during February and March 1983.

Vegetation:

Around the southern and western perimeter of the reserve is an area of pasture, frequently grazed by cattle. A number of other open areas through the reserve support weedy pasture. Most of the reserve is covered by a canopy, consisting in the main of willows (Salix spp.) or Kanuka (Leptospermum ericoides). This vegetation tends to be very dense, with a large number of drawn-up trees growing closely together.

This canopy generally has a dense understory of Coprosmas (mostly C. propinqua, C. robusta and C. tenuicaulis and their hybrids) and blackberry (Rubus fruticosus agg.) with a ground cover of ferns, niggerheads (Carex secta) and various herbaceous plants. Many of the more open areas of the reserve are badly overgrown with blackberry and thistles (Cirsium vulgare) which together with dense thickets of flax (Phormium tenax) make progress through some parts of the reserve a laborious and uncomfortable experience. A feature of the reserve is the rampant growth of certain weed species (e.g. thistles growing to 8 feet, 2.4m, in height). This is a result of the recent

drying out of the reserve in response to the construction of stop-banks along the Kaituna River. The numerous fallen willows and Cabbage trees (Cordyline australis) seen are probably also due to drying out, with the resultant soil shrinkage and cracking weakening the roots of the trees allowing them to be blown over by strong winds.

Other undesirable influences at work are the intrusion of cattle into the canopy zones, and the browsing by goats throughout the reserve. The cattle are, of course, necessary to graze the pasture areas around the perimeter of the reserve, but further fencing is desirable to keep them away from the remainder of the reserve. Goats have no place in such a reserve and their removal or eradication is desirable. About 40 - 50 goats were seen on one visit to the reserve.

Plant Communities:

The pasture around the southern and western perimeter of the reserve is typical rather poor lowland pasture, consisting of grasses such as ryegrass (Lolium perenne), Yorkshire Fog (Holcus lanatus), various rushes (Juncus spp.) and sedges (Carex spp.), together with weedy perennials such as pennyroyal (Mentha pulegium), ragwort (Senecio jacobaea) and Lotus pedunculatus. This pasture is heavily grazed, which tends to keep the number of species rather small.

Much of the remaining open areas, both around the perimeter and through old clearings throughout the reserve, consists of weedy pasture. Apart from the grasses etc., already mentioned, other species found included marsh bedstraw (Galium palustre), beggars' ticks (Bidens frondosa), Fireweeds (Erechtites spp.), willow herb (Epilobium ciliatum), buttercup (Ranunculus flammula), spearmint (Mentha spicata), Tarweed (Parentucellia viscosa), Epilobium pallidiflorum and scattered plants of Phormium tenax. A widespread ground cover plant is the native lobelia (Lobelia anceps) with small but attractive white or pale blue flowers. Thistles (Cirsium vulgare) and blackberry (Rubus fruticosus agg.) are widespread and vigorous. Towards the north-eastern corner of the reserve these two weeds combine with flax (Phormium tenax) to form almost impenetrable thickets.

The canopy zone is dominated by either willows, mostly crack (Salix fragilis) and pussy (S. cinerea) willows; or by kanuka (Leptospermum

ericoides). The understory consists largely of Coprosmas (C. propinqua, C. tenuicaulis, C. robusta and their hybrids) and blackberry (Rubus fruticosus agg.) with occasional plants of Hangehange (Geniostoma ligustrifolium). Scattered cabbage trees (Cordyline australis) may form part of the canopy or the understory. Flax (Phormium tenax) also forms part of the understory, as does manuka (Leptospermum scoparium).

The groundcover is made up of sedges such as the niggerhead (Carex secta) and Baumea sp.; various ferns such as Kio-kio (Blechnum capense) swamp kiokio (B. minus), Doodia media, Pteris tremula, Athyrium australe, A. japonicum, Pneumatopteris pennigera and Phymatosorus scandens growing on tree bases; beggars' ticks (Bidens frondosa) and ragwort (Senecio jacobaea) both spreading and growing vigorously to the detriment of other species; other herbs including the small grass Oplismenus imbecillus, Polygonum hydropiper and P. persicaria, Erigeron floribundus and Centella uniflora.

To the north of the central loop of the old course of the Kaituna River the willow canopy consists of large, widely spaced willows. Under these are found a more open type of understory and groundcover with additional species including a velvety nightshade (Solanum sublobatum and spearmint (Mentha spicata). In addition, a small colony of a woolley leaved mint was found. This is still awaiting positive identification but is believed to be Mentha longifolia, a European species not previously recorded in New Zealand.

Another interesting species found was the orchid Pterostylis micromega, an uncommon species. A small colony was found on the fringe of manuka scrub along an old cut fenceline near the centre of the reserve. The first visit to the reserve was not made until late February, which is rather late for orchids, so further interesting species might be found on subsequent visits.

Towards the centre of the reserve, on the eastern side of the recently dug central drain, an area of Cordyline australis forms an open canopy, with an understory of Phormium tenax and Coprosma tenuicaulis. A few crack and pussy willows also form part of the canopy. Beggars' ticks (Bidens frondosa) and blackberry are particularly bad weeds in this area.

There are also small scattered areas of open swamp dominated by the sedge Scirpus lacustris with bindweed (Calystegia sepium), Centella uniflora, the willow weeds Polygonum hydropiper and P. decipiens, buttercup (Ranunculus flammula) and Galium palustre. These small swamps are very dry at present, and are rapidly being invaded by thistles and Bidens frondosa.

The old loops of the Kaituna River, now closed off by stopbanks, still contain open water but are rapidly being converted into swamps by the invasion of plants, particularly Raupo (Typha orientalis) and P. decipiens). The open water is often partly covered by the floating fern, Azolla filiculoides. These old river areas provide a major habitat for ducks, and their preservation is desirable.

Botanical Value of Proposed Reserve:

No species on the endangered species list were found in the reserve, but further investigation of the area is desirable. The reserve forms a large potential wetland in a district where wetlands have largely been eliminated. It contains areas of kanuka/manuka swamp and cabbage tree swamp, both being wetland types that are increasingly uncommon. The presence of the orchid Pterostylis micromega is a valuable feature, and a very interesting mint was also found.

Provided the water table can be restored to its previous level, which hopefully will remove much of the present severe weed problem, the reserve could regain much of its value as a varied and interesting wetlands area, which has suffered much from recent work on the Kaituna River.

Recommendations:

1. It is vital that the water table should be raised substantially. It is understood that this is to be done, and that much of the reserve will be under several centimetres of water. This should eliminate many of the worst weeds such as thistles, blackberry and Bidens frondosa, and should encourage a return to the original state of the reserve before the stopbanks were constructed.
2. Cattle should be fenced off from the canopy areas of the reserve.
3. Goats should be removed or eradicated from the reserve.
4. The spread of raupo into the old loops of the Kaituna River should be controlled.

5. A number of "corridors" through the reserve are being cleared at present for drainage, fencing and access purposes. Care should be taken not to reduce the canopy into small pockets by the indiscriminate forming of further such "corridors" in the future.
6. Where such corridors have been cleared, the felled canopy should be piled and burnt, rather than left lying to form a habitat for weeds such as blackberry. In general this is being done, but the fallen trees tend to be piled against the edge of the untouched canopy areas and then burnt. This poses a serious fire hazard to the remaining canopy area. Such fires should be set in open ground.
7. Further botanical investigation of the reserve, earlier in the summer, is desirable.

N.C. MILLER
April 1983

Appendix 6.10

**Whangamarino Wetland Bird Habitats
(Ogle & Cheyne, 1981)**

Generalised vegetation description (plant names only, no cover values).	% of wetland with this vegetation	No. of spotless crakes	% of spotless crakes (based on 89 individuals)
Willows (pussy willow, for all but 1 crake)/manuka and/or <u>Coprosma tenuicaulis</u> / <u>Carex</u> spp - <u>Juncus</u> spp - <u>Ludwigia palustris</u> /duckweeds.	14	68	76
Willows (equal numbers in pussy willow and crack willow)/ <u>Glyceria maxima</u> (with or without other herbaceous plants).	12	8	9
Willows (all pussy willows)/sedges and/or raupo.	5	8	9
Cabbage tree-kowhai/manuka/sedges and grasses.	<1	1	1
Raupo only.	<1	2	2
Acid peat vegetation (manuka/ <u>Baumea</u> spp - wirerush - umbrella fern).	57	2	2
Vegetation without spotless crakes	12		
TOTALS	c. 100%	89	c.100%
Stations with flax as part of the vegetation		48	54
Stations with raupo as part or all of the vegetation		13	15

TABLE 6: Distribution of spotless crakes related to vegetation cover.

Generalised vegetation description (plant names only, no cover values)	% of wetland with this vegetation	No. of fernbirds	% of fernbirds
Manuka/ <u>Baumea</u> spp. ^{1.} - wirerush - umbrella fern	57	273	75
Pussy willow/manuka (sometimes with <u>Coprosma tenuicaulis</u> and/or <u>Baumea articulata</u> ^{2.})/ <u>Carex</u> spp. ^{3.}	14	70	20
Crackwillow or pussy willow/ <u>Baumea articulata</u> (no shrub understorey)	2	11	3
Pussy willow/ <u>Coprosma tenuicaulis</u> (no manuka)	Not mapped c.1?	5	1
Crack willow or pussy willow/short herbs (50cm tall)	14	5	1
Vegetation mostly without fernbirds	c.12		
TOTALS	c.100	364	100%

TABLE 7: Generalised vegetation types with fernbirds in Whangamarino Swamp.

Footnotes 1, 2, 3 - see overleaf.

Generalised vegetation description (plant names only, no cover values)	% of wetland with this vegetation	No. of bitterns	% of bitterns (based on 123 individuals)
(i) Acid bog : manuka/ <u>Baumea</u> spp. - wirerush - umbrella fern.	57	26	21
(ii) Semi-mineralised bog: pussy willow/manuka, or <u>Coprosma tenuicaulis</u> /tall bamboo sedge, or other <u>Baumea</u> spp./ <u>Carex</u> spp.	5	27	22
(iii) Mineralised swamp: Willows/bamboo sedges/ <u>Carex</u> spp. - water plantain - buttercup - water purslane - willow weeds - <u>Galium</u> . (Rarely <u>Scirpus fluviatilis</u> , <u>Osmunda</u> , manuka.)	32	68	55
(iv) Miscellaneous sites	6	2	2
Totals	100%	123	100%

TABLE 3: Distribution of bitterns in known vegetation types.

Type (ii) Semi-mineralised bog : 27 bitterns				
Cover of pussy willows				
No. of bitterns	<10%	10-19%	20-49%	>50%
	1	3	11	12
% of bitterns in type (ii)	15%		85%	
Type (iii) Mineralised swamp : 68 bitterns				
Cover of pussy willow and/or crack willows				
No. of bitterns	<10%	10-19%	20-49%	>50%
	19*	19	22	8
% of bitterns in type (iii)	56%		44%	
Open sites, usually with scattered willows			Willow treeland or forest	

* 3 birds in open swamps without willows.

TABLE 4: Distribution of bitterns related to cover of willows.

7. PLATES



PLATES 1, 2, 3 AQUATIC SITE EA 1

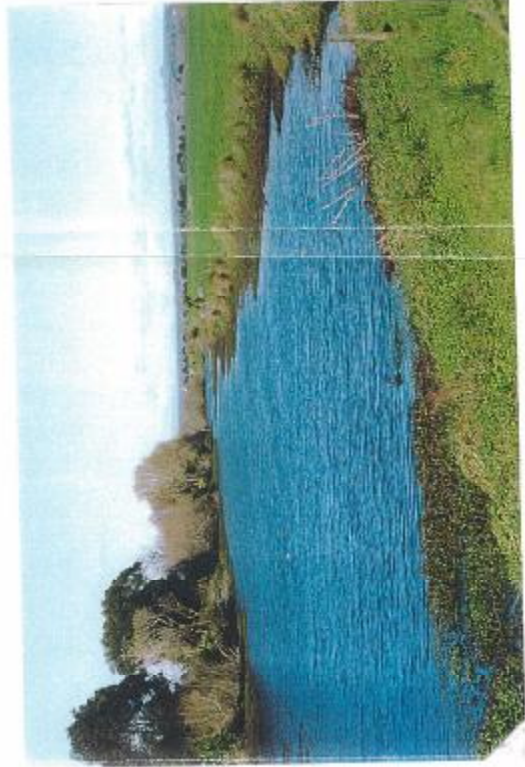
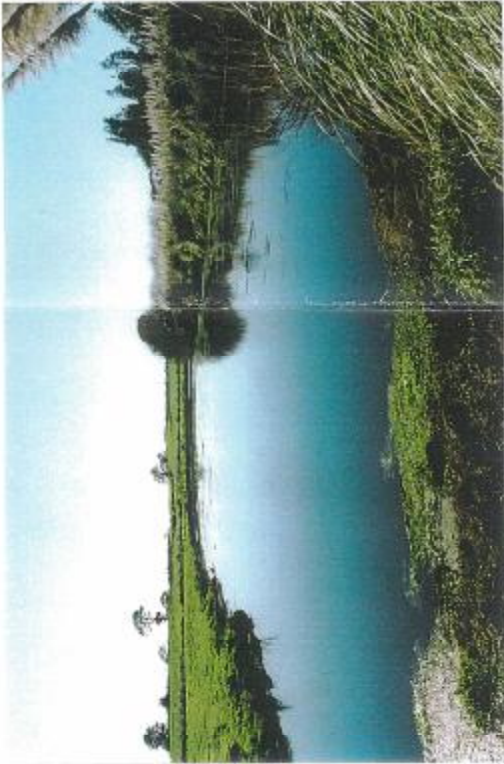


PLATE 4 "NICCOL WETLAND" (OXBOW)
AQUATIC SITE EA 2S



PLATES 5, 6 & 7 KAITUNA RIVER OXBOW
AQUATIC SITE EA 2N



PLATE 8 KAITUNA RIVER - VIEW
TOWARDS TRUE RIGHT BANK;
AQUATIC SITE EA 3



PLATE 9 KAITUNA RIVER - TRUE
LEFT BANK; AQUATIC
SITE EA 3



PLATE 10 WAIMARAE STREAM
AQUATIC SITE EA 4



PLATE 11 WAIMARAE STREAM
AQUATIC SITE EA 4



PLATE 12 WAIMARAE STREAM
AQUATIC SITE EA 4



PLATE 13 TRUNCATED OXBOW OF
KAITUNA RIVER ADJACENT
WAIMARAE STREAM
(MAIMAI ARROWED)



PLATES 14 & 15 LARGE CONSTRUCTED DRAINS
AT PAH RD RIGHT-ANGLED BEND



PLATE 16 DRAIN AT PAH RD BEND AND
ENTRANCE TO RESERVE
AQUATIC SITE EA 5



PLATE 17 DRAIN FORMING SOUTHEASTERN
BOUNDARY OF RESERVE
(DOWNSTREAM FROM PLATE 16)



PLATE 18, 19, 20 KAHIKATEA REMNANT
CLOSEST TO ALIGNMENT A3;
VIEW FROM NORTHERN SIDE;
PADDOCK IN FOREGROUND
CONTAINS KAHIKATEA STUMPS.





PLATE 21 LARGEST OF REMNANT
KAHIKATEA GROVES; WELL
SEPARATED FROM ALIGNMENT A3;

VIEW FROM NORTHERN SIDE;
PADDOCK IN FOREGROUND
CONTAINS THE REMAINS OF
LARGE KAHIKATEAS.



PLATE 22 "SAND RIDGE SCRUB" AT END OF
PADDOCK INTRUSION TO
SCRUBLAND
(TO NORTH OF EA 5 - FIGURE 9)



PLATE 23 & 24 CONSTRUCTED PONDS IN
WILDLIFE MANAGEMENT
RESERVE
(REFER FIGURE 9)

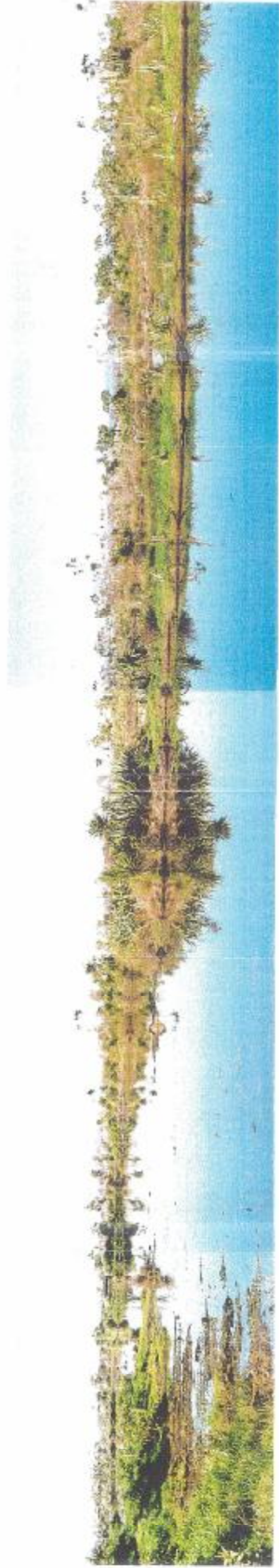


PLATE 25 FERNBIRD HABITAT (ARROWED)
IN CONSTRUCTED POND AREA



PLATES 26, 27, 28 CONSTRUCTED PONDS IN WILDLIFE MANAGEMENT RESERVE (REFER FIGURE 9). OLDER PONDED AREA (LOWER LEFT) HAS A MUCH REDUCED OPEN WATER AREA AS A RESULT OF DEVELOPMENT OF AQUATIC VEGETATION





PLATE 29 ROOT FLANGE OF OLD
KAHIKATEA STUMP IN
GRAZED PADDOCK.
(PLATE 18)



PLATE 30 BURNT PIECE OF KAHIKATEA
IN GRAZED PADDOCK.
(PLATE 18)